(12) STANDARD PATENT (11) Application No. **AU 2018361828 B2**
(19) AUSTRALIAN PATENT OFFICE

(54) Title
Antibacterial compounds

(51) International Patent Classification(s)
C07D 401/14 (2006.01) ***A61P 31/04*** (2006.01)
A61K 31/4439 (2006.01) ***C07D 401/04*** (2006.01)
A61K 31/498 (2006.01) ***C07D 403/14*** (2006.01)
A61K 31/506 (2006.01) ***C07D 413/14*** (2006.01)
A61K 31/538 (2006.01)

(21) Application No: **2018361828** (22) Date of Filing: **2018.11.02**

(87) WIPO No: **WO19/086890**

(30) Priority Data

(31) Number	(32) Date	(33) Country
1718285.8	**2017.11.03**	**GB**

(43) Publication Date: **2019.05.09**
(44) Accepted Journal Date: **2023.05.18**

(71) Applicant(s)
Discuva Ltd.

(72) Inventor(s)
MEO, Paul;KHAN, Mohammed Nawaz;CHARRIER, Cedric

(74) Agent / Attorney
Madderns Pty Ltd, GPO Box 2752, Adelaide, SA, 5001, AU

(56) Related Art
STEENACKERS H. P. L. et al, J. Med. Chem., vol. 54(2), 2011, pp 472-484

(12) INTERNATIONAL APPLICATION PUBLISHED UNDER THE PATENT COOPERATION TREATY (PCT)

(19) World Intellectual Property Organization
International Bureau

(43) International Publication Date
09 May 2019 (09.05.2019)

WIPO | PCT

(10) International Publication Number
WO 2019/086890 A1

(51) International Patent Classification:
C07D 401/14 (2006.01) *A61K 31/538* (2006.01)
C07D 413/14 (2006.01) *A61K 31/506* (2006.01)
C07D 401/04 (2006.01) *A61K 31/498* (2006.01)
C07D 403/14 (2006.01) *A61K 31/4439* (2006.01)
A61P 31/04 (2006.01)

(21) International Application Number:
PCT/GB2018/053183

(22) International Filing Date:
02 November 2018 (02.11.2018)

(25) Filing Language: English

(26) Publication Language: English

(30) Priority Data:
1718285.8 03 November 2017 (03.11.2017) GB

(71) Applicant: **DISCUVA LTD.** [GB/GB]; The Merrifield Centre, Rosemary Lane, Cambridge Cambridgeshire CB1 3LQ (GB).

(72) Inventors: **MEO, Paul**; The Merrifield Centre, Rosemary Lane, Cambridge Cambridgeshire CB1 3LQ (GB). **KHAN, Nawaz**; The Merrifield Centre, Rosemary Lane, Cambridge Cambridgeshire CB1 3LQ (GB). **CHARRIER, Cedric**; The Merrifield Centre, Rosemary Lane, Cambridge Cambridgeshire CB1 3LQ (GB).

(74) Agent: **GILL JENNINGS & EVERY LLP** et al.; The Broadgate Tower, 20 Primrose Street, London Greater London EC2A 2ES (GB).

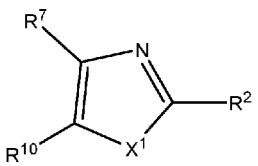
(81) Designated States *(unless otherwise indicated, for every kind of national protection available)*: AE, AG, AL, AM, AO, AT, AU, AZ, BA, BB, BG, BH, BN, BR, BW, BY, BZ, CA, CH, CL, CN, CO, CR, CU, CZ, DE, DJ, DK, DM, DO, DZ, EC, EE, EG, ES, FI, GB, GD, GE, GH, GM, GT, HN, HR, HU, ID, IL, IN, IR, IS, JO, JP, KE, KG, KH, KN, KP, KR, KW, KZ, LA, LC, LK, LR, LS, LU, LY, MA, MD, ME, MG, MK, MN, MW, MX, MY, MZ, NA, NG, NI, NO, NZ, OM, PA, PE, PG, PH, PL, PT, QA, RO, RS, RU, RW, SA, SC, SD, SE, SG, SK, SL, SM, ST, SV, SY, TH, TJ, TM, TN, TR, TT, TZ, UA, UG, US, UZ, VC, VN, ZA, ZM, ZW.

(84) Designated States *(unless otherwise indicated, for every kind of regional protection available)*: ARIPO (BW, GH, GM, KE, LR, LS, MW, MZ, NA, RW, SD, SL, ST, SZ, TZ, UG, ZM, ZW), Eurasian (AM, AZ, BY, KG, KZ, RU, TJ, TM), European (AL, AT, BE, BG, CH, CY, CZ, DE, DK, EE, ES, FI, FR, GB, GR, HR, HU, IE, IS, IT, LT, LU, LV, MC, MK, MT, NL, NO, PL, PT, RO, RS, SE, SI, SK, SM, TR), OAPI (BF, BJ, CF, CG, CI, CM, GA, GN, GQ, GW, KM, ML, MR, NE, SN, TD, TG).

Published:
— *with international search report (Art. 21(3))*
— *before the expiration of the time limit for amending the claims and to be republished in the event of receipt of amendments (Rule 48.2(h))*

WO 2019/086890 A1

(54) Title: ANTIBACTERIAL COMPOUNDS



(Formula II)

(57) Abstract: The present invention relates to compounds of general formula (II),to compositions comprising these compounds and to methods of treating *Enterobacteriaceae* bacterial diseases and infections using the compounds. The compounds find application in the treatment of infection with, and diseases caused by, *Enterobacteriaceae*.

Antibacterial Compounds

Field of the Invention

The present invention relates to a new series of antibacterial compounds as defined herein, to compositions containing these compounds and to methods of treating Enterobacteriaceae bacterial diseases and infections using the compounds. The compounds find application in the treatment of infection with, and disease caused by Gram-negative bacteria *Enterobacteriaceae* species that have developed resistance to existing antibiotics.

Background to the Invention

There is an urgent need for novel antibacterial compounds to counter the emergence of new bacterial pathogens with resistance to existing antibacterial compounds. The increasing occurrence of bacterial resistance to existing antibiotics threatens to greatly enhance the burden that common infections place on society, with multidrug resistance becoming common amongst a number of bacterial pathogens. For example, antibiotic-resistant strains of the ESKAPE pathogens (*Enterococcus faecium, Staphylococcus aureus, Klebsiella pneumoniae, Acinetobacter baumannii, Pseudomonas aeruginosa* and *Enterobacter* species), such as carbapenem-resistant *Enterobacteriaceae* (CRE), multi-drug resistant (MDR) *Acinetobacter*, MDR *Pseudomonas aeruginosa*, methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* (MRSA) and vancomycin-resistant *Enterococcus* (VRE) have been included in a list of antibiotic-resistant microorganisms identified as posing an urgent or serious threat to human health. Other prominent antibiotic-resistant pathogens include the Gram-positive anaerobe *Clostridium difficile*, drug-resistant *Neisseria gonorrhoeae* and drug-resistant *tuberculosis*.

Antibiotic-resistant Gram-negative strains, such as carbapenemases-producing *Enterobacteriaceae* e.g. *Escherichia coli* NDM-1 (New Delhi metallo-β-lactamase) and *Klebsiella pneumoniae* are difficult to treat and are becoming increasingly virulent. Moreover, new emerging hypervirulent, multidrug resistant and highly transmissible strains of carbapenem-resistant *Klebsiella pneumoniae* associated with fatal outbreaks have been identified, for example, ST11 carbapenem-resistant hypervirulent *Klebsiella pneumoniae* strains. Such strains are resistant to previously

2018361828 19 Apr 2023

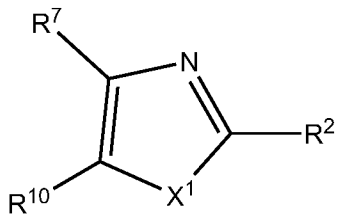
and currently recommended antibiotics and are now a global major public health concern.

There is therefore a need for novel antibacterial compounds that can provide effective treatment in a reliable manner, particularly for *Enterobacteriaceae* infections involving multidrug-resistance infection agents. There is additionally a need for the provision of antibiotic drugs which can avoid or reduce the side-effects associated with known antibacterial compounds.

The aspects of the present invention seek to provide a solution to the above mentioned or other problems.

Summary of the Invention

According to a first aspect of the present invention, there is provided a compound of general formula (II), or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, hydrate, solvate or ester thereof:



(II)

wherein

X^1 is selected from NR^1 or S;

R^1 is selected from hydrogen or $C_{1\text{-}2}$alkyl;

R^2 is selected from the group consisting of S (sulfinyl), O (oxo), NR^3R^4, cyano, -$CH_2NR^5R^6$, methyl (-CH_3), halogen, hydroxyl, -$CONR^3R^4$, COOH and monocyclic 4- to 7- membered heterocyclyl, wherein the 4- to 7- membered heterocyclyl is optionally substituted with one or more $C_{1\text{-}4}$alkyl groups;

R^3 and R^4 are independently selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, $C_{1\text{-}3}$alkyl, COR^5, $CONR^5R^6$, CO_2R^5, $C_{1\text{-}2}$alkyl-NR^5R^6;

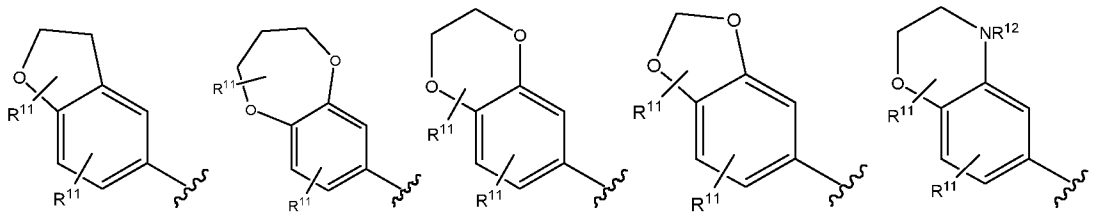
or R^3 and R^4 together with the nitrogen atom to which they are attached form a monocyclic 4- to 7- membered cyclic amine group, which group is optionally

substituted with one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of NR^5R^6, C_{1-2}alkoxy and oxo;

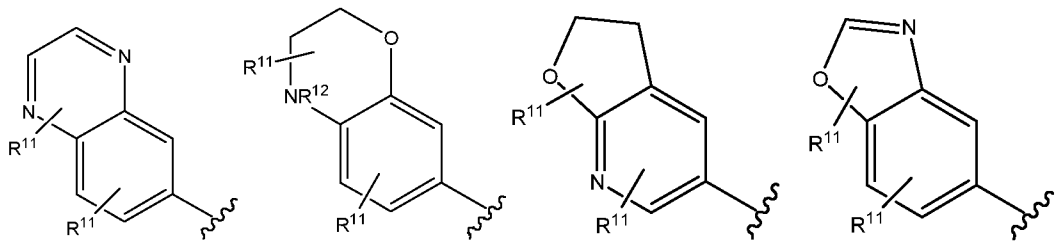
R^5 and R^6 are independently selected from the group consisting of hydrogen and C_{1-4}alkyl;

R^7 is selected from the group consisting of phenyl, monocyclic 5- to 7- membered heterocyclyl and monocyclic 5- or 6-membered heteroaryl, wherein the phenyl, 5- to 7-membered heterocyclyl and 5- or 6-membered heteroaryl rings are optionally substituted with one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of halogen, C_{1-2}alkyl, C_{1-2}alkoxy, NR^3R^4, $CONR^3R^4$, OR^8, OCF_3, C_{1-2}alkoxy-CN and hydroxyl;

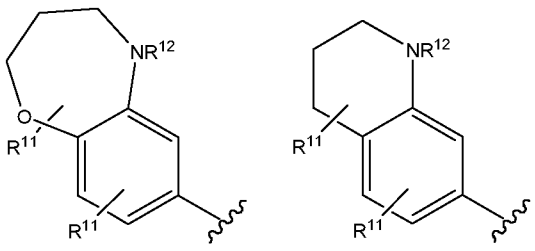
or R^7 is a fused bicyclic system selected from the group consisting of any one of (Ia) to (Ik):



(Ia) (Ib) (Ic) (Id) (Ie)



(If) (Ig) (Ih) (Ii)



(Ij) (Ik)

wherein each R^{11} is independently selected from hydrogen, halogen, O (oxo), and C_{1-4}alkyl; and R^{12} is selected from hydrogen, C_{1-4}alkyl, C_{3-7}cycloalkyl, C_{4-7}heterocyclyl, COR^{13}, SO_2R^{13}, C_{1-4}alkyl-CO_2R^{14}, C_{1-4}alkyl-OR^{14}, C_{1-4}alky-$NR^{14}R^{15}$, C_{1-}

$_4$alkyl-C_{3-7}cycloalkyl, COC_{1-4}alkyl-$NR^{14}R^{15}$, an amino acid, and a quaternary ammonium cation ($NR^{16}{}_4^+$);

R^{13} is selected from C_{1-4}alkyl, C_{3-7}cycloalkyl, phenyl, and monocyclic 5- or 6-membered heteroaryl, the phenyl or 5- or 6- membered heteroaryl being optionally substituted with one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of halogen, C_{1-2}alkyl, O (oxo), S (sulfinyl), NR^3R^4, OR^3 and SR^3;

R^{14} and R^{15} are independently selected from hydrogen, C_{1-4}alkyl, C_{1-4}alkyl-hydroxyl, C_{3-7}cycloalkyl, phenyl, monocyclic 5- or 6- membered heteroaryl, and SO_2R^{13}, the phenyl or 5- or 6- membered heteroaryl being optionally substituted with one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of halogen, C_{1-2}alkyl, O (oxo), S (sulfinyl), NR^3R^4, OR^3 and SR^3;

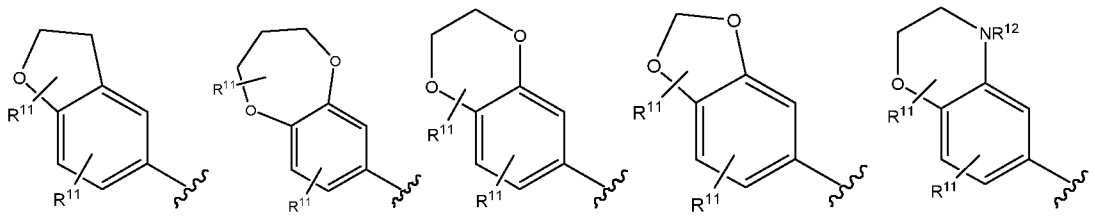
R^{16} groups are independently selected from C_{1-4}alkyl and phenyl, the phenyl being optionally substituted with one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of halogen, C_{1-2}alkyl, O (oxo), S (sulfinyl), NR^3R^4, OR^3 and SR^3;

R^8 is selected from the group consisting of 3- to 5- membered cycloalkyl and CH_2R^9;

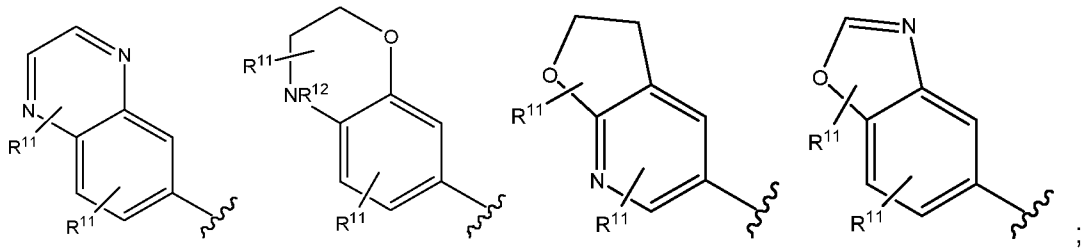
R^9 is selected from the group consisting of phenyl, monocyclic 5- or 6-membered heteroaryl and monocyclic C_{3-7}cycloalkyl, the phenyl or 5- or 6-membered heteroaryl being optionally substituted with one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of halogen, C_{1-2}alkyl, O (oxo), S (sulfinyl), NR^3R^4, OR^3 and SR^3;

R^{10} is selected from the group consisting of phenyl and monocyclic 5- or 6-membered heteroaryl ring, wherein the phenyl and 5- or 6-membered heteroaryl rings are optionally substituted with one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of halogen, C_{1-4}alkyl, O (oxo), S(sulfinyl), C_{1-4}alkoxy, $CONR^3R^4$, NR^3R^4, OR^8, hydroxyl, OCF_3, $-CF_3$, R^8, C_{3-7}cycoalkyl, C_{4-7}heterocyclyl, COR^{13}, SO_2R^{13}, C_{1-4}alkyl-CO_2R^{14}, C_{1-4}alkyl-OR^{14}, C_{1-4}alkyl-$NR^{14}R^{15}$, C_{1-4}alkyl-C_{3-7}cycloalkyl, COC_{1-4}alkyl-$NR^{14}R^{15}$, an amino acid, and a quaternary ammonium cation ($NH^{16}{}_4^+$);

or R^{10} is a fused bicyclic system selected from the group consisting of any one of (Ia) to (Ii):



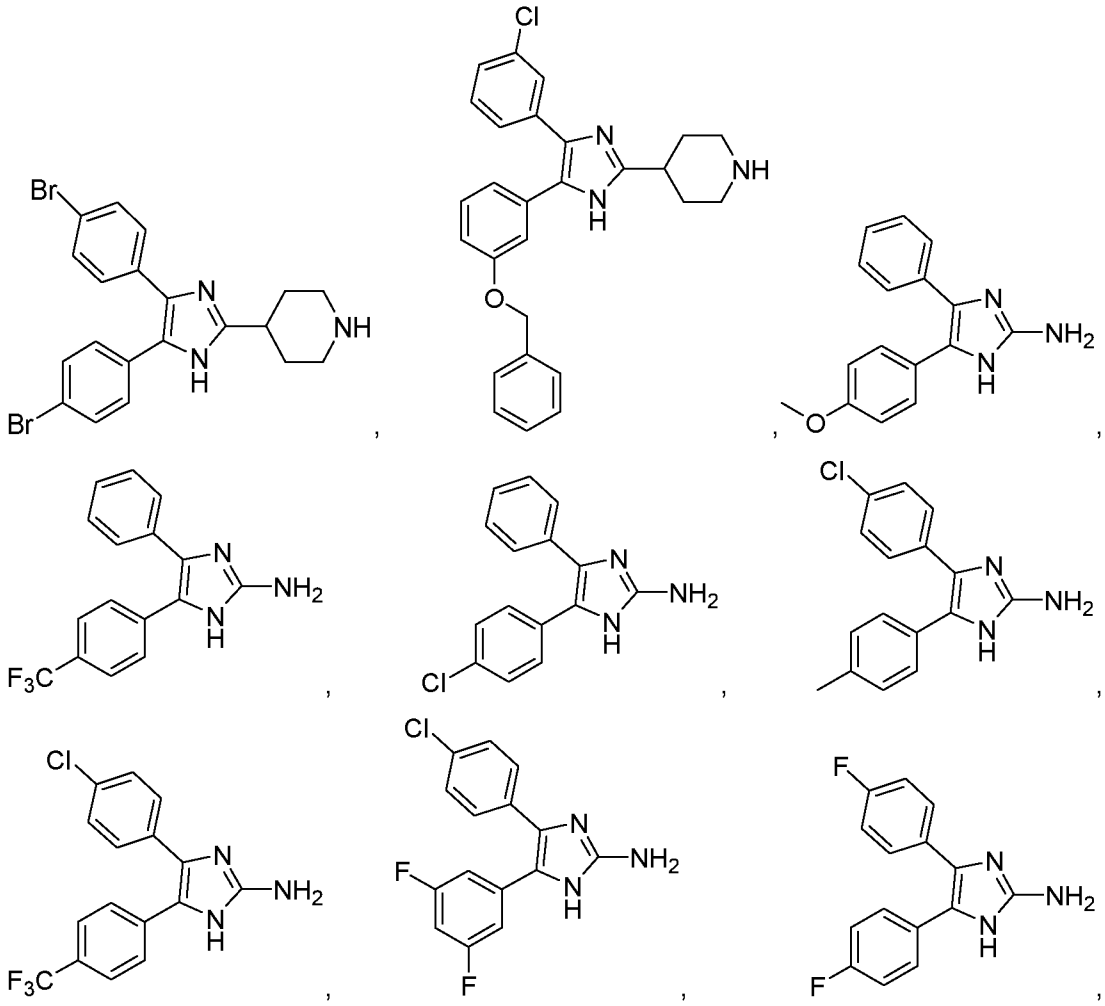
(Ia) (Ib) (Ic) (Id) (Ie)

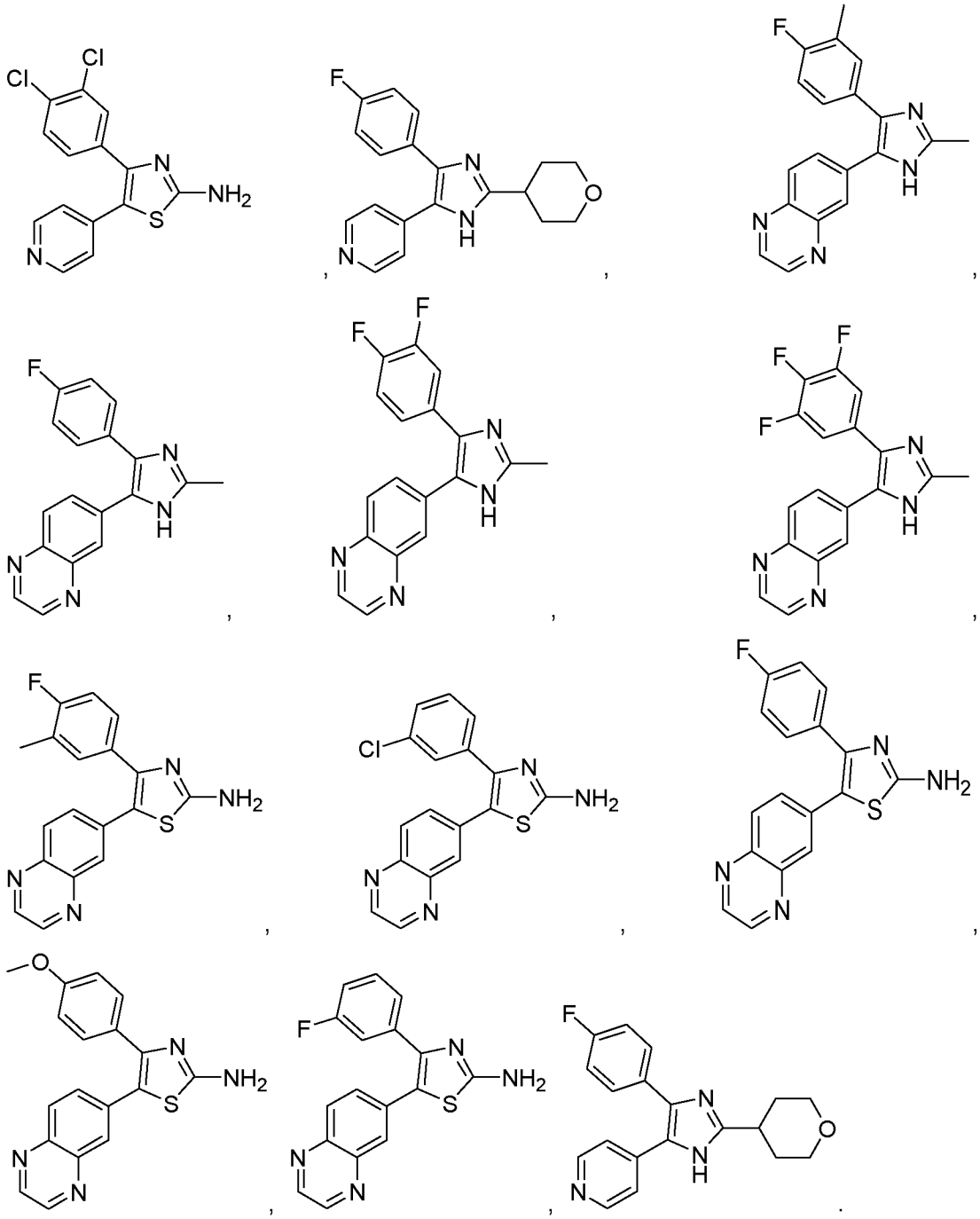


(If) (Ig) (Ih) (Ii)

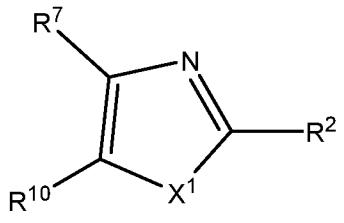
wherein each R^{11} is independently selected from hydrogen, halogen, and C_{1-4}alkyl and R^{12} is selected from hydrogen, and C_{1-4}alkyl;

provided that the compound of formula (II) is other than:





According to a second aspect of the present invention, there is provided a compound of general formula (II), or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, hydrate, solvate or ester thereof:



(II)

wherein

X^1 is selected from NR^1 or S;

R^1 is selected from hydrogen or C_{1-2}alkyl;

R^2 is selected from the group consisting of S (sulfinyl), O (oxo), NR^3R^4, cyano, -$CH_2NR^5R^6$, methyl (-CH_3), halogen, hydroxyl, -$CONR^3R^4$, and COOH;

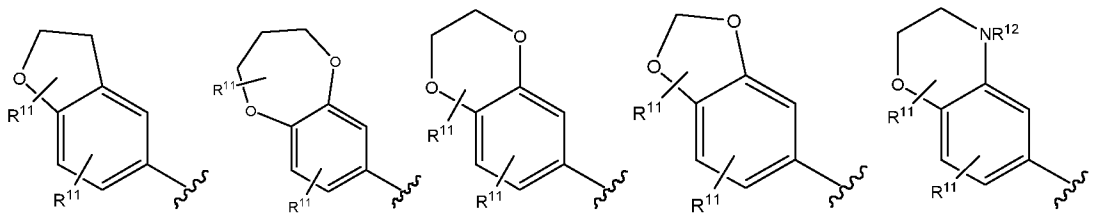
R^3 and R^4 are independently selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, C_{1-3}alkyl, COR^5, $CONR^5R^6$, CO_2R^5, C_{1-2}alkyl-NR^5R^6;

or R^3 and R^4 together with the nitrogen atom to which they are attached form a monocyclic 4- to 7- membered cyclic amine group, which group is optionally substituted with one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of NR^5R^6, C_{1-2}alkoxy and oxo;

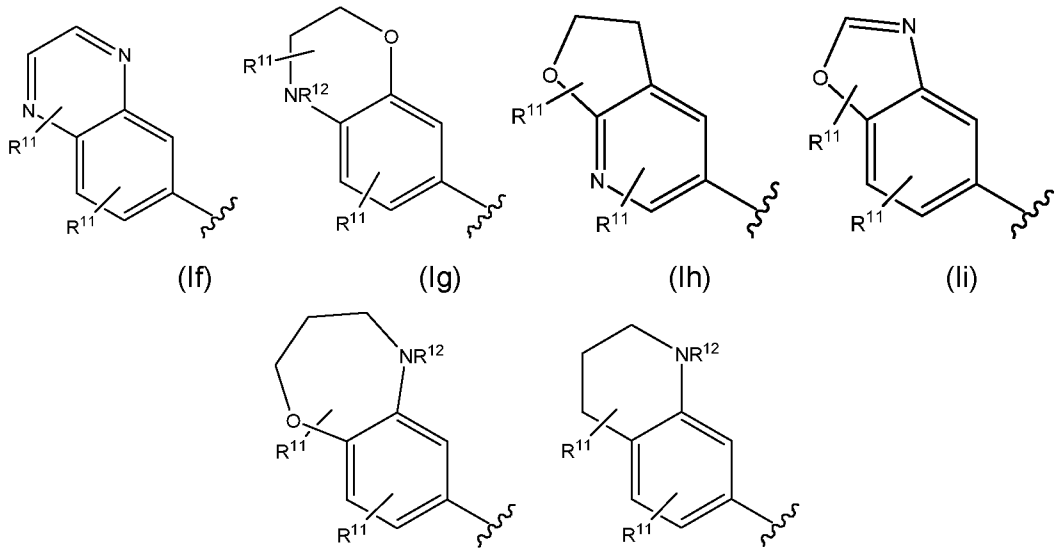
R^5 and R^6 are independently selected from the group consisting of hydrogen and C_{1-4}alkyl;

R^7 is selected from the group consisting of phenyl, monocyclic 5- to 7- membered heterocyclyl and monocyclic 5- or 6-membered heteroaryl, wherein the phenyl is substituted with one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of NR^3R^4, $CONR^3R^4$, OR^8, OCF_3, OCH_2CN and hydroxyl, and the monocyclic 5- to 7-membered heterocyclyl and monocyclic 5- or 6-membered heteroaryl are optionally substituted with one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of halogen, C_{1-2}alkyl, C_{1-2}alkoxy, NR^3R^4, $CONR^3R^4$, OR^8, OCF_3, C_{1-2}alkoxy-CN and hydroxyl;

or R^7 is a fused bicyclic system selected from the group consisting of any one of (Ia) to (Ik):



(Ia) (Ib) (Ic) (Id) (Ie)



(If) (Ig) (Ih) (Ii)

(Ij) (Ik)

wherein each R^{11} is independently selected from hydrogen, halogen, O (oxo), and C_{1-4}alkyl; and R^{12} is selected from hydrogen, C_{1-4}alkyl, C_{3-7}cycloalkyl, C_{4-7}heterocyclyl, COR^{13}, SO_2R^{13}, C_{1-4}-CO_2R^{14}, C_{1-4}alkyl-OR^{14}, C_{1-4}alkyl-$NR^{14}R^{15}$, C_{1-4}alkyl-C_{3-7}cycloalkyl, COC_{1-4}alkyl-$NR^{14}R^{15}$, an amino acid, and a quaternary ammonium cation ($NH^{16}{}_4^+$);

R^{13} is selected from C_{1-4}alkyl, C_{3-7}cycloalkyl, phenyl, and monocyclic 5- or 6-membered heteroaryl, the phenyl or 5- or 6- membered heteroaryl being optionally substituted with one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of halogen, C_{1-2}alkyl, O (oxo), S (sulfinyl), NR^3R^4, OR^3, and SR^3;

R^{14} and R^{15} are independently selected from hydrogen, C_{1-4}alkyl, C_{1-4}alkyl-hydroxyl, C_{3-7}cycloalkyl, phenyl, monocyclic 5- or 6- membered heteroaryl, and SO_2R^{13}, the phenyl or 5- or 6- membered heteroaryl being optionally substituted with one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of halogen, C_{1-2}alkyl, O (oxo), S (sulfinyl), NR^3R^4, OR^3, and SR^3;

R^{16} groups are independently selected from C_{1-4}alkyl and phenyl, the phenyl being optionally substituted with one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of halogen, C_{1-2}alkyl, O (oxo), S (sulfinyl), NR^3R^4, OR^3, and SR^3;

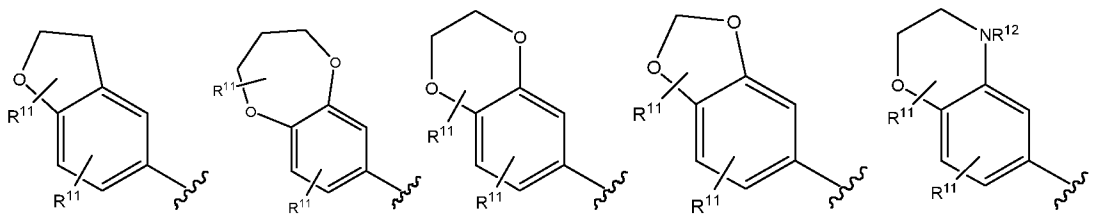
R^8 is selected from the group consisting of 3- to 5- membered cycloalkyl and CH_2R^9;

R^9 is selected from the group consisting of phenyl, monocyclic 5- or 6-membered heteroaryl and monocyclic C_{3-7}cycloalkyl, the phenyl or 5- or 6-membered heteroaryl

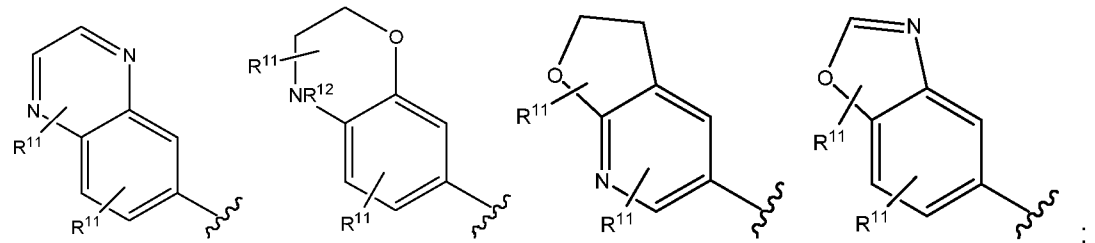
being optionally substituted with one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of halogen, C_{1-2}alkyl, O (oxo), S (sulfinyl), NR^3R^4, OR^3 and SR^3;

R^{10} is selected from the group consisting of phenyl and monocyclic 5- or 6-membered heteroaryl ring, wherein the phenyl is optionally substituted with one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of C_{1-4}alkyl, O (oxo), S(sulfinyl), $CONR^3R^4$, NR^3R^4, OR^8, hydroxyl, OCF_3, $-CF_3$, R^8, C_{3-7}cycoalkyl, C_{4-7}heterocyclyl, COR^{13}, SO_2R^{13}, C_{1-4}alkyl-CO_2R^{14}, C_{1-4}alkyl-OR^{14}, C_{1-4}alkyl-$NR^{14}R^{15}$, C_{1-4}alkyl-C_{3-7}cycloalkyl, COC_{1-4}alkyl-$NR^{14}R^{15}$, an amino acid, and a quaternary ammonium cation ($NH^{16}{}_4^+$), and the 5- or 6-membered heteroaryl rings are optionally substituted with one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of halogen, C_{1-4}alkyl, O (oxo), S(sulfinyl), C_{1-4}alkoxy, $CONR^3R^4$, NR^3R^4, OR^8, hydroxyl, OCF_3, $-CF_3$, R^8, C_{3-7}cycoalkyl, C_{4-7}heterocyclyl, COR^{13}, SO_2R^{13}, C_{1-4}alkyl-CO_2R^{14}, C_{1-4}alkyl-OR^{14}, C_{1-4}alkyl-$NR^{14}R^{15}$, C_{1-4}alkyl-C_{3-7}cycloalkyl, COC_{1-4}alkyl-$NR^{14}R^{15}$, an amino acid, and a quaternary ammonium cation ($NH^{16}{}_4^+$);

or R^{10} is a fused bicyclic system selected from the group consisting of any one of (Ia) to (Ii):



(Ia) (Ib) (Ic) (Id) (Ie)

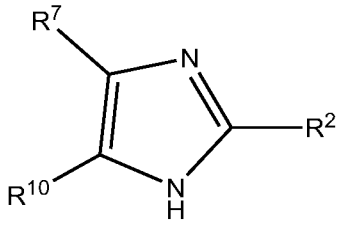


(If) (Ig) (Ih) (Ii);

wherein each R^{11} is independently selected from hydrogen, halogen, and C_{1-4}alkyl and R^{12} is selected from hydrogen, and C_{1-4}alkyl.

2018361828 19 Apr 2023

According to a third aspect of the present invention, there is provided a compound, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, hydrate, solvate, prodrug, or ester thereof, having the general formula (V):



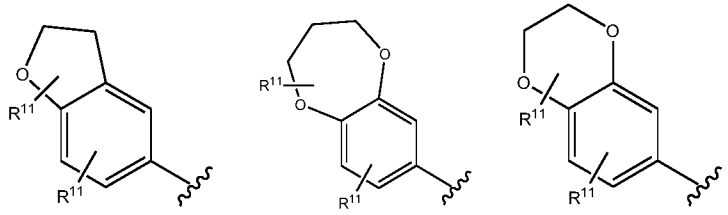
(V)

wherein

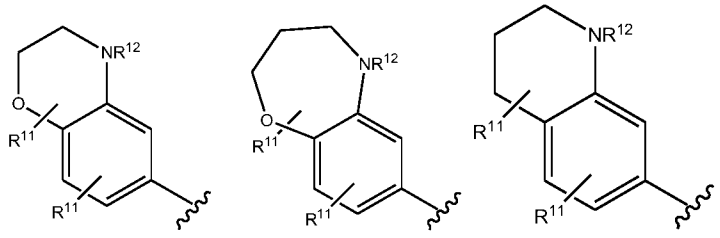
R^2 is NH_2;

R^7 is selected from the group consisting of phenyl, wherein the phenyl group is substituted with one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of NHMe, $CONH_2$ and OCH_2fluorophenyl;

or R^7 is a fused bicyclic system selected from the group consisting of:



(Ia) (Ib) (Ic)



(Ie) (Ij) (Ik)

wherein each R^{11} is independently selected from hydrogen and halogen; and R^{12} is selected from hydrogen, $C_{1\text{-}4}$alkyl, $C_{3\text{-}7}$cycloalkyl, $C_{4\text{-}7}$heterocyclyl, COR^{13}, SO_2R^{13}, $C_{1\text{-}4}$alkyl-CO_2R^{14}, $C_{1\text{-}4}$alkyl-OR^{14}, $C_{1\text{-}4}$alky-$NR^{14}R^{15}$, $C_{1\text{-}4}$alkyl-$C_{3\text{-}7}$cycloalkyl, $COC_{1\text{-}4}$alkyl-$NR^{14}R^{15}$, an amino acid, and a quaternary ammonium cation ($NR^{16}{}_4{}^+$);

R^{13} is selected from C_{1-4}alkyl, C_{3-7}cycloalkyl, phenyl, and monocyclic 5- or 6-membered heteroaryl, the phenyl or 5- or 6- membered heteroaryl being optionally substituted with one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of halogen, C_{1-2}alkyl, O (oxo), S (sulfinyl), NR^3R^4, OR^3 and SR^3;

R^{14} and R^{15} are independently selected from hydrogen, C_{1-4}alkyl, C_{1-4}alkyl-hydroxyl, C_{3-7}cycloalkyl, phenyl, monocyclic 5- or 6- membered heteroaryl, and SO_2R^{13}, the phenyl or 5- or 6- membered heteroaryl being optionally substituted with one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of halogen, C_{1-2}alkyl, O (oxo), S (sulfinyl), NR^3R^4, OR^3 and SR^3;

R^{16} groups are independently selected from C_{1-4}alkyl and phenyl, the phenyl being optionally substituted with one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of halogen, C_{1-2}alkyl, O (oxo), S (sulfinyl), NR^3R^4, OR^3 and SR^3;

R^3 and R^4 are independently selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, C_{1-3}alkyl, COR^5, $CONR^5R^6$, CO_2R^5, C_{1-2}alkyl-NR^5R^6;

or R^3 and R^4 together with the nitrogen atom to which they are attached form a monocyclic 4- to 7- membered cyclic amine group, which group is optionally substituted with one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of NR^5R^6, C_{1-2}alkoxy and oxo;

R^5 and R^6 are independently selected from hydrogen and C_{1-4}alkyl;

R^{10} is selected from the group consisting of phenyl and pyridyl, wherein the phenyl is optionally substituted with one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of C_{1-4}alkyl, O (oxo), S(sulfinyl), $CONR^3R^4$, NR^3R^4, OR^8, hydroxyl, OCF_3, $-CF_3$, R^8, C_{3-7}cycoalkyl, C_{4-7}heterocyclyl, COR^{13}, SO_2R^{13}, C_{1-4}alkyl-CO_2R^{14}, C_{1-4}alkyl-OR^{14}, C_{1-4}alkyl-$NR^{14}R^{15}$, C_{1-4}alkyl-C_{3-7}cycloalkyl, COC_{1-4}alkyl-$NR^{14}R^{15}$, an amino acid, and a quaternary ammonium cation ($NR^{16}{}_4^+$), and the pyridyl is optionally substituted with one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of halogen, C_{1-4}alkyl, O (oxo), S(sulfinyl), C_{1-4}alkoxy, $CONR^3R^4$, NR^3R^4, OR^8, hydroxyl, OCF_3, $-CF_3$, R^8, C_{3-7}cycoalkyl, C_{4-7}heterocyclyl, COR^{13}, SO_2R^{13}, C_{1-4}alkyl-CO_2R^{14}, C_{1-4}alkyl-OR^{14}, C_{1-4}alkyl-$NR^{14}R^{15}$, C_{1-4}alkyl-C_{3-7}cycloalkyl, COC_{1-4}alkyl-$NR^{14}R^{15}$, an amino acid, and a quaternary ammonium cation ($NR^{16}{}_4^+$); and

R^8 is selected from the group consisting of 3- to 5- membered cycloalkyl and CH_2R^9;

R^9 is selected from the group consisting of phenyl, monocyclic 5- or 6-membered heteroaryl and monocyclic C_{3-7}cycloalkyl, the phenyl or 5- or 6-membered heteroaryl being optionally substituted with one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of halogen, C_{1-2}alkyl, O (oxo), S (sulfinyl), NR^3R^4, OR^3 and SR^3.

According to a fourth aspect of the present invention, there is provided a compound of the invention as defined above for the first, second and third aspects, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, derivative, hydrate, solvate, complex, isomer, tautomer, bioisostere, *N*-oxide, ester, prodrug, isotope or protected form thereof.

According to a fifth aspect of the present invention, there is provided a compound of the invention as defined above for the first, second and third aspects, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, derivative, hydrate, solvate, complex, isomer, tautomer, bioisostere, *N*-oxide, ester, prodrug, isotope or protected form thereof, for use in therapy or prophylaxis of an infection with, or disease caused by, *Enterobacteriaceae*.

In a further aspect of the present invention, there is provided a compound of the invention as defined above for the first, second and third aspects, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, derivative, hydrate, solvate, complex, isomer, tautomer, bioisostere, *N*-oxide, ester, prodrug, isotope or protected form thereof, for use in a method of treatment of an infection with, or a disease caused by, *Enterobacteriaceae*.

In a further aspect of the present invention, there is provided a compound of the invention as defined above for the first, second and third aspects, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, derivative, hydrate, solvate, complex, isomer, tautomer, bioisostere, *N*-oxide, ester, prodrug, isotope or protected form thereof, together with a pharmaceutically acceptable excipient or carrier.

In a further aspect of the present invention, there is provided the use of a compound of the invention as defined above for the first, second and third aspects, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, derivative, hydrate, solvate, complex, isomer,

2018361828 19 Apr 2023

tautomer, bioisostere, *N*-oxide, ester, prodrug, isotope or protected form thereof, for the manufacture of a medicament for use in the treatment of an infection with, or a disease caused by, *Enterobacteriaceae*.

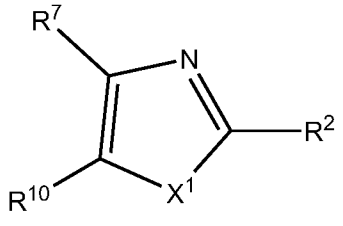
In a further aspect of the present invention, there is provided a method of treating an infection with, or disease caused by, *Enterobacteriaceae* in a subject in need thereof, comprising administering to said subject an effective amount of a compound of the invention as defined above for the first, second and third aspects, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, derivative, hydrate, solvate, complex, isomer, tautomer, bioisostere, *N*-oxide, ester, prodrug, isotope or protected form thereof.

In a further aspect of the present invention, there is provided an *Enterobacteriaceae* bactericidal or bacteriostatic composition comprising a compound or composition of the invention as defined above for the first, second and third aspects.

In a further aspect of the present invention, there is provided a pharmaceutical formulation comprising a compound of the invention as defined above for the first, second and third aspects and a pharmaceutically acceptable excipient.

The compounds of the invention as defined above for the first, second and third aspects have bactericidal and/or bacteriostatic activity against *Enterobacteriaceae* and may be used in the treatment or prophylaxis of an infection with, or a disease caused by, Enterobacteriaceae.

In a further aspect of the present invention, there is provided a compound of general formula (II), or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, hydrate, solvate or ester thereof for use in the treatment of infection with, or disease caused by the bacterium *Enterobacteriaceae*:



(II)

wherein

X^1 is selected from NR^1 or S;

R^1 is selected from hydrogen or C_{1-2}alkyl;

R^2 is selected from the group consisting of S (sulfinyl), O (oxo), NR^3R^4, cyano, -$CH_2NR^5R^6$, methyl (-CH_3), halogen, hydroxyl, -$CONR^3R^4$, COOH and monocyclic 4- to 7- membered heterocyclyl, wherein the 4- to 7- membered heterocyclyl is optionally substituted with one or more C_{1-4}alkyl groups;

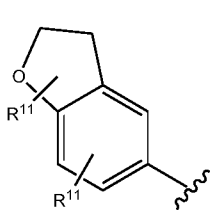
R^3 and R^4 are independently selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, C_{1-3}alkyl, COR^5, $CONR^5R^6$, CO_2R^5, C_{1-2}alkyl-NR^5R^6;

or R^3 and R^4 together with the nitrogen atom to which they are attached form a monocyclic 4- to 7- membered cyclic amine group, which group is optionally substituted with one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of NR^5R^6, C_{1-2}alkoxy and oxo;

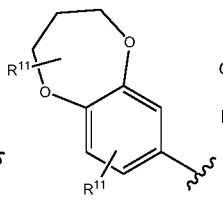
R^5 and R^6 are independently selected from the group consisting of hydrogen and C_{1-4}alkyl;

R^7 is selected from the group consisting of phenyl, monocyclic 5- to 7- membered heterocyclyl and monocyclic 5- or 6-membered heteroaryl, wherein the phenyl, 5- to 7-membered heterocyclyl and 5- or 6-membered heteroaryl are optionally substituted with one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of halogen, C_{1-2}alkyl, C_{1-2}alkoxy, NR^3R^4, $CONR^3R^4$, OR^8, OCF_3, C_{1-2}alkoxy-CN and hydroxyl;

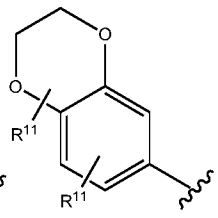
or R^7 is a fused bicyclic system selected from the group consisting of any one of (Ia) to (Ik):



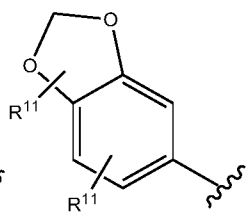
(Ia)



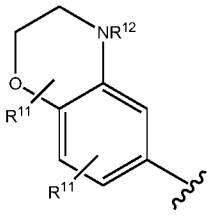
(Ib)



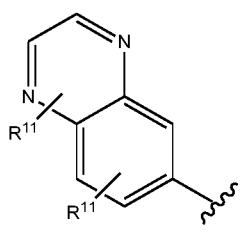
(Ic)



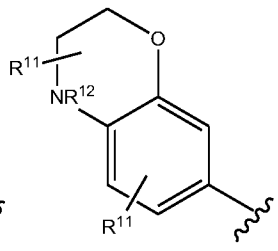
(Id)



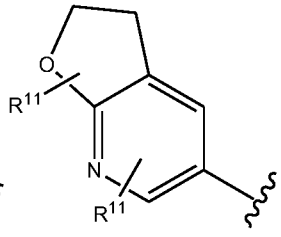
(Ie)



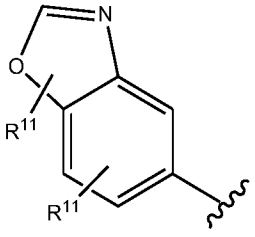
(If)



(Ig)

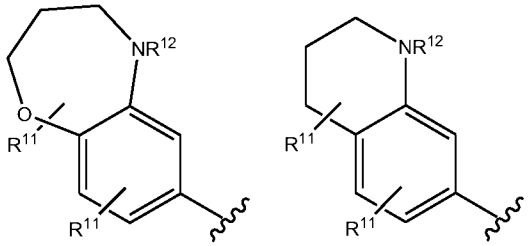


(Ih)



(Ii)

2018361828 19 Apr 2023



(Ij) (Ik)

wherein each R^{11} is independently selected from hydrogen, halogen, O (oxo), and C_{1-4}alkyl; and R^{12} is selected from hydrogen, C_{1-4}alkyl, C_{3-7}cycloalkyl, C_{4-7}heterocyclyl, COR^{13}, SO_2R^{13}, C_{1-4}-CO_2R^{14}, C_{1-4}alkyl-OR^{14}, C_{1-4}alkyl-$NR^{14}R^{15}$, C_{1-4}alkyl-C_{3-7}cycloalkyl, COC_{1-4}alkyl-$NR^{14}R^{15}$, an amino acid, and a quaternary ammonium cation ($NH^{16}{}_4^+$);

R^{13} is selected from C_{1-4}alkyl, C_{3-7}cycloalkyl, phenyl, and monocyclic 5- or 6-membered heteroaryl, the phenyl or 5- or 6- membered heteroaryl being optionally substituted with one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of halogen, C_{1-2}alkyl, O (oxo), S (sulfinyl), NR^3R^4, OR^3, and SR^3;

R^{14} and R^{15} are independently selected from hydrogen, C_{1-4}alkyl, C_{1-4}alkyl-hydroxyl, C_{3-7}cycloalkyl, phenyl, monocyclic 5- or 6- membered heteroaryl, and SO_2R^{13}, the phenyl or 5- or 6- membered heteroaryl being optionally substituted with one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of halogen, C_{1-2}alkyl, O (oxo), S (sulfinyl), NR^3R^4, OR^3, and SR^3;

R^{16} groups are independently selected from C_{1-4}alkyl and phenyl, the phenyl being optionally substituted with one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of halogen, C_{1-2}alkyl, O (oxo), S (sulfinyl), NR^3R^4, OR^3, and SR^3;

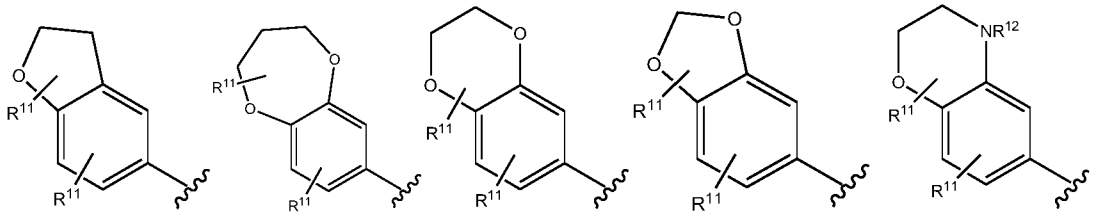
R^8 is selected from the group consisting of 3- to 5- membered cycloalkyl and CH_2R^9;

R^9 is selected from the group consisting of phenyl, monocyclic 5- or 6-membered heteroaryl and monocyclic C_{3-7}cycloalkyl, the phenyl or 5- or 6-membered heteroaryl being optionally substituted with one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of halogen, C_{1-2}alkyl, O (oxo), S (sulfinyl), NR^3R^4, OR^3 and SR^3;

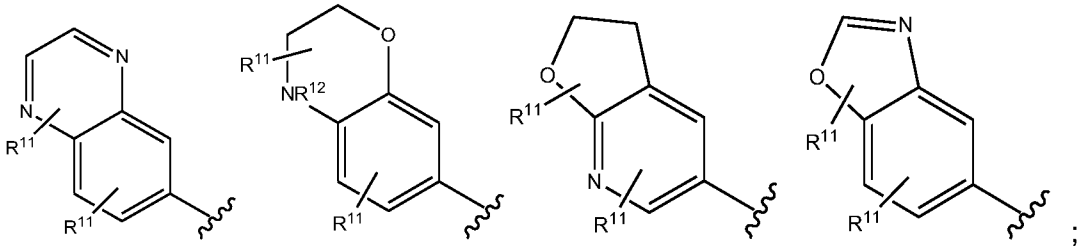
R^{10} is selected from the group consisting of phenyl and monocyclic 5- or 6-membered heteroaryl ring, wherein the phenyl and 5- or 6-membered heteroaryl rings are optionally substituted with one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of halogen, C_{1-4}alkyl, O (oxo), S(sulfinyl), C_{1-4}alkoxy, $CONR^3R^4$, NR^3R^4, OR^8, hydroxyl, OCF_3, $-CF_3$, R^8, C_{3-7}cycoalkyl, C_{4-7}heterocyclyl, COR^{13}, SO_2R^{13},

2018361828 19 Apr 2023

C_{1-4}alkyl-CO_2R^{14}, C_{1-4}alkyl-OR^{14}, C_{1-4}alkyl-$NR^{14}R^{15}$, C_{1-4}alkyl-C_{3-7}cycloalkyl, COC_{1-4}alkyl-$NR^{14}R^{15}$, an amino acid, and a quaternary ammonium cation ($NH^{16}{}_4^+$);
or R^{10} is a fused bicyclic system selected from the group consisting of any one of (Ia) to (Ii):



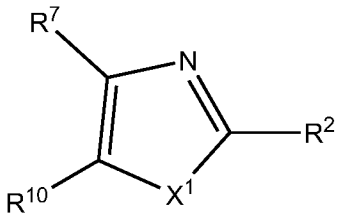
(Ia) (Ib) (Ic) (Id) (Ie)



(If) (Ig) (Ih) (Ii);

wherein each R^{11} is independently selected from hydrogen, halogen, and C_{1-4}alkyl and R^{12} is selected from hydrogen, and C_{1-4}alkyl.

In a further aspect of the present invention, there is provided a use of a compound, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, hydrate, solvate, prodrug, or ester thereof, in the manufacture of a medicament for the treatment of infection with, or disease caused by, the bacterium *Enterobacteriaceae*, having the general formula (II):



(II)

wherein
X^1 is selected from NR^1;

2018361828 19 Apr 2023

R^1 is selected from hydrogen or C_{1-2}alkyl;

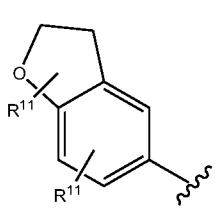
R^2 is NR^3R^4;

R^3 and R^4 are independently selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, C_{1-3}alkyl, COR^5, $CONR^5R^6$, CO_2R^5, C_{1-2}alkyl-NR^5R^6;

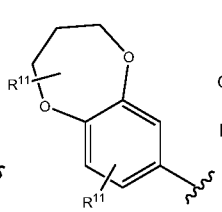
R^5 and R^6 are independently selected from the group consisting of hydrogen and C_{1-4}alkyl;

R^7 is selected from the group consisting of phenyl, monocyclic 5- to 7- membered heterocyclyl and monocyclic 5- or 6-membered heteroaryl, wherein the phenyl is substituted with one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of NR^3R^4, $CONR^3R^4$, OR^8, OCF_3, OCH_2CN and hydroxyl, and the monocyclic 5- or to 7- membered heterocyclyl and monocyclic 5- or 6-membered heteroaryl groups are optionally substituted with one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of halogen, C_{1-2}alkyl, C_{1-2}alkoxy, NR^3R^4, $CONR^3R^4$, OR^8, OCF_3, C_{1-2}alkoxy-CN and hydroxyl;

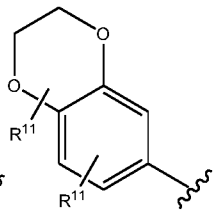
or R^7 is a fused bicyclic system selected from the group consisting of any one of (Ia) to (Ik):



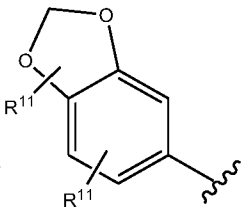
(Ia)



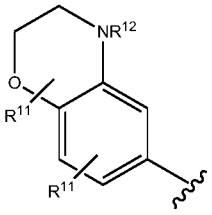
(Ib)



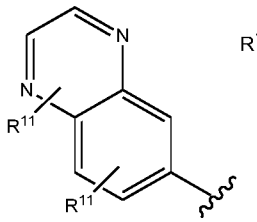
(Ic)



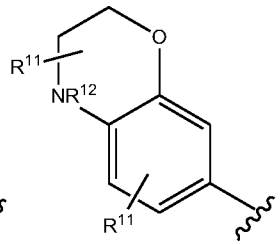
(Id)



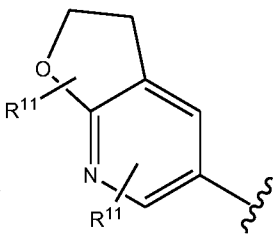
(Ie)



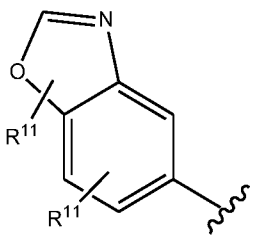
(If)



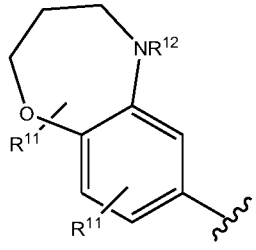
(Ig)

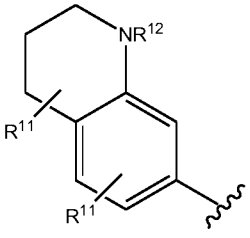


(Ih)



(Ii)





2018361828 19 Apr 2023

(Ij) (Ik)

wherein each R^{11} is independently selected from hydrogen, halogen, O (oxo), and C_{1-4}alkyl; and R^{12} is selected from hydrogen, C_{1-4}alkyl, C_{3-7}cycloalkyl, C_{4-7}heterocyclyl, COR^{13}, SO_2R^{13}, C_{1-4}alkyl-CO_2R^{14}, C_{1-4}alkyl-OR^{14}, C_{1-4}alky-$NR^{14}R^{15}$, C_{1-4}alkyl-C_{3-7}cycloalkyl, COC_{1-4}alkyl-$NR^{14}R^{15}$, an amino acid, and a quaternary ammonium cation ($NR^{16}{}_4^+$);

R^{13} is selected from C_{1-4}alkyl, C_{3-7}cycloalkyl, phenyl, and monocyclic 5- or 6-membered heteroaryl, the phenyl or 5- or 6- membered heteroaryl being optionally substituted with one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of halogen, C_{1-2}alkyl, O (oxo), S (sulfinyl), NR^3R^4, OR^3 and SR^3;

R^{14} and R^{15} are independently selected from hydrogen, C_{1-4}alkyl, C_{1-4}alkyl-hydroxyl, C_{3-7}cycloalkyl, phenyl, monocyclic 5- or 6- membered heteroaryl, and SO_2R^{13}, the phenyl or 5- or 6- membered heteroaryl being optionally substituted with one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of halogen, C_{1-2}alkyl, O (oxo), S (sulfinyl), NR^3R^4, OR^3 and SR^3;

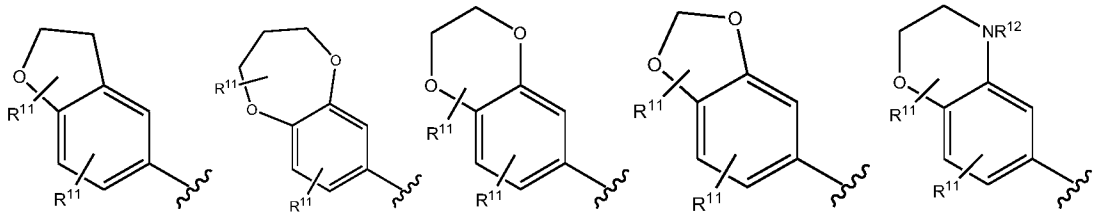
R^{16} groups are independently selected from C_{1-4}alkyl and phenyl, the phenyl being optionally substituted with one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of halogen, C_{1-2}alkyl, O (oxo), S (sulfinyl), NR^3R^4, OR^3 and SR^3;

R^8 is selected from the group consisting of 3- to 5- membered cycloalkyl and CH_2R^9;

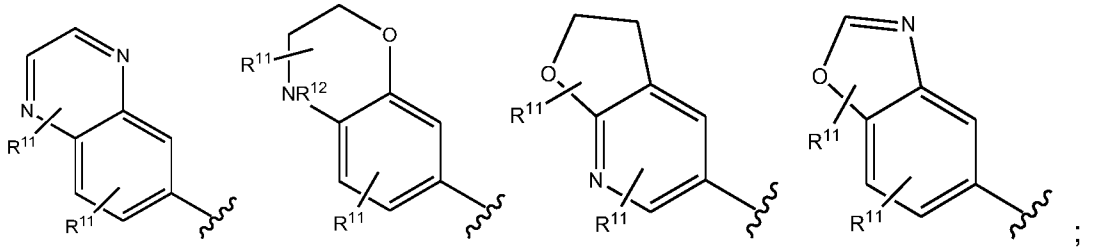
R^9 is selected from the group consisting of phenyl, monocyclic 5- or 6-membered heteroaryl and monocyclic C_{3-7}cycloalkyl, the phenyl or 5- or 6-membered heteroaryl being optionally substituted with one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of halogen, C_{1-2}alkyl, O (oxo), S (sulfinyl), NR^3R^4, OR^3 and SR^3;

R^{10} is selected from the group consisting of phenyl and monocyclic 5- or 6-membered heteroaryl ring, wherein the phenyl is optionally substituted with one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of C_{1-4}alkyl, O (oxo), S(sulfinyl), $CONR^3R^4$, NR^3R^4, OR^8, hydroxyl, OCF_3, $-CF_3$, R^8, C_{3-7}cycoalkyl, C_{4-7}heterocyclyl, COR^{13}, SO_2R^{13}, C_{1-4}alkyl-CO_2R^{14}, C_{1-4}alkyl-OR^{14}, C_{1-4}alkyl-$NR^{14}R^{15}$, C_{1-4}alkyl-C_{3-7}cycloalkyl, COC_{1-4}alkyl-$NR^{14}R^{15}$, an amino acid, and a quaternary ammonium cation ($NR^{16}{}_4^+$), and the 5- or 6-membered heteroaryl rings are

optionally substituted with one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of halogen, C_{1-4}alkyl, O (oxo), S(sulfinyl), C_{1-4}alkoxy, $CONR^3R^4$, NR^3R^4, OR^8, hydroxyl, OCF_3, $-CF_3$, R^8, C_{3-7}cycoalkyl, C_{4-7}heterocyclyl, COR^{13}, SO_2R^{13}, C_{1-4}alkyl-CO_2R^{14}, C_{1-4}alkyl-OR^{14}, C_{1-4}alkyl-$NR^{14}R^{15}$, C_{1-4}alkyl-C_{3-7}cycloalkyl, COC_{1-4}alkyl-$NR^{14}R^{15}$, an amino acid, and a quaternary ammonium cation ($NR^{16}{}_4^+$); or R^{10} is a fused bicyclic system selected from the group consisting of any one of (Ia) to (Ii):



(Ia) (Ib) (Ic) (Id) (Ie)

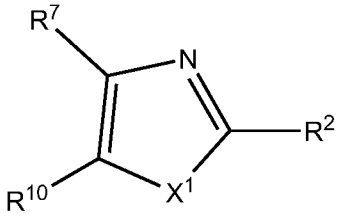


(If) (Ig) (Ih) (Ii) ;

wherein each R^{11} is independently selected from hydrogen, halogen or C_{1-4}alkyl and R^{12} is selected from hydrogen, or C_{1-4}alkyl.

In a further aspect of the present invention, there is provided a method of treating an infection with, or disease caused by, the bacterium *Enterobacteriaceae* in a subject in need thereof, the method comprising administering to said subject a compound having the general formula (II), or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, hydrate, solvate, prodrug, or ester thereof:

2018361828 19 Apr 2023



(II)

wherein

X^1 is selected from NR^1;

R^1 is selected from hydrogen or C_{1-2}alkyl;

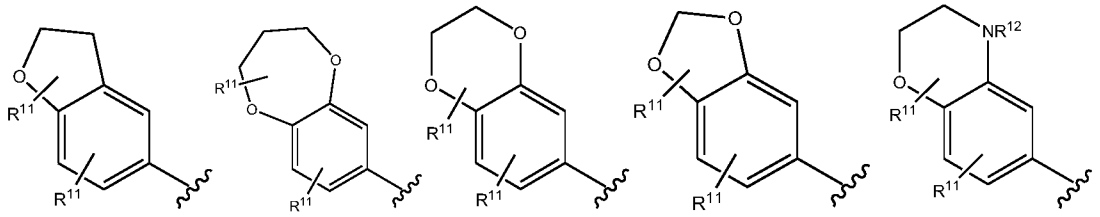
R^2 is NR^3R^4;

R^3 and R^4 are independently selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, C_{1-3}alkyl, COR^5, $CONR^5R^6$, CO_2R^5, C_{1-2}alkyl-NR^5R^6;

R^5 and R^6 are independently selected from the group consisting of hydrogen and C_{1-4}alkyl;

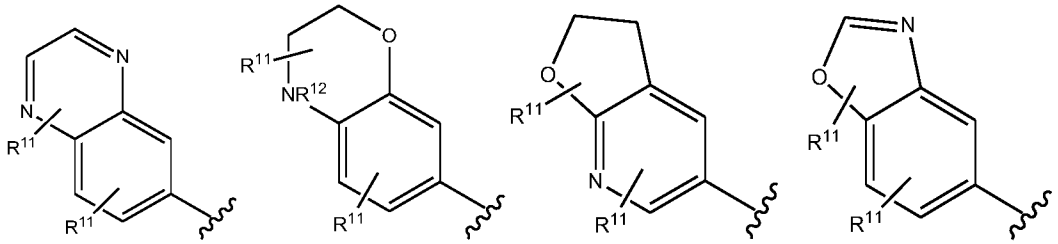
R^7 is selected from the group consisting of phenyl, monocyclic 5- to 7- membered heterocyclyl and monocyclic 5- or 6-membered heteroaryl, wherein the phenyl is substituted with one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of NR^3R^4, $CONR^3R^4$, OR^8, OCF_3, OCH_2CN and hydroxyl, and the monocyclic 5- or to 7- membered heterocyclyl and monocyclic 5- or 6-membered heteroaryl groups are optionally substituted with one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of halogen, C_{1-2}alkyl, C_{1-2}alkoxy, NR^3R^4, $CONR^3R^4$, OR^8, OCF_3, C_{1-2}alkoxy-CN and hydroxyl;

or R^7 is a fused bicyclic system selected from the group consisting of any one of (Ia) to (Ik):

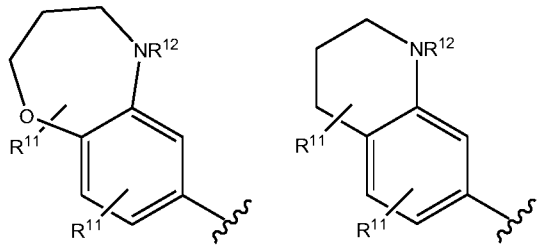


(Ia) (Ib) (Ic) (Id) (Ie)

2018361828 19 Apr 2023



(If) (Ig) (Ih) (Ii)



(Ij) (Ik)

wherein each R^{11} is independently selected from hydrogen, halogen, O (oxo), and C_{1-4}alkyl; and R^{12} is selected from hydrogen, C_{1-4}alkyl, C_{3-7}cycloalkyl, C_{4-7}heterocyclyl, COR^{13}, SO_2R^{13}, C_{1-4}alkyl-CO_2R^{14}, C_{1-4}alkyl-OR^{14}, C_{1-4}alky-$NR^{14}R^{15}$, C_{1-4}alkyl-C_{3-7}cycloalkyl, COC_{1-4}alkyl-$NR^{14}R^{15}$, an amino acid, and a quaternary ammonium cation ($NR^{16}{}_4{}^+$);

R^{13} is selected from C_{1-4}alkyl, C_{3-7}cycloalkyl, phenyl, and monocyclic 5- or 6-membered heteroaryl, the phenyl or 5- or 6- membered heteroaryl being optionally substituted with one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of halogen, C_{1-2}alkyl, O (oxo), S (sulfinyl), NR^3R^4, OR^3 and SR^3;

R^{14} and R^{15} are independently selected from hydrogen, C_{1-4}alkyl, C_{1-4}alkyl-hydroxyl, C_{3-7}cycloalkyl, phenyl, monocyclic 5- or 6- membered heteroaryl, and SO_2R^{13}, the phenyl or 5- or 6- membered heteroaryl being optionally substituted with one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of halogen, C_{1-2}alkyl, O (oxo), S (sulfinyl), NR^3R^4, OR^3 and SR^3;

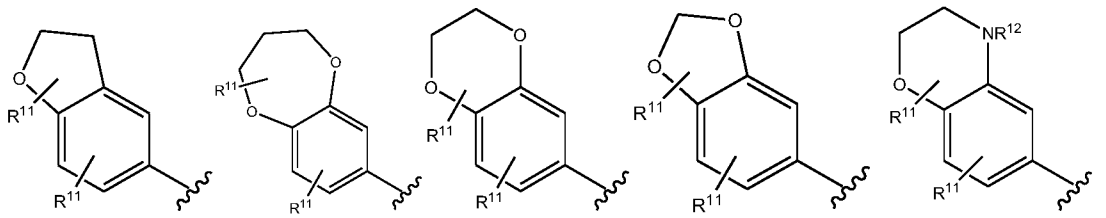
R^{16} groups are independently selected from C_{1-4}alkyl and phenyl, the phenyl being optionally substituted with one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of halogen, C_{1-2}alkyl, O (oxo), S (sulfinyl), NR^3R^4, OR^3 and SR^3;

R^8 is selected from the group consisting of 3- to 5- membered cycloalkyl and CH_2R^9;

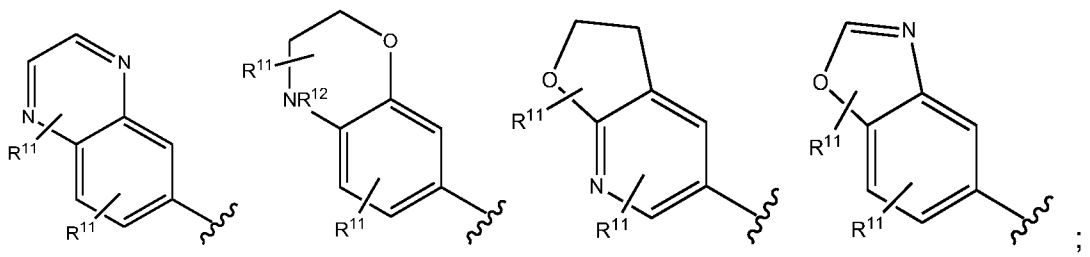
2018361828 19 Apr 2023

R^9 is selected from the group consisting of phenyl, monocyclic 5- or 6-membered heteroaryl and monocyclic C_{3-7}cycloalkyl, the phenyl or 5- or 6-membered heteroaryl being optionally substituted with one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of halogen, C_{1-2}alkyl, O (oxo), S (sulfinyl), NR^3R^4, OR^3 and SR^3;

R^{10} is selected from the group consisting of phenyl and monocyclic 5- or 6-membered heteroaryl ring, wherein the phenyl is optionally substituted with one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of C_{1-4}alkyl, O (oxo), S(sulfinyl), $CONR^3R^4$, NR^3R^4, OR^8, hydroxyl, OCF_3, $-CF_3$, R^8, C_{3-7}cycoalkyl, C_{4-7}heterocyclyl, COR^{13}, SO_2R^{13}, C_{1-4}alkyl-CO_2R^{14}, C_{1-4}alkyl-OR^{14}, C_{1-4}alkyl-$NR^{14}R^{15}$, C_{1-4}alkyl-C_{3-7}cycloalkyl, COC_{1-4}alkyl-$NR^{14}R^{15}$, an amino acid, and a quaternary ammonium cation ($NR^{16}{}_4^+$), and the 5- or 6-membered heteroaryl rings are optionally substituted with one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of halogen, C_{1-4}alkyl, O (oxo), S(sulfinyl), C_{1-4}alkoxy, $CONR^3R^4$, NR^3R^4, OR^8, hydroxyl, OCF_3, $-CF_3$, R^8, C_{3-7}cycoalkyl, C_{4-7}heterocyclyl, COR^{13}, SO_2R^{13}, C_{1-4}alkyl-CO_2R^{14}, C_{1-4}alkyl-OR^{14}, C_{1-4}alkyl-$NR^{14}R^{15}$, C_{1-4}alkyl-C_{3-7}cycloalkyl, COC_{1-4}alkyl-$NR^{14}R^{15}$, an amino acid, and a quaternary ammonium cation ($NR^{16}{}_4^+$); or R^{10} is a fused bicyclic system selected from the group consisting of any one of (Ia) to (Ii):



(Ia) (Ib) (Ic) (Id) (Ie)



(If) (Ig) (Ih) (Ii) ;

2018361828 19 Apr 2023

wherein each R^{11} is independently selected from hydrogen, halogen or C_{1-4}alkyl and R^{12} is selected from hydrogen, or C_{1-4}alkyl.

Other aspects and embodiments of the invention are as defined in the claims attached hereto.

Definitions

Where used herein and unless specifically indicated otherwise, the following terms are intended to have the following meanings in addition to any broader (or narrower) meanings the terms might enjoy in the art:

Unless otherwise required by context, the use herein of the singular is to be read to include the plural and *vice versa*. The term "a" or "an" used in relation to an entity is to be read to refer to one or more of that entity. As such, the terms "a" (or "an"), "one or more," and "at least one" are used interchangeably herein.

As used herein, the term "comprise," or variations thereof such as "comprises" or "comprising," are to be read to indicate the inclusion of any recited integer (e.g. a feature, element, characteristic, property, method/process step or limitation) or group of integers (e.g. features, element, characteristics, properties, method/process steps or limitations) but not the exclusion of any other integer or group of integers. Thus, as used herein the term "comprising" is inclusive or open-ended and does not exclude additional, unrecited integers or method/process steps.

As used herein, the term "consisting" is used to indicate the presence of the recited integer (e.g. a feature, element, characteristic, property, method/process step or limitation) or group of integers (e.g. features, element, characteristics, properties, method/process steps or limitations) alone.

Reference to any prior art in this specification is not, and should not be taken as, an acknowledgement or any form of suggestion that such prior art forms part of the common general knowledge.

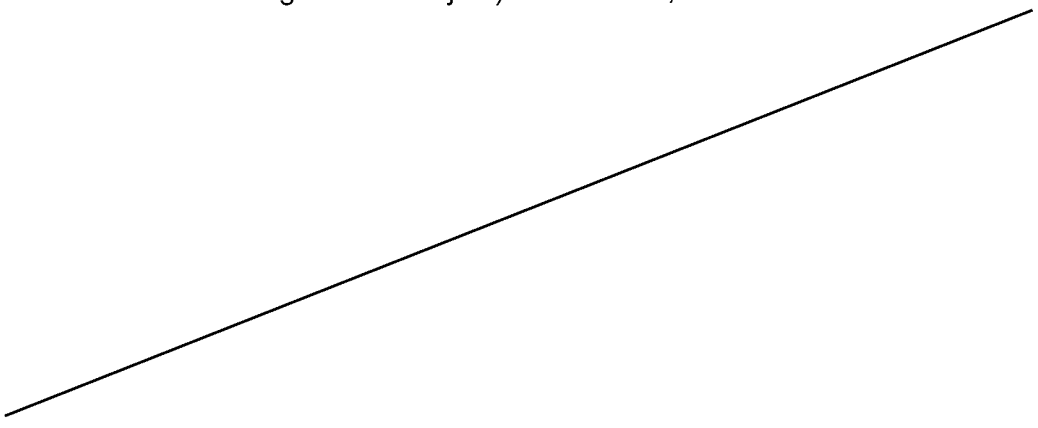
As used herein, the term “disease” is used to define any abnormal condition that impairs physiological function and is associated with specific symptoms. The term is used broadly to encompass any disorder, illness, abnormality, pathology, sickness, condition or syndrome in which physiological function is impaired irrespective of the nature of the aetiology (or indeed whether the aetiological basis for the disease is established). It therefore encompasses conditions arising from trauma, injury, surgery, radiological ablation, poisoning or nutritional deficiencies.

As used herein, the term "bacterial disease" refers to any disease that involves (e.g. is caused, exacerbated, associated with or characterized by the presence of) a bacterium residing and/or replicating in the body and/or cells of a subject. The term therefore includes diseases caused or exacerbated by bacterial toxins (which may also be referred to herein as “bacterial intoxication”).

As used herein, the term “bacterial infection” is used to define a condition in which a subject is infected with a bacterium. The infection may be symptomatic or asymptomatic. In the former case, the subject may be identified as infected on the basis of established diagnostic criteria. In the latter case, the subject may be identified as infected on the basis of various tests, including for example biochemical tests, serological tests, microbiological culture and/or microscopy.

Thus, the invention finds application in the treatment of subjects in which bacterial infection has been diagnosed or detected.

As used herein, the term "treatment" or "treating" refers to an intervention (e.g. the administration of an agent to a subject) which cures, ameliorates or lessens the



symptoms of a disease or removes (or lessens the impact of) its cause(s) (for example, the causative bacterium). In this case, the term is used synonymously with the term “therapy”. Thus, the treatment of infection according to the invention may be characterized by the (direct or indirect) bacteriostatic and/or bactericidal action of the compounds of the invention. Thus, the compounds of the invention find application in methods of killing, or preventing the growth of, bacterial cells.

Additionally, the terms "treatment" or "treating" refers to an intervention (e.g. the administration of an agent to a subject) which prevents or delays the onset or progression of a disease or reduces (or eradicates) its incidence within a treated population. In this case, the term treatment is used synonymously with the term “prophylaxis”.

The term "subject" (which is to be read to include "individual", "animal", "patient" or "mammal" where context permits) defines any subject, particularly a mammalian subject, for whom treatment is indicated. Mammalian subjects include, but are not limited to, humans, domestic animals, farm animals, zoo animals, sport animals, pet animals such as dogs, cats, guinea pigs, rabbits, rats, mice, horses, cattle, cows; primates such as apes, monkeys, orangutans, and chimpanzees; canids such as dogs and wolves; felids such as cats, lions, and tigers; equids such as horses, donkeys, and zebras; food animals such as cows, pigs, and sheep; ungulates such as deer and giraffes; rodents such as mice, rats, hamsters and guinea pigs; and so on. In preferred embodiments, the subject is a human, for example an infant human or a geriatric human.

The terms "Gram-negative bacterium" and "Gram-positive bacterium" are terms of art defining two distinct classes of bacteria on the basis of certain cell wall staining characteristics.

As used herein, the term “combination”, as applied to two or more compounds and/or agents (also referred to herein as the components), is intended to define material in which the two or more compounds/agents are associated. The terms “combined” and “combining” in this context are to be interpreted accordingly.

The association of the two or more compounds/agents in a combination may be physical or non-physical. Examples of physically associated combined compounds/agents include:

compositions (e.g. unitary formulations) comprising the two or more compounds/agents in admixture (for example within the same unit dose);

compositions comprising material in which the two or more compounds/agents are chemically/physicochemically linked (for example by crosslinking, molecular agglomeration or binding to a common vehicle moiety);

compositions comprising material in which the two or more compounds/agents are chemically/physicochemically co-packaged (for example, disposed on or within lipid vesicles, particles (e.g. micro- or nanoparticles) or emulsion droplets);

pharmaceutical kits, pharmaceutical packs or patient packs in which the two or more compounds/agents are co-packaged or co-presented (e.g. as part of an array of unit doses);

Examples of non-physically associated combined compounds/agents include:

material (e.g. a non-unitary formulation) comprising at least one of the two or more compounds/agents together with instructions for the extemporaneous association of the at least one compound/agent to form a physical association of the two or more compounds/agents;

material (e.g. a non-unitary formulation) comprising at least one of the two or more compounds/agents together with instructions for combination therapy with the two or more compounds/agents;

material comprising at least one of the two or more compounds/agents together with instructions for administration to a patient population in which the other(s) of the two or more compounds/agents have been (or are being) administered;

material comprising at least one of the two or more compounds/agents in an amount or in a form which is specifically adapted for use in combination with the other(s) of the two or more compounds/agents.

As used herein, the term “combination therapy” is intended to define therapies which comprise the use of a combination of two or more compounds/agents (as defined above). Thus, references to “combination therapy”, “combinations” and the use of compounds/agents “in combination” in this application may refer to

compounds/agents that are administered as part of the same overall treatment regimen. As such, the posology of each of the two or more compounds/agents may differ: each may be administered at the same time or at different times. It will therefore be appreciated that the compounds/agents of the combination may be administered sequentially (e.g. before or after) or simultaneously, either in the same pharmaceutical formulation (i.e. together), or in different pharmaceutical formulations (i.e. separately). Simultaneously in the same formulation is as a unitary formulation whereas simultaneously in different pharmaceutical formulations is non-unitary. Each of the two or more compounds/agents in a combination therapy may also be administered *via* a different route and/or according to a different dosing regimen/duration.

As used herein, the term "pharmaceutical kit" defines an array of one or more unit doses of a pharmaceutical composition together with dosing means (e.g. measuring device) and/or delivery means (e.g. inhaler or syringe), optionally all contained within common outer packaging. In pharmaceutical kits comprising a combination of two or more compounds/agents, the individual compounds/agents may unitary or non-unitary formulations. The unit dose(s) may be contained within a blister pack. The pharmaceutical kit may optionally further comprise instructions for use.

As used herein, the term "pharmaceutical pack" defines an array of one or more unit doses of a pharmaceutical composition, optionally contained within common outer packaging. In pharmaceutical packs comprising a combination of two or more compounds/agents, the individual compounds/agents may unitary or non-unitary formulations. The unit dose(s) may be contained within a blister pack. The pharmaceutical pack may optionally further comprise instructions for use.

As used herein, the term "patient pack" defines a package, prescribed to a patient, which contains pharmaceutical compositions for the whole course of treatment. Patient packs usually contain one or more blister pack(s). Patient packs have an advantage over traditional prescriptions, where a pharmacist divides a patient's supply of a pharmaceutical from a bulk supply, in that the patient always has access to the package insert contained in the patient pack, normally missing in patient prescriptions. The inclusion of a package insert has been shown to improve patient

compliance with the physician's instructions. The combinations of the invention may produce a therapeutically efficacious effect relative to the therapeutic effect of the individual compounds/agents when administered separately.

As used herein, an "effective amount" or a "therapeutically effective amount" of a compound defines an amount that can be administered to a subject without excessive toxicity, irritation, allergic response, or other problem or complication, commensurate with a reasonable benefit/risk ratio, but one that is sufficient to provide the desired effect, e.g. the treatment or prophylaxis manifested by a permanent or temporary improvement in the subject's condition. The amount will vary from subject to subject, depending on the age and general condition of the individual, mode of administration and other factors. Thus, while it is not possible to specify an exact effective amount, those skilled in the art will be able to determine an appropriate "effective" amount in any individual case using routine experimentation and background general knowledge. A therapeutic result in this context includes eradication or lessening of symptoms, reduced pain or discomfort, prolonged survival, improved mobility and other markers of clinical improvement. A therapeutic result need not be a complete cure.

As used herein, a "prophylactically effective amount" refers to an amount effective, at dosages and for periods of time necessary, to achieve the desired prophylactic result. Typically, since a prophylactic dose is used in subjects prior to or at an earlier stage of disease, the prophylactically effective amount will be less than the therapeutically effective amount.

The term "adjunctive agent" as used herein is intended to define any compound or composition which yields an efficacious combination (as herein defined) when combined with a compound of the invention. The adjunctive agent or treatment may therefore contribute to efficacy (for example, by producing a synergistic or additive effect or by potentiating the activity of the compound of the invention).

The term "efficacious" includes advantageous effects such as additivity, synergism, reduced side effects, reduced toxicity or improved performance or activity. Advantageously, an efficacious effect may allow for lower doses of each or either

component to be administered to a patient, thereby decreasing the toxicity, whilst producing and/or maintaining the same therapeutic effect. A *synergistic* effect in the present context refers to a therapeutic effect produced by the combination which is larger than the sum of the therapeutic effects of the components of the combination when presented individually. An *additive* effect in the present context refers to a therapeutic effect produced by the combination which is larger than the therapeutic effect of any of the components of the combination when presented individually.

The term “adjunctive” as applied to the use of the compounds and compositions of the invention in therapy or prophylaxis defines uses in which the materials are administered together with one or more other drugs, interventions, regimens or treatments (such as surgery and/or irradiation). Such adjunctive therapies may comprise the concurrent, separate or sequential administration/application of the materials of the invention and the other treatment(s). Thus, in some embodiments, adjunctive use of the materials of the invention is reflected in the formulation of the pharmaceutical compositions of the invention. For example, adjunctive use may be reflected in a specific unit dosage, or in formulations in which the compound of the invention is present in admixture with the other drug(s) with which it is to be used adjunctively (or else physically associated with the other drug(s) within a single unit dose). In other embodiments, adjunctive use of the compounds or compositions of the invention may be reflected in the composition of the pharmaceutical kits of the invention, wherein the compound of the invention is co-packaged (e.g. as part of an array of unit doses) with the other drug(s) with which it is to be used adjunctively. In yet other embodiments, adjunctive use of the compounds of the invention may be reflected in the content of the information and/or instructions co-packaged with the compound relating to formulation and/or posology.

The term "pharmaceutically acceptable salt" as applied to the compounds of the invention defines any non-toxic organic or inorganic acid addition salt of the free base which are suitable for use in contact with the tissues of humans and lower animals without undue toxicity, irritation, allergic response and which are commensurate with a reasonable benefit/risk ratio. Suitable pharmaceutically acceptable salts are well known in the art. Examples are the salts with inorganic acids (for example hydrochloric, hydrobromic, sulphuric and phosphoric acids),

organic carboxylic acids (for example acetic, propionic, glycolic, lactic, pyruvic, malonic, succinic, fumaric, malic, tartaric, citric, ascorbic, maleic, hydroxymaleic, dihydroxymaleic, benzoic, phenylacetic, 4-aminobenzoic, 4-hydroxybenzoic, anthranilic, cinnamic, salicylic, 2-phenoxybenzoic, 2-acetoxybenzoic and mandelic acid) and organic sulfonic acids (for example methanesulfonic acid and p-toluenesulfonic acid).

The term "pharmaceutically acceptable derivative" as applied to the compounds of the invention define compounds which are obtained (or obtainable) by chemical derivatization of the parent compounds of the invention. The pharmaceutically acceptable derivatives are therefore suitable for administration to or use in contact with mammalian tissues without undue toxicity, irritation or allergic response (i.e. commensurate with a reasonable benefit/risk ratio). Preferred derivatives are those obtained (or obtainable) by alkylation, esterification or acylation of the parent compounds of the invention. The derivatives may be active *per se*, or may be inactive until processed *in vivo*. In the latter case, the derivatives of the invention act as prodrugs. Particularly preferred prodrugs are ester derivatives which are esterified at one or more of the free hydroxyls and which are activated by hydrolysis *in vivo*. Other preferred prodrugs are covalently bonded compounds which release the active parent drug according to general formula (I) after cleavage of the covalent bond(s) *in vivo*.

In its broadest aspect, the present invention contemplates all optical isomers, racemic forms and diastereoisomers of the compounds described herein. Those skilled in the art will appreciate that, owing to the asymmetrically substituted carbon atoms present in the compounds of the invention, the compounds may be produced in optically active and racemic forms. If a chiral centre or another form of isomeric centre is present in a compound of the present invention, all forms of such isomer or isomers, including enantiomers and diastereoisomers, are intended to be covered herein. Compounds of the invention containing a chiral centre (or multiple chiral centres) may be used as a racemic mixture, an enantiomerically enriched mixture, or the racemic mixture may be separated using well-known techniques and an individual enantiomer may be used alone. Thus, references to particular compounds of the present invention encompass the products as a mixture of diastereoisomers,

as individual diastereoisomers, as a mixture of enantiomers as well as in the form of individual enantiomers.

Therefore, the present invention contemplates all optical isomers and racemic forms thereof of the compounds of the invention, and unless indicated otherwise (e.g. by use of dash-wedge structural formulae) the compounds shown herein are intended to encompass all possible optical isomers of the compounds so depicted. In cases where the stereochemical form of the compound is important for pharmaceutical utility, the invention contemplates use of an isolated eutomer.

The term "bioisostere" (or simply "isostere") is a term of art used to define drug analogues in which one or more atoms (or groups of atoms) have been substituted with replacement atoms (or groups of atoms) having similar steric and/or electronic features to those atoms which they replace. The substitution of a hydrogen atom or a hydroxyl group with a fluorine atom is a commonly employed bioisosteric replacement. Sila-substitution (C/Si-exchange) is a relatively recent technique for producing isosteres. This approach involves the replacement of one or more specific carbon atoms in a compound with silicon (for a review, see Tacke and Zilch (1986) Endeavour, New Series 10: 191-197). The sila-substituted isosteres (silicon isosteres) may exhibit improved pharmacological properties, and may for example be better tolerated, have a longer half-life or exhibit increased potency (see for example Englebienne (2005) Med. Chem., 1(3): 215-226). Similarly, replacement of an atom by one of its isotopes, for example hydrogen by deuterium, may also lead to improved pharmacological properties, for example leading to longer half-life (see for example Kushner et al (1999) Can J Physiol Pharmacol. 77(2):79-88). In its broadest aspect, the present invention contemplates all bioisosteres (and specifically, all silicon Bioisosteres, and all deuterium Bioisosteres) of the compounds of the invention.

The term "approved drug" as used herein, refers to a drug which has been approved by the US Food and Drug Administration (US FDA) or the European Medicines Agency (EMA) prior to the 1 October 2016.

The term "resistant strains" as used herein, refers to strains of bacteria that have shown resistance or non-susceptibility to one or more known antibacterial drug. A "non-susceptible strain" is one in which the MIC (minimum inhibitory concentration) of a given compound or class of compounds for that strain has shifted to a higher number than for corresponding susceptible strains. For example, it may refer to strains that are non-susceptible to β-lactam antibiotics, strains that are non-susceptible to one or more fluoroquinolones and/or strains that are non-susceptible to one or more other antibiotics (i.e. antibiotics other than β-lactams and fluoroquinolones). In certain embodiments, the term "resistant" may refer to one in which the MIC of a given compound or class of compounds for that strain has shifted to a significantly higher number than for corresponding susceptible strains. A bacterial strain might be said to be resistant to a given antibiotic when it is inhibited *in vitro* by a concentration of this drug that is associated with a high likelihood of therapeutic failure.

The term "multidrug-resistant" as used herein, refers to organisms, such as highly-resistant Gram-negative bacteria (e.g. carbapenemase-producing *Klebsiella pneumoniae*), showing *in vitro* resistance to more than one antimicrobial agent. Such organisms may be resistant to all of the currently available antimicrobial agents or remain susceptible only to older, potentially more toxic, antimicrobial agents.

The term "hypervirulent" as used herein, refers to organisms that are exceptionally virulent, generally as a result of the acquisition of a virulence plasmid. Such organisms are capable of producing severe illness. For completeness, "virulent" refers to organisms capable of producing extremely severe or harmful effects and illness.

The term “mycobacterial disease” defines any disease, disorder, pathology, symptom, clinical condition or syndrome in which bacteria of the genus Mycobacterium (i.e. mycobacteria) act as aetiological agents or in which infection with mycobacteria is implicated, detected or involved. Any mycobacterial infection may be treated, including those in which bacteria of the *Mycobacterium avium* complex (MAC) is involved. This term defines a class of genetically-related bacteria

belonging to the genus Mycobacterium and includes *Mycobacterium avium* subspecies *avium* (MAA), *Mycobacterium avium* subspecies *hominis* (MAH), and *Mycobacterium avium* subspecies *paratuberculosis* (MAP) together with the genetically distinct *Mycobacterium avium intracellulare* (MAI). It may also be that the mycobacterial infection is caused by a mycobacterium selected from: *Mycobacterium tuberculosis, M. abscessus, M. leprae, M. bovis, M. kansasii, M. chelonae, M. africanum, M. canetti* and *M. microti*. The term therefore includes the various forms of TB, leprosy, paediatric lymphadenitis and mycobacterial skin ulcers. The term therefore covers mycobacterial conditions arising from or associated with infection by nontuberculous mycobacteria as well as tuberculous mycobacteria.

All references to particular chemical compounds herein are to be interpreted as covering the compounds *per se*, and also, where appropriate, pharmaceutically acceptable salts, derivatives, hydrates, solvates, complexes, isomers, tautomers, bioisosteres, *N*-oxides, esters, prodrugs, isotopes or protected forms thereof.

The term "C_{1-4}alkyl" denotes a straight or branched alkyl group having from 1 to 4 carbon atoms. For parts of the range C_{1-4}alkyl all subgroups thereof are contemplated such as C_{1-3}alkyl, C_{1-2}alkyl, C_{2-4}alkyl, C_{2-3}alkyl and C_{3-4}alkyl. Examples of said C_{1-4}alkyl include methyl, ethyl, *n*-propyl, isopropyl, *n*-butyl, isobutyl, *sec*-butyl and *tert*-butyl.

The term "C_{1-3}alkylene" denotes a straight or branched divalent saturated hydrocarbon chain having from 1 to 3 carbon atoms. The C_{1-3}alkylene chain may be attached to the rest of the molecule and to the radical group through one carbon within the chain or through any two carbons within the chain. Examples of C_{1-3}alkylene radicals include methylene [$-CH_2-$], 1,2-ethylene [$-CH_2-CH_2-$], 1,1-ethylene [$-CH(CH_3)-$], 1,2-propylene [$-CH_2-CH(CH_3)-$] and 1,3-propylene [$-CH_2-CH_2-CH_2-$]. When referring to a "C_{1-3}alkylene" radical, all subgroups thereof are contemplated, such as C_{1-2}alkylene, C_{1-3}alkylene or C_{2-3}alkylene.

The term "C_{1-4}alkoxy" refers to a straight or branched C_{1-4}alkyl group which is attached to the remainder of the molecule through an oxygen atom. For parts of the

range C_{1-4}alkoxy, all subgroups thereof are contemplated such as C_{1-3}-lkoxy, C_{1-2}alkoxy, C_{2-4}alkoxy, C_{2-3}alkoxy and C_{3-4}alkoxy. Examples of said C_{1-4}alkoxy include methoxy, ethoxy, *n*-propoxy, isopropoxy, *n*-butoxy, isobutoxy, *sec*-butoxy and *tert*-butoxy.

The term "C_{1-4}alkyl-X", wherein X is a substituent means that a single X substituent is connected to any carbon atom of C_{1-4}alkyl. Said C_{1-4}alkyl-X may be attached to the rest of the molecule through a carbon atom of the C_{1-4}alkyl. The substituent X can be any substituent, such as C_{1-4}alkoxy, and C_{3-7}cycloalkyl. Examples of "C_{1-4}alkyl-X" groups include -$CH_2CH_2OCH_3$, and -$C(H)(OCH_3)CH_3$.

The term "-SC_{1-4}alkyl", means that the C_{1-4}alkyl is attached to the rest of the molecule through a S (sulphur) atom. Examples of "-SC_{1-4}alkyl" groups include –SCH_2CH_3.

"Halogen" refers to fluorine, chlorine, bromine or iodine, preferably fluorine and chlorine, most preferably fluorine.

"Hydroxy" and "Hydroxyl" refer to the –OH radical.

"Cyano" refers to the –CN radical.

"Oxo" refers to the carbonyl group =O. It will be appreciated that when an oxo is a substituent on an aromatic group, such as a phenyl group, the oxo will form part of the conjugated system of the aromatic group.

"Sulfinyl" refers to the sulfinyl group =S. It will be appreciated that when a sulfinyl is a substituent on an aromatic group, such as a phenyl group, the sulfinyl will form part of the conjugated system of the aromatic group.

"Boc" refers to a *tert*-butyloxycarbonyl protecting group.

"An amino acid" refers to an organic compound composed of predominately carbon, hydrogen, oxygen and nitrogen atoms, comprising both an amine (-NH_2) and

carboxyl (-COOH) functional group, in addition to a side chain specific to each amino acid.

"A quaternary ammonium cation" refers to a positively charged ion having the structure NR_4^+, R being an alkyl or aryl group, not hydrogen.

“Optional” or “optionally” means that the subsequently described event or circumstance may but need not occur, and that the description includes instances where the event or circumstance occurs and instances in which it does not.

The term “C_{3-7}-cycloalkyl” refers to a monocyclic saturated or partially unsaturated hydrocarbon ring system having from 3 to 7 carbon atoms. Examples of said C_{3-7}-cycloalkyl include cyclopropyl, cyclobutyl, cyclopentyl, cyclohexyl, cyclohexenyl, cycloheptyl, and cycloheptenyl. For parts of the range “C_{3-7}-cycloalkyl” all subgroups thereof are contemplated such as C_{3-7}-cycloalkyl, C_{3-6}-cycloalkyl, C_{3-5}-cycloalkyl, C_{3-4}-cycloalkyl, C_{4-7}-cycloalkyl, C_{4-6}-cycloalkyl, C_{4-5}-cycloalkyl, C_{5-7}-cycloalkyl, C_{5-6}-cycloalkyl, and C_{6-7}-cycloalkyl.

The terms "heterocyclyl", "C_{4-7}heterocyclyl" and "heterocyclic ring" denote a non-aromatic, fully saturated or partially unsaturated, preferably fully saturated, monocyclic ring system having from 4 to 7 ring atoms, especially 5 or 6 ring atoms, in which one or more of the ring atoms are other than carbon, such as nitrogen, sulphur or oxygen. The said ring system may be attached to the rest of the molecule through either a heteroatom or a carbon atom of the ring system. Examples of heterocyclic groups include but are not limited to piperidinyl, morpholinyl, homomorpholinyl, azepanyl, piperazinyl, oxo-piperazinyl, diazepinyl, tertahydropyridinyl, tetrahydropyranyl, pyrrolidinyl, tertrahydrofuranyl, and dihydropyrrolyl.

The terms “heteroaryl” and “heteroaromatic ring” denote a monocyclic heteroaromatic ring comprising 5 to 6 ring atoms in which one or more of the ring atoms are other than carbon, such as nitrogen, sulphur or oxygen. Typically, the heteroaryl ring will contain up to 4 heteroatoms, more typically up to 3 heteroatoms, more usually up to 2, for example a single heteroatom. The said heteroaromatic

ring may be attached to the rest of the molecule through either a heteratom or a carbon atom of the ring system. Examples of heteroaryl groups include but are not limited to furyl, pyrrolyl, thienyl, oxazolyl, isoxazolyl, oxadiazolyl, imidazolyl, oxatriazoly, thiazolyl, isothiazolyl, tetrazolyl, pyrazolyl, pyridinyl, pyrimidinyl, pyridazinyl, pyrazinyl, triazinyl and thiadiazolyl. In some embodiments, the heteroaryl ring contains at least one ring nitrogen atom. The nitrogen atoms in the heteroaryl rings can be basic, as in the case of an imidazole or pyridine, or essentially non-basic as in the case of an indole or pyrrole nitrogen. In general, the number of basic nitrogen atoms present in the heteroaryl group, including any amino group substituents of the ring, will be less than five.

The terms “unsaturated” and “partially saturated” refer to rings wherein the ring structure(s) contains atoms sharing more than one valence bond i.e. the ring contains at least one multiple bond e.g. a C=C, C≡C or N=C bond. The term “fully saturated” refers to rings where there are no multiple bonds between ring atoms. Saturated carbocyclic groups include cycloalkyl groups as defined below. Partially saturated carbocyclic groups include cycloalkene groups as defined below.

Examples of monocyclic non-aromatic heterocyclic groups include 5-, 6-, and 7-membered monocyclic heterocyclic groups. The monocyclic non-aromatic heterocyclic groups may be attached to the rest of the molecule through either a heteroatom or a carbon atom of the heterocyclic group. Particular examples include morpholine, piperidine (e.g. 1-piperidinyl, 2-piperidinyl, 3-piperidinyl and 4-piperidinyl), pyrrolidine (e.g. 1-pyrrolidinyl, 2-pyrrolidinyl and 3-pyrrolidinyl), pyrrolidone, pyran (2H-pyran or 4H-pyran), dihydrothiophene, dihydropyran, dihydrofuran, dihydrothiazole, tetrahydrofuran, tetrahydrothiophene, dioxane, tetrahydropyran (e.g. 4-tetrahydro pyranyl), imidazoline, imidazolidinone, oxazoline, thiazoline, 2-pyrazoline, pyrazolidine, piperazine, and *N*-alkyl piperazines such as *N*-methyl piperazine. Further examples include thiomorpholine and its S-oxide and S,S-dioxide (particularly thiomorpholine). Still further examples include azetidine, piperidone, piperazone, and *N*-alkyl piperidines such as *N*-methyl piperidine.

The term “cyclic amino group” refers to a non-aromatic, fully saturated or partially unsaturated, preferably fully saturated, monocyclic ring system having from 4 to 7

ring atoms, especially 5 or 6 ring atoms, in which one of the ring atoms is nitrogen and the group is attached to the rest of the molecule via this nitrogen atom. In such cyclic amino groups, one or more of the remaining ring atoms may be other than carbon, such as nitrogen, sulphur or oxygen. Examples of such cyclic amino groups include piperidine (1-piperidinyl), pyrrolidine (1-pyrrolidinyl), pyrrolidone, morpholine or piperazine.

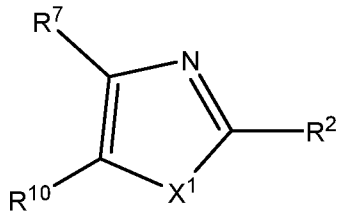
The term "fused bicyclic" as used herein, refers to bicyclic compounds in which two rings share two adjacent carbon atoms.

It will be appreciated that a chemical group(s) is attached to the rest of the molecule by the atom or group listed first. In some instances, the feature "-" also denotes the attachment of chemical groups to each other, or to the rest of the molecule.

The term "one or more substituents", preferably refers to one or two substituents, more preferably to one substituent.

Detailed Description

According to a first preferred embodiment of the compound of general formula (II), or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, hydrate, solvate or ester thereof according to the first aspect of the present invention, there is provided a compound of general formula (III), or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, hydrate, solvate or ester thereof:



(III)

wherein

X^1 is selected from NH or S;

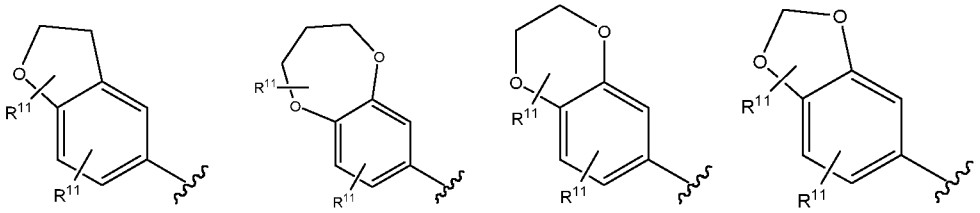
R^2 is selected from the group consisting of NHR^3, Cl, hydroxyl, $-CH_2NR^5R^6$, COOH and $-CONR^3R^4$;

R^3 and R^4 are independently selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, and C_{1-3}alkyl;

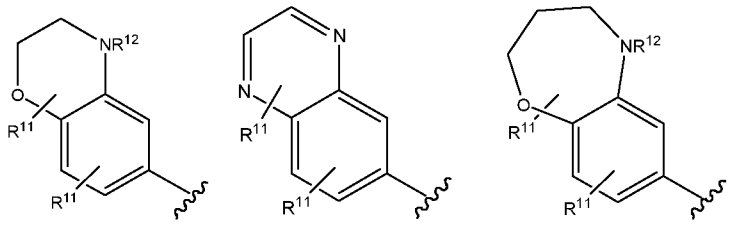
R^5 and R^6 are independently selected from the group consisting of hydrogen and C_{1-2}alkyl;

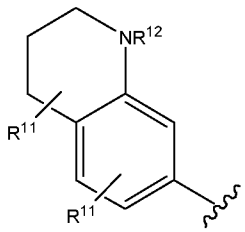
R^7 is selected from the group consisting of phenyl, monocyclic 6-membered nitrogen containing heterocyclyl and monocyclic 6-membered nitrogen containing heteroaryl, wherein the phenyl, 6-membered heterocyclyl and 6-membered heteroaryl groups are optionally substituted with one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of Cl, F, NH_2, NHMe, C_{1-2}alkyl, C_{1-2}alkoxy, $CONR^3R^4$, OCH_2R^9, OCF_3, OCH_2CN, and hydroxyl;

or R^7 is a fused bicyclic system selected from the group consisting of any one of:



(Ia) (Ib) (Ic) (Id)





(Ie) (If) (Ij) (Ik)

wherein each R^{11} is independently selected from hydrogen, halogen, O (oxo), and C_{1-4}alkyl; and R^{12} is selected from hydrogen, C_{1-4}alkyl, C_{3-7}cycloalkyl, C_{4-7}heterocyclyl, COR^{13}, SO_2R^{13}, C_{1-4}alkyl-CO_2R^{14} , C_{1-4}alkyl-OR^{14}, C_{1-4}alky-$NR^{14}R^{15}$, C_{1-4}alkyl-C_{3-7}cycloalkyl, COC_{1-4}alkyl-$NR^{14}R^{15}$, an amino acid, and a quaternary ammonium cation ($NR^{16}{}_4^+$);

R^{13} is selected from C_{1-4}alkyl, C_{3-7}cycloalkyl, phenyl, and monocyclic 5- or 6-membered heteroaryl, the phenyl or 5- or 6- membered heteroaryl being optionally substituted with one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of halogen, C_{1-2}alkyl, O (oxo), S (sulfinyl), NR^3R^4, OR^3 and SR^3;

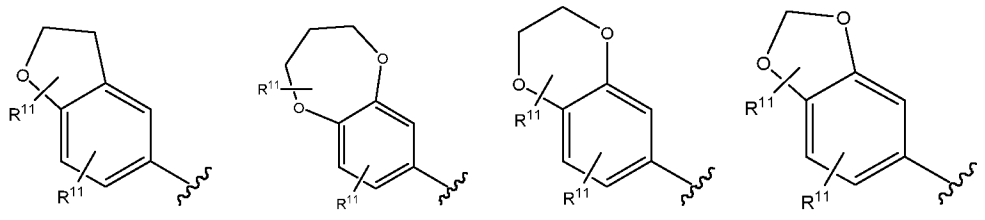
R^{14} and R^{15} are independently selected from hydrogen, C_{1-4}alkyl, C_{1-4}alkyl-hydroxyl, C_{3-7}cycloalkyl, phenyl, monocyclic 5- or 6- membered heteroaryl, and SO_2R^{13}, the phenyl or 5- or 6- membered heteroaryl being optionally substituted with one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of halogen, C_{1-2}alkyl, O (oxo), S (sulfinyl), NR^3R^4, OR^3 and SR^3;

R^{16} groups are independently selected from C_{1-4}alkyl and phenyl, the phenyl being optionally substituted with one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of halogen, C_{1-2}alkyl, O (oxo), S (sulfinyl), NR^3R^4, OR^3 and SR^3;

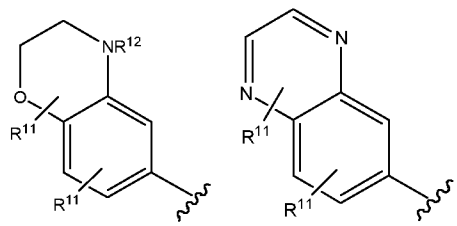
R^9 is selected from the group consisting of phenyl optionally substituted with one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of Cl, F, methyl, NH_2, NHMe, and OH;

R^{10} is selected from the group consisting of phenyl and monocyclic 6-membered nitrogen containing heteroaryl, and monocyclic 6-membered nitrogen containing heterocyclyl, wherein the phenyl, 6-membered heteroaryl and 6-membered heterocyclyl groups are optionally substituted with one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of halogen, C_{1-4}alkyl, O (oxo), S(sulfinyl), C_{1-4}alkoxy, $CONR^3R^4$, NR^3R^4, OR^8, hydroxyl, OCF_3, $-CF_3$, R^8, C_{3-7}cycoalkyl, C_{4-7}heterocyclyl, COR^{13}, SO_2R^{13}, C_{1-4}alkyl-CO_2R^{14}, C_{1-4}alkyl-OR^{14}, C_{1-4}alkyl-$NR^{14}R^{15}$, C_{1-4}alkyl-C_{3-7}cycloalkyl, COC_{1-4}alkyl-$NR^{14}R^{15}$, an amino acid, and a quaternary ammonium cation ($NH^{16}{}_4^+$);

or R^{10} is a fused bicyclic system selected from the group consisting of:



(Ia) (Ib) (Ic) (Id)

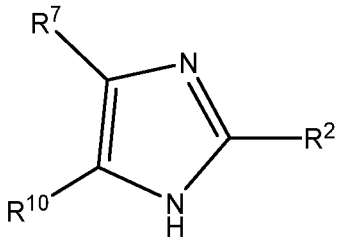


(Ie) (If)

wherein each R^{11} is independently selected from hydrogen, halogen, and C_{1-4}alkyl and R^{12} is selected from hydrogen, and C_{1-4}alkyl.

It will be appreciated by a skilled person that for all aspects of the present invention, the group R^{11} is a substiuent that may be positioned at one or more positions on the ring to which it relates. Accordingly, each ring to which an R^{11} group relates may have one or more R^{11} groups substituted at different positions on the ring. For example, there may be a single R^{11} group substituted on the ring, or there may be two R^{11} groups substituted on the ring.

According to a further preferred embodiment of the first aspect of the present invention, there is provided a compound of general formula (IV), or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, hydrate, solvate or ester thereof:



(IV)

wherein

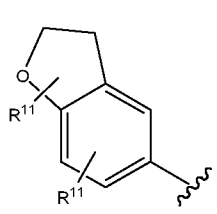
R^2 is selected from the group consisting of NHR^3 or $–CH_2NR^5R^6$;

R^3 and R^4 are independently selected from the group consisting of hydrogen and C_{1-3}alkyl;

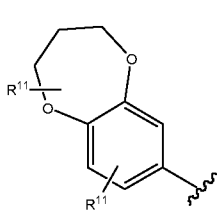
R^5 and R^6 are independently selected from the group consisting of hydrogen and C_{1-2}alkyl;

R^7 is selected from the group consisting of phenyl, pyridyl, and pyrimidine, wherein the phenyl and pyridyl groups are optionally substituted with one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of Cl, F, NH_2, Me, NHMe, methoxy, ethoxy, $CONH_2$, CONHMe, OCH_2R^9, OCF_3, OCH_2CN and hydroxyl;

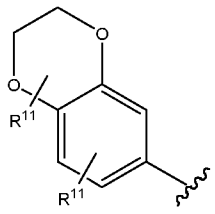
or R^7 is a fused bicyclic system selected from the group consisting of:



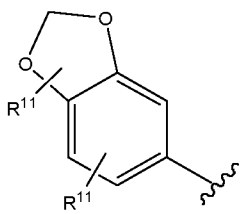
(Ia)



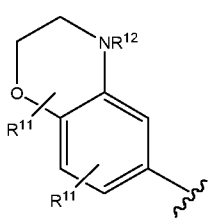
(Ib)



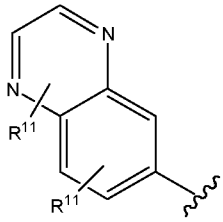
(Ic)



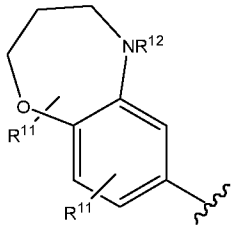
(Id)



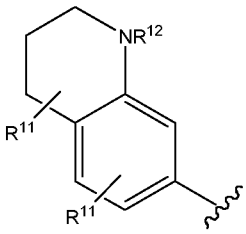
(Ie)



(If)



(Ij)



(Ik)

wherein each R^{11} is independently selected from hydrogen, F, O (oxo), methyl and ethyl; and R^{12} is selected from hydrogen, C_{1-4}alkyl, C_{3-7}cycloalkyl, C_{4-7}heterocyclyl, COR^{13}, SO_2R^{13}, C_{1-4}alkyl-CO_2R^{14}, C_{1-4}alkyl-OR^{14}, C_{1-4}alky-$NR^{14}R^{15}$, C_{1-4}alkyl-C_{3-7}cycloalkyl, COC_{1-4}alkyl-$NR^{14}R^{15}$, an amino acid, and a quaternary ammonium cation ($NR^{16}{}_4^+$);

R^{13} is selected from C_{1-4}alkyl, C_{3-7}cycloalkyl, phenyl, and monocyclic 5- or 6-membered heteroaryl, the phenyl or 5- or 6- membered heteroaryl being optionally substituted with one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of halogen, C_{1-2}alkyl, O (oxo), S (sulfinyl), NR^3R^4, OR^3 and SR^3;

R^{14} and R^{15} are independently selected from hydrogen, C_{1-4}alkyl, C_{1-4}alkyl-hydroxyl, C_{3-7}cycloalkyl, phenyl, monocyclic 5- or 6- membered heteroaryl, and SO_2R^{13}, the phenyl or 5- or 6- membered heteroaryl being optionally substituted with one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of halogen, C_{1-2}alkyl, O (oxo), S (sulfinyl), NR^3R^4, OR^3 and SR^3;

R^{16} groups are independently selected from C_{1-4}alkyl and phenyl, the phenyl being optionally substituted with one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of halogen, C_{1-2}alkyl, O (oxo), S (sulfinyl), NR^3R^4, OR^3 and SR^3;

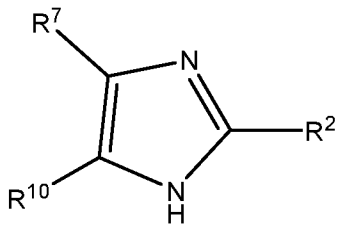
R^9 is selected from the group consisting of phenyl, optionally substituted with F, methyl, NH_2 and OH; and

R^{10} is selected from the group consisting of phenyl, pyridyl and pyridinone, wherein the phenyl and pyridyl groups are optionally substituted with one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of halogen, C_{1-4}alkyl, O (oxo),

S(sulfinyl), C_{1-4}alkoxy, $CONR^3R^4$, NR^3R^4, OR^8, hydroxyl, OCF_3, $-CF_3$, R^8, C_{3-7}cycoalkyl, C_{4-7}heterocyclyl, COR^{13}, SO_2R^{13}, C_{1-4}alkyl-CO_2R^{14}, C_{1-4}alkyl-OR^{14}, C_{1-4}alkyl-$NR^{14}R^{15}$, C_{1-4}alkyl-C_{3-7}cycloalkyl, COC_{1-4}alkyl-$NR^{14}R^{15}$, an amino acid, and a quaternary ammonium cation ($NH^{16}{}_4^+$).

Preferably, R^2 is NH_2 in any of the preceding embodiments of the first aspect of the present invention.

According to a further preferred embodiment of the first aspect of the present invention, there is provided a compound of general formula (V), or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, hydrate, solvate or ester thereof:



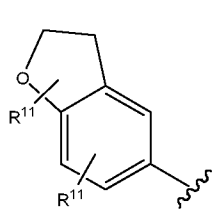
(V)

wherein

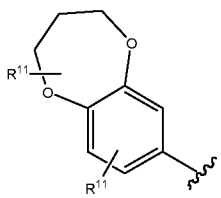
R^2 is NH_2;

R^7 is selected from the group consisting of phenyl and pyridyl, wherein the phenyl and pyridyl groups are optionally substituted with one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of Cl, F, NH_2, Me, NHMe, methoxy, $CONH_2$, OCH_2fluorophenyl and hydroxyl;

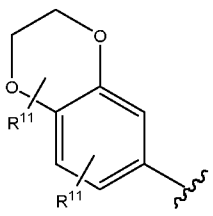
or R^7 is a fused bicyclic system selected from the group consisting of:



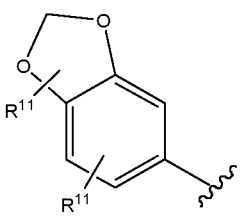
(Ia)



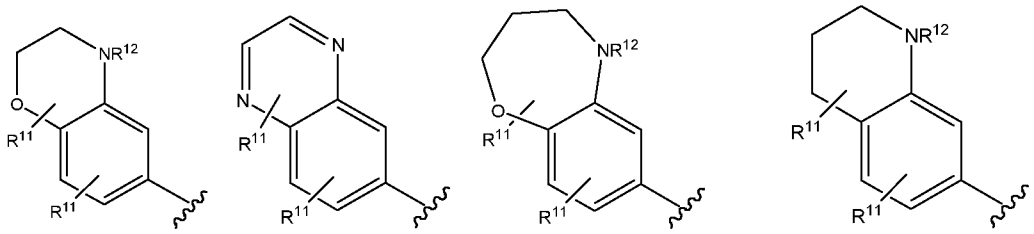
(Ib)



(Ic)



(Id)



(Ie) (If) (Ij) (Ik)

wherein each R^{11} is hydrogen and R^{12} is selected from hydrogen, C_{1-4}alkyl, C_{3-7}cycloalkyl, C_{4-7}heterocyclyl, COR^{13}, SO_2R^{13}, C_{1-4}alkyl-CO_2R^{14} , C_{1-4}alkyl-OR^{14}, C_{1-4}alky-$NR^{14}R^{15}$, C_{1-4}alkyl-C_{3-7}cycloalkyl, COC_{1-4}alkyl-$NR^{14}R^{15}$, an amino acid, and a quaternary ammonium cation ($NR^{16}{}_4^+$);

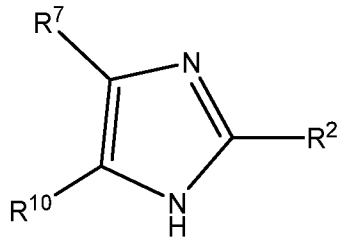
R^{13} is selected from C_{1-4}alkyl, C_{3-7}cycloalkyl, phenyl, and monocyclic 5- or 6-membered heteroaryl, the phenyl or 5- or 6- membered heteroaryl being optionally substituted with one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of halogen, C_{1-2}alkyl, O (oxo), S (sulfinyl), NR^3R^4, OR^3 and SR^3;

R^{14} and R^{15} are independently selected from hydrogen, C_{1-4}alkyl, C_{1-4}alkyl-hydroxyl, C_{3-7}cycloalkyl, phenyl, monocyclic 5- or 6- membered heteroaryl, and SO_2R^{13}, the phenyl or 5- or 6- membered heteroaryl being optionally substituted with one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of halogen, C_{1-2}alkyl, O (oxo), S (sulfinyl), NR^3R^4, OR^3 and SR^3;

R^{16} groups are independently selected from C_{1-4}alkyl and phenyl, the phenyl being optionally substituted with one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of halogen, C_{1-2}alkyl, O (oxo), S (sulfinyl), NR^3R^4, OR^3 and SR^3; and

R^{10} is selected from the group consisting of phenyl and pyridyl wherein the phenyl and pyridyl groups are optionally substituted with one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of halogen, C_{1-4}alkyl, O (oxo), S(sulfinyl), C_{1-4}alkoxy, $CONR^3R^4$, NR^3R^4, OR^8, hydroxyl, OCF_3, $-CF_3$, R^8, C_{3-7}cycoalkyl, C_{4-7}heterocyclyl, COR^{13}, SO_2R^{13}, C_{1-4}alkyl-CO_2R^{14}, C_{1-4}alkyl-OR^{14}, C_{1-4}alkyl-$NR^{14}R^{15}$, C_{1-4}alkyl-C_{3-7}cycloalkyl, COC_{1-4}alkyl-$NR^{14}R^{15}$, an amino acid, and a quaternary ammonium cation ($NH^{16}{}_4^+$).

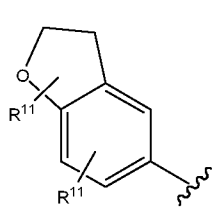
According to a further preferred embodiment of the first aspect of the present invention, there is provided a compound of general formula (V), or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, hydrate, solvate or ester thereof:



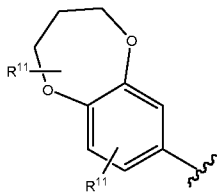
(V)

wherein R^2 is NH_2;

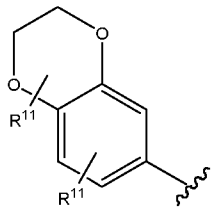
R^7 is a fused bicyclic system selected from the group consisting of:



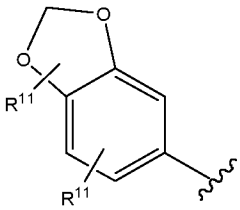
(Ia)



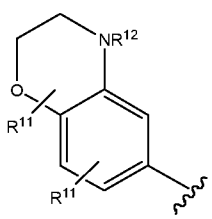
(Ib)



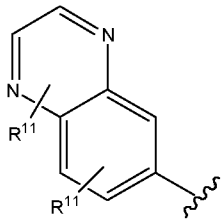
(Ic)



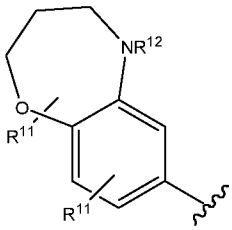
(Id)



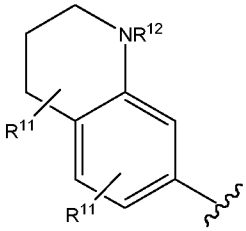
(Ie)



(If)



(Ij)



(Ik)

wherein each R^{11} is hydrogen and R^{12} is selected from hydrogen, C_{1-4}alkyl, C_{3-7}cycloalkyl, C_{4-7}heterocyclyl, COR^{13}, SO_2R^{13}, C_{1-4}alkyl-CO_2R^{14} , C_{1-4}alkyl-OR^{14}, C_{1-4}alky-$NR^{14}R^{15}$, C_{1-4}alkyl-C_{3-7}cycloalkyl, COC_{1-4}alkyl-$NR^{14}R^{15}$, an amino acid, and a quaternary ammonium cation ($NR^{16}{}_4^+$);

R^{13} is selected from C_{1-4}alkyl, C_{3-7}cycloalkyl, phenyl, and monocyclic 5- or 6-membered heteroaryl, the phenyl or 5- or 6- membered heteroaryl being optionally substituted with one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of halogen, C_{1-2}alkyl, O (oxo), S (sulfinyl), NR^3R^4, OR^3 and SR^3;

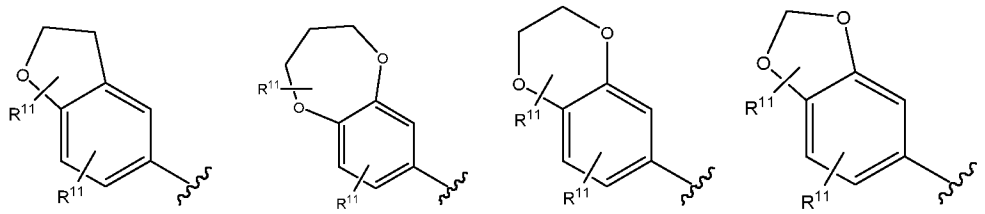
R^{14} and R^{15} are independently selected from hydrogen, C_{1-4}alkyl, C_{1-4}alkyl-hydroxyl, C_{3-7}cycloalkyl, phenyl, monocyclic 5- or 6- membered heteroaryl, and SO_2R^{13}, the phenyl or 5- or 6- membered heteroaryl being optionally substituted with one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of halogen, C_{1-2}alkyl, O (oxo), S (sulfinyl), NR^3R^4, OR^3 and SR^3;

R^{16} groups are independently selected from C_{1-4}alkyl and phenyl, the phenyl being optionally substituted with one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of halogen, C_{1-2}alkyl, O (oxo), S (sulfinyl), NR^3R^4, OR^3 and SR^3; and

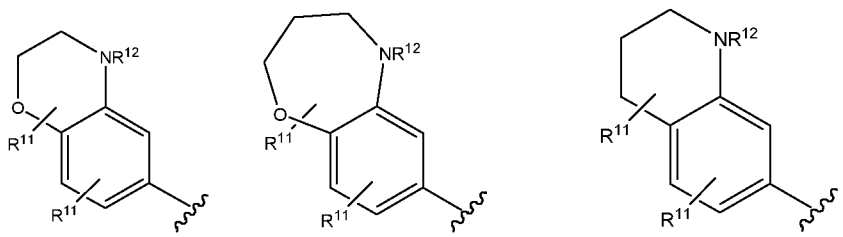
R^{10} is selected from the group consisting of phenyl and pyridyl, wherein the phenyl and pyridyl groups are optionally substituted with one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of halogen, C_{1-4}alkyl, O (oxo), S(sulfinyl), C_{1-4}alkoxy, $CONR^3R^4$, NR^3R^4, OR^8, hydroxyl, OCF_3, $-CF_3$, R^8, C_{3-7}cycoalkyl, C_{4-7}heterocyclyl, COR^{13}, SO_2R^{13}, C_{1-4}alkyl-CO_2R^{14}, C_{1-4}alkyl-OR^{14}, C_{1-4}alkyl-$NR^{14}R^{15}$, C_{1-4}alkyl-C_{3-7}cycloalkyl, COC_{1-4}alkyl-$NR^{14}R^{15}$, an amino acid, and a quaternary ammonium cation ($NH^{16}{}_4^+$).

Preferably, R^{10} is selected from the group consisting of phenyl and pyridyl, wherein the phenyl and pyridyl groups are optionaly substituted with one or more substituents selected from Cl, F, NH_2, NHMe, C_{1-2}alkyl, C_{1-2}alkoxy, $CONH_2$, CONHMe, $CONMe_2$, OCH_2C_3cycloalkyl, OC_3cycloalkyl, OCF_3 and hydroxyl. More preferably, the phenyl and pyridyl groups are optionally substituted with one or more substituents selected from Cl, F, NH_2, NHMe and C_{1-2}alkyl.

Preferably, R^7 is a fused bicyclic system selected from the group consisting of:



(Ia) (Ib) (Ic) (Id)



(Ie) (Ij) (Ik)

wherein each R^{11} is hydrogen and R^{12} is selected from hydrogen, C_{1-4}alkyl, C_{3-7}cycloalkyl, C_{4-7}heterocyclyl, COR^{13}, SO_2R^{13}, C_{1-4}alkyl-CO_2R^{14} , C_{1-4}alkyl-OR^{14}, C_{1-}

$_4$alky-$NR^{14}R^{15}$, C_{1-4}alkyl-C_{3-7}cycloalkyl, COC_{1-4}alkyl-$NR^{14}R^{15}$, an amino acid, and a quaternary ammonium cation ($NR^{16}{}_4^+$);

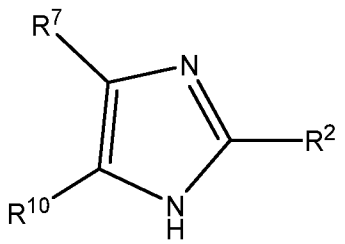
R^{13} is selected from C_{1-4}alkyl, C_{3-7}cycloalkyl, phenyl, and monocyclic 5- or 6-membered heteroaryl, the phenyl or 5- or 6- membered heteroaryl being optionally substituted with one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of halogen, C_{1-2}alkyl, O (oxo), S (sulfinyl), NR^3R^4, OR^3 and SR^3;

R^{14} and R^{15} are independently selected from hydrogen, C_{1-4}alkyl, C_{1-4}alkyl-hydroxyl, C_{3-7}cycloalkyl, phenyl, monocyclic 5- or 6- membered heteroaryl, and SO_2R^{13}, the phenyl or 5- or 6- membered heteroaryl being optionally substituted with one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of halogen, C_{1-2}alkyl, O (oxo), S (sulfinyl), NR^3R^4, OR^3 and SR^3;

R^{16} groups are independently selected from C_{1-4}alkyl and phenyl, the phenyl being optionally substituted with one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of halogen, C_{1-2}alkyl, O (oxo), S (sulfinyl), NR^3R^4, OR^3 and SR^3.

Preferably, R^{10} is a pyridyl group, wherein the pyridyl group is optionaly substituted with one or more substituents selected from Cl, F, NH_2, NHMe, C_{1-2}alkyl, C_{1-2}alkoxy, $CONH_2$, CONHMe, $CONMe_2$, OCH_2C_3cycloalkyl, OC_3cycloalkyl, OCF_3 and hydroxyl. More preferably, one or more substituents selected from Cl, F, NH_2, NHMe and C_{1-2}alkyl.

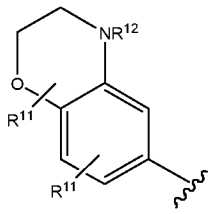
According to a further preferred embodiment of the first aspect of the present invention, there is provided a compound of general formula (V), or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, hydrate, solvate or ester thereof:



(V)

wherein R^2 is NH_2;

R^7 is



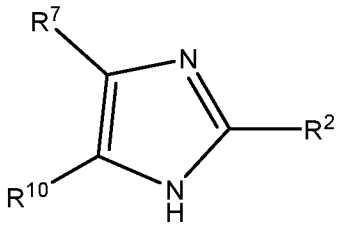
(Ie) and each R^{11} is hydrogen and R^{12} is selected from hydrogen, C_{1-4}alkyl, C_{3-7}cycloalkyl, C_{1-4}alkyl-CO_2R^{14}, C_{1-4}alkyl-OR^{14} and C_{1-4}alky-$NR^{14}R^{15}$;

R^{14} and R^{15} are independently selected from hydrogen, C_{1-4}alkyl, C_{3-7}cycloalkyl, phenyl, monocyclic 5- or 6- membered heteroaryl, and SO_2R^{13}, the phenyl or 5- or 6-membered heteroaryl being optionally substituted with one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of halogen, C_{1-2}alkyl, O (oxo), S (sulfinyl), NR^3R^4, OR^3 and SR^3;

R^{13} is selected from C_{1-4}alkyl, C_{3-7}cycloalkyl, phenyl, and monocyclic 5- or 6-membered heteroaryl, the phenyl or 5- or 6- membered heteroaryl being optionally substituted with one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of halogen, C_{1-2}alkyl, O (oxo), S (sulfinyl), NR^3R^4, OR^3 and SR^3; and

R^{10} is a pyridyl group, wherein the pyridyl group is optionally substituted with one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of Cl, F, NH_2, and methyl.

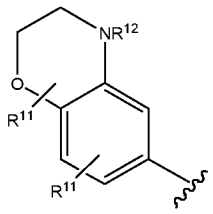
According to a further preferred embodiment of the first aspect of the present invention, there is provided a compound of general formula (V), or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, hydrate, solvate or ester thereof:



(V)

wherein R^2 is NH_2;

R^7 is



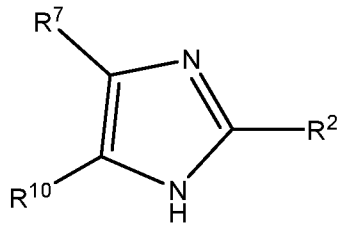
(Ie) and each R^{11} is hydrogen and R^{12} is selected from hydrogen, C_{1-4}alkyl, C_{3-7}cycloalkyl, C_{1-4}alkyl-CO_2R^{14}, C_{1-4}alkyl-OR^{14} and C_{1-4}alky-$NR^{14}R^{15}$;

R^{14} and R^{15} are independently selected from hydrogen, C_{1-4}alkyl, C_{3-7}cycloalkyl, phenyl, monocyclic 5- or 6- membered heteroaryl, and SO_2R^{13}, the phenyl or 5- or 6-membered heteroaryl being optionally substituted with one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of halogen, C_{1-2}alkyl, O (oxo), S (sulfinyl), NR^3R^4, OR^3 and SR^3;

R^{13} is selected from C_{1-4}alkyl, C_{3-7}cycloalkyl, phenyl, and monocyclic 5- or 6-membered heteroaryl, the phenyl or 5- or 6- membered heteroaryl being optionally substituted with one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of halogen, C_{1-2}alkyl, O (oxo), S (sulfinyl), NR^3R^4, OR^3 and SR^3; and

R^{10} is a pyridyl group, wherein the pyridyl group is optionally substituted with methyl.

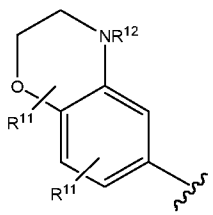
According to a further preferred embodiment of the first aspect of the present invention, there is provided a compound of general formula (V), or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, hydrate, solvate or ester thereof:



(V)

wherein R^2 is NH_2;

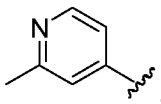
R^7 is



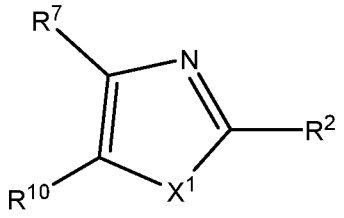
(Ie) and each R^{11} is hydrogen and R^{12} is selected from hydrogen, C_{1-4}alkyl, C_{3-7}cycloalkyl, C_{1-4}alkyl-CO_2R^{14}, C_{1-4}alkyl-OR^{14} and C_{1-4}alky-$NR^{14}R^{15}$;

R^{14} and R^{15} are independently selected from hydrogen, C_{1-4}alkyl, C_{3-7}cycloalkyl, phenyl, monocyclic 5- or 6- membered heteroaryl, and SO_2R^{13}, the phenyl or 5- or 6-membered heteroaryl being optionally substituted with one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of halogen, C_{1-2}alkyl, O (oxo), S (sulfinyl), NR^3R^4, OR^3 and SR^3;

R^{13} is selected from C_{1-4}alkyl, C_{3-7}cycloalkyl, phenyl, and monocyclic 5- or 6-membered heteroaryl, the phenyl or 5- or 6- membered heteroaryl being optionally substituted with one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of halogen, C_{1-2}alkyl, O (oxo), S (sulfinyl), NR^3R^4, OR^3 and SR^3; and

R^{10} is a pyridyl group substituted with methyl, preferably R^{10} is  .

According to a first preferred aspect of the compound of general formula (II), or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, hydrate, solvate or ester thereof according to the second aspect of the present invention, there is provided a compound, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, hydrate, solvate or ester thereof, having the general formula (III):



(III)

wherein

X^1 is selected from NH or S;

R^2 is selected from the group consisting of NHR^3, Cl, hydroxyl, $-CH_2NR^5R^6$, COOH and $-CONR^3R^4$;

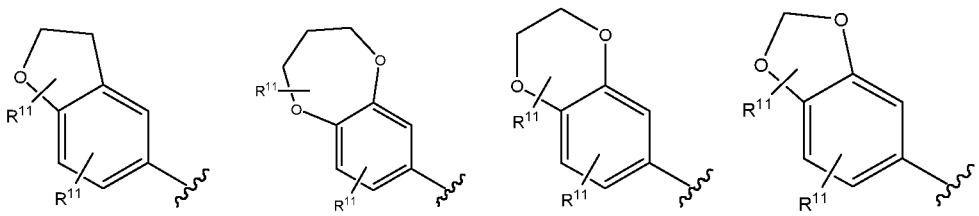
R^3 and R^4 are independently selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, and C_{1-3}alkyl;

R^5 and R^6 are independently selected from the group consisting of hydrogen and C_{1-2}alkyl;

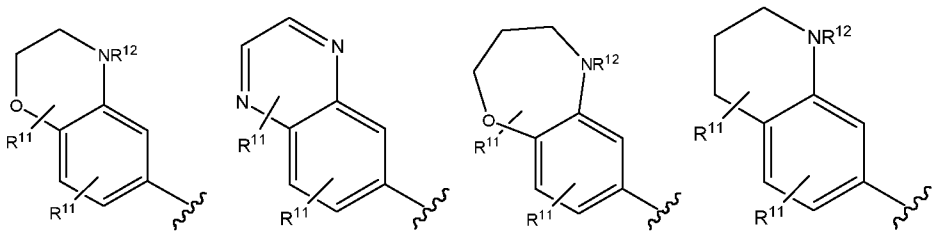
R^7 is selected from the group consisting of phenyl, monocyclic 6-membered nitrogen containing heterocyclyl and monocyclic 6-membered nitrogen containing heteroaryl, wherein the phenyl ring is substituted with one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of NH_2, NHMe, $CONR^3R^4$, OR^8, OCF_3, OCH_2CN and hydroxyl,

and the 6-membered nitrogen containing heterocyclyl and 6-membered nitrogen containing heteroaryl groups are optionally substituted with one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of Cl, F, NH_2, NHMe, C_{1-2}alkyl, C_{1-2}alkoxy, $CONR^3R^4$, OR^8, OCF_3, OCH_2CN and hydroxyl;

or R^7 is a fused bicyclic system selected from the group consisting of:



(Ia) (Ib) (Ic) (Id)



(Ie) (If) (Ij) (Ik)

wherein each R^{11} is independently selected from hydrogen, halogen, O (oxo), and C_{1-4}alkyl; and R^{12} is selected from hydrogen, C_{1-4}alkyl, C_{3-7}cycloalkyl, C_{4-7}heterocyclyl, COR^{13}, SO_2R^{13}, C_{1-4}alkyl-CO_2R^{14}, C_{1-4}alkyl-OR^{14}, C_{1-4}alkyl-$NR^{14}R^{15}$, C_{1-4}alkyl-C_{3-7}cycloalkyl, COC_{1-4}alkyl-$NR^{14}R^{15}$, an amino acid, and a quaternary ammonium cation ($NR^{16}{}_4^+$);

R^{13} is selected from C_{1-4}alkyl, C_{3-7}cycloalkyl, phenyl, and monocyclic 5- or 6-membered heteroaryl, the phenyl or 5- or 6- membered heteroaryl being optionally substituted with one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of halogen, C_{1-2}alkyl, O (oxo), S (sulfinyl), NR^3R^4, OR^3 and SR^3;

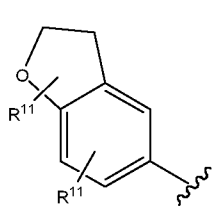
R^{14} and R^{15} are independently selected from hydrogen, C_{1-4}alkyl, C_{1-4}alkyl-hydroxyl, C_{3-7}cycloalkyl, phenyl, monocyclic 5- or 6- membered heteroaryl, and SO_2R^{13}, the phenyl or 5- or 6- membered heteroaryl being optionally substituted with one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of halogen, C_{1-2}alkyl, O (oxo), S (sulfinyl), NR^3R^4, OR^3 and SR^3;

R^{16} groups are independently selected from C_{1-4}alkyl and phenyl, the phenyl being optionally substituted with one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of halogen, C_{1-2}alkyl, O (oxo), S (sulfinyl), NR^3R^4, OR^3 and SR^3;

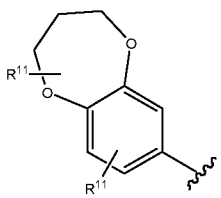
R^9 is selected from the group consisting of phenyl optionally substituted with one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of Cl, F, methyl, NH_2, NHMe, and OH;

R^{10} is selected from the group consisting of phenyl and monocyclic 6-membered, nitrogen containing heteroaryl, monocyclic 6-membered nitrogen containing heterocyclyl, wherein the phenyl is optionally substituted with one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of C_{1-4}alkyl, O (oxo), S(sulfinyl), $CONR^3R^4$, NR^3R^4, OR^8, hydroxyl, OCF_3, $-CF_3$, R^8, C_{3-7}cycoalkyl, C_{4-7}heterocyclyl, COR^{13}, SO_2R^{13}, C_{1-4}alkyl-CO_2R^{14}, C_{1-4}alkyl-OR^{14}, C_{1-4}alkyl-$NR^{14}R^{15}$, C_{1-4}alkyl-C_{3-7}cycloalkyl, COC_{1-4}alkyl-$NR^{14}R^{15}$, an amino acid, and a quaternary ammonium cation ($NH^{16}{}_4^+$), and the 6-membered heteroaryl and 6-membered heterocyclyl groups are optionally substituted with one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of halogen, C_{1-4}alkyl, O (oxo), S(sulfinyl), C_{1-4}alkoxy, $CONR^3R^4$, NR^3R^4, OR^8, hydroxyl, OCF_3, $-CF_3$, R^8, C_{3-7}cycoalkyl, C_{4-7}heterocyclyl, COR^{13}, SO_2R^{13}, C_{1-4}alkyl-CO_2R^{14}, C_{1-4}alkyl-OR^{14}, C_{1-4}alkyl-$NR^{14}R^{15}$, C_{1-4}alkyl-C_{3-7}cycloalkyl, COC_{1-4}alkyl-$NR^{14}R^{15}$, an amino acid, and a quaternary ammonium cation ($NH^{16}{}_4^+$);

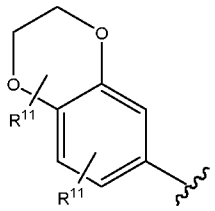
or R^{10} is a fused bicyclic system selected from the group consisting of:



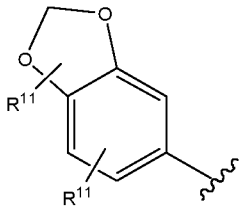
(Ia)



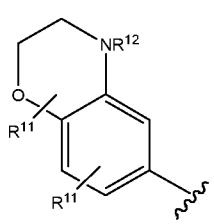
(Ib)



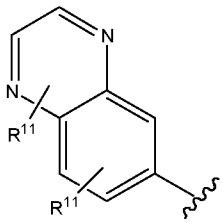
(Ic)



(Id)



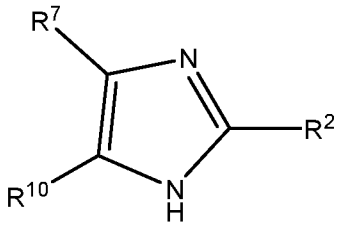
(Ie)



(If)

wherein each R^{11} is independently selected from hydrogen, halogen, and C_{1-4}alkyl and R^{12} is selected from hydrogen, and C_{1-4}alkyl.

According to a further preferred embodiment of the second aspect of the present invention, there is provided a compound, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, hydrate, solvate or ester thereof, having the general formula (IV):



(IV)

wherein

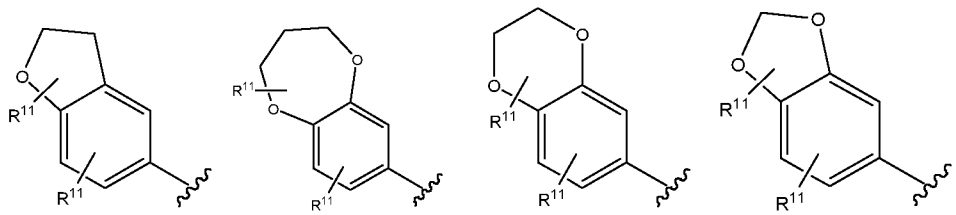
R^2 is selected from the group consisting of NHR^3 or $-CH_2NR^5R^6$;

R^3 and R^4 are independently selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, and C_{1-3}alkyl;

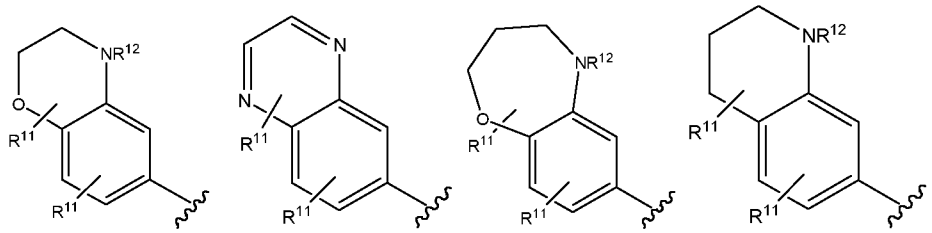
R^5 and R^6 are independently selected from the group consisting of hydrogen and C_{1-2}alkyl;

R^7 is selected from the group consisting of phenyl, pyridyl, and pyrimidine, wherein the phenyl group is substituted with one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of NH_2, NHMe, $CONH_2$, CONHMe, OCH_2R^9, OCF_3, OCH_2CN, and hydroxyl, and the pyridyl group is optionally substituted with one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of Cl, F, NH_2, Me, NHMe, methoxy, ethoxy, $CONH_2$, CONHMe, OCH_2R^9, OCF_3, OCH_2CN;

or R^7 is a fused bicyclic system selected from the group consisting of:



(Ia) (Ib) (Ic) (Id)



(Ie) (If) (Ij) (Ik)

wherein each R^{11} is independently selected from hydrogen, F, O (oxo), methyl and ethyl; and R^{12} is selected from hydrogen, C_{1-4}alkyl, C_{3-7}cycloalkyl, C_{4-7}heterocyclyl, COR^{13}, SO_2R^{13}, C_{1-4}alkyl-CO_2R^{14}, C_{1-4}alkyl-OR^{14}, C_{1-4}alky-$NR^{14}R^{15}$, C_{1-4}alkyl-C_{3-7}cycloalkyl, COC_{1-4}alkyl-$NR^{14}R^{15}$, an amino acid, and a quaternary ammonium cation ($NR^{16}{}_4^+$);

R^{13} is selected from C_{1-4}alkyl, C_{3-7}cycloalkyl, phenyl, and monocyclic 5- or 6-membered heteroaryl, the phenyl or 5- or 6- membered heteroaryl being optionally substituted with one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of halogen, C_{1-2}alkyl, O (oxo), S (sulfinyl), NR^3R^4, OR^3 and SR^3;

R^{14} and R^{15} are independently selected from hydrogen, C_{1-4}alkyl, C_{1-4}alkyl-hydroxyl, C_{3-7}cycloalkyl, phenyl, monocyclic 5- or 6- membered heteroaryl, and SO_2R^{13}, the phenyl or 5- or 6- membered heteroaryl being optionally substituted with one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of halogen, C_{1-2}alkyl, O (oxo), S (sulfinyl), NR^3R^4, OR^3 and SR^3;

R^{16} groups are independently selected from C_{1-4}alkyl and phenyl, the phenyl being optionally substituted with one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of halogen, C_{1-2}alkyl, O (oxo), S (sulfinyl), NR^3R^4, OR^3 and SR^3;

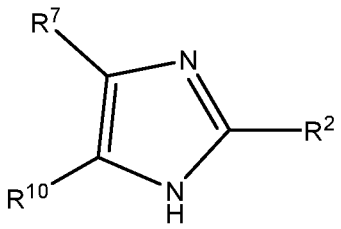
R^9 is selected from the group consisting of phenyl optionally substituted with F, methyl, NH_2 and OH; and

R^{10} is selected from the group consisting of phenyl, pyridyl and pyridinone, wherein the phenyl is optionally substituted with one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of C_{1-4}alkyl, O (oxo), S(sulfinyl), $CONR^3R^4$, NR^3R^4, OR^8, hydroxyl, OCF_3, $-CF_3$, R^8, C_{3-7}cycoalkyl, C_{4-7}heterocyclyl, COR^{13}, SO_2R^{13}, C_{1-4}alkyl-CO_2R^{14}, C_{1-4}alkyl-OR^{14}, C_{1-4}alkyl-$NR^{14}R^{15}$, C_{1-4}alkyl-C_{3-7}cycloalkyl, COC_{1-4}alkyl-$NR^{14}R^{15}$, an amino acid, and a quaternary ammonium cation ($NH^{16}{}_4^+$), and the pyridyl is optionally substituted with one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of halogen, C_{1-4}alkyl, O (oxo), S(sulfinyl), C_{1-4}alkoxy, $CONR^3R^4$, NR^3R^4, OR^8, hydroxyl, OCF_3, $-CF_3$, R^8, C_{3-7}cycoalkyl, C_{4-7}heterocyclyl, COR^{13}, SO_2R^{13}, C_{1-}

$_4$alkyl-CO_2R^{14}, C_{1-4}alkyl-OR^{14}, C_{1-4}alkyl-$NR^{14}R^{15}$, C_{1-4}alkyl-C_{3-7}cycloalkyl, COC_{1-4}alkyl-$NR^{14}R^{15}$, an amino acid, and a quaternary ammonium cation ($NH^{16}{}_4^+$).

Preferably, R^2 is NH_2 in the above preferred embodiments of the second aspect of the present invention.

According to a further preferred embodiment of the second aspect of the present invention, there is provided a compound, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, hydrate, solvate or ester thereof, having the general formula (V):



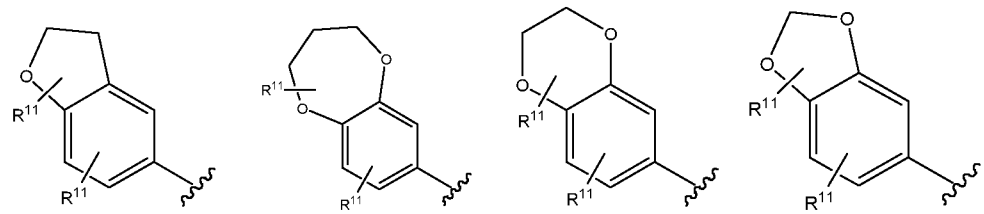
(V)

wherein

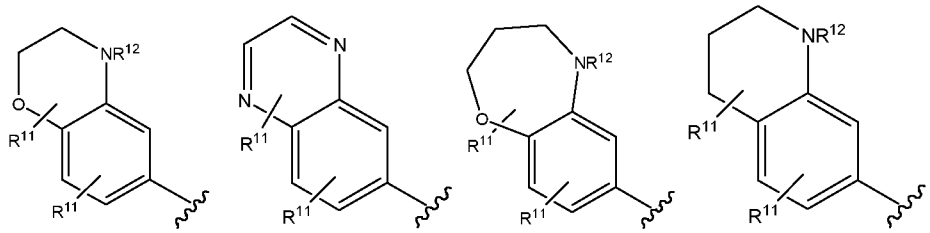
R^2 is NH_2;

R^7 is selected from the group consisting of phenyl and pyridyl, wherein the phenyl group is substituted with one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of NH_2, NHMe, $CONH_2$, OCH_2fluorophenyl and hydroxyl, and the pyridyl group is optionally substituted with one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of Cl, F, NH_2, Me, NHMe, methoxy, $CONH_2$, OCH_2fluorophenyl and hydroxyl;

or R^7 is a fused bicyclic system selected from the group consisting of:



(Ia) (Ib) (Ic) (Id)



(Ie) (If) (Ij) (Ik)

wherein each R^{11} is hydrogen and R^{12} is selected from hydrogen, C_{1-4}alkyl, C_{3-7}cycloalkyl, C_{4-7}heterocyclyl, COR^{13}, SO_2R^{13}, C_{1-4}alkyl-CO_2R^{14}, C_{1-4}alkyl-OR^{14}, C_{1-4}alky-$NR^{14}R^{15}$, C_{1-4}alkyl-C_{3-7}hydroxyl, COC_{1-4}alkyl-$NR^{14}R^{15}$, an amino acid, and a quaternary ammonium cation ($NR^{16}{}_4^+$);

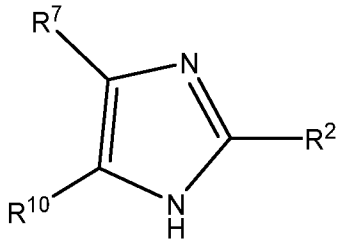
R^{13} is selected from C_{1-4}alkyl, C_{3-7}cycloalkyl, phenyl, and monocyclic 5- or 6-membered heteroaryl, the phenyl or 5- or 6- membered heteroaryl being optionally substituted with one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of halogen, C_{1-2}alkyl, O (oxo), S (sulfinyl), NR^3R^4, OR^3 and SR^3;

R^{14} and R^{15} are independently selected from hydrogen, C_{1-4}alkyl, C_{1-4}alkyl-hydroxyl, C_{3-7}cycloalkyl, phenyl, monocyclic 5- or 6- membered heteroaryl, and SO_2R^{13}, the phenyl or 5- or 6- membered heteroaryl being optionally substituted with one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of halogen, C_{1-2}alkyl, O (oxo), S (sulfinyl), NR^3R^4, OR^3 and SR^3;

R^{16} groups are independently selected from C_{1-4}alkyl and phenyl, the phenyl being optionally substituted with one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of halogen, C_{1-2}alkyl, O (oxo), S (sulfinyl), NR^3R^4, OR^3 and SR^3; and

R^{10} is selected from the group consisting of phenyl and pyridyl, wherein the phenyl is optionally substituted with one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of C_{1-4}alkyl, O (oxo), S(sulfinyl), $CONR^3R^4$, NR^3R^4, OR^8, hydroxyl, OCF_3, -CF_3, R^8, C_{3-7}cycoalkyl, C_{4-7}heterocyclyl, COR^{13}, SO_2R^{13}, C_{1-4}alkyl-CO_2R^{14}, C_{1-4}alkyl-OR^{14}, C_{1-4}alkyl-$NR^{14}R^{15}$, C_{1-4}alkyl-C_{3-7}cycloalkyl, COC_{1-4}alkyl-$NR^{14}R^{15}$, an amino acid, and a quaternary ammonium cation ($NH^{16}{}_4^+$), and the pyridyl is are optionally substituted with one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of halogen, C_{1-4}alkyl, O (oxo), S(sulfinyl), C_{1-4}alkoxy, $CONR^3R^4$, NR^3R^4, OR^8, hydroxyl, OCF_3, -CF_3, R^8, C_{3-7}cycoalkyl, C_{4-7}heterocyclyl, COR^{13}, SO_2R^{13}, C_{1-4}alkyl-CO_2R^{14}, C_{1-4}alkyl-OR^{14}, C_{1-4}alkyl-$NR^{14}R^{15}$, C_{1-4}alkyl-C_{3-7}cycloalkyl, COC_{1-4}alkyl-$NR^{14}R^{15}$, an amino acid, and a quaternary ammonium cation ($NH^{16}{}_4^+$).

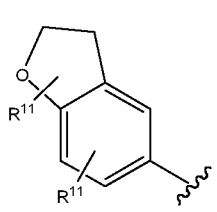
According to a further preferred embodiment of the second aspect of the present invention, there is provided a compound or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, hydrate, solvate or ester thereof, having the general formula (V):



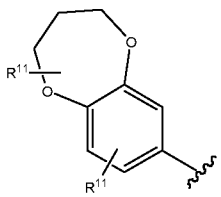
(V)

wherein R^2 is NH_2;

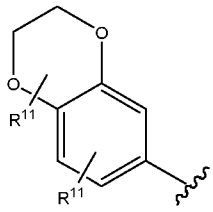
R^7 is a fused bicyclic system selected from the group consisting of:



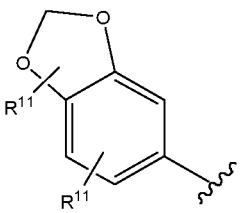
(Ia)



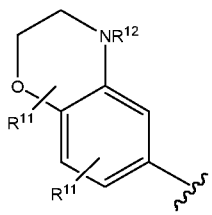
(Ib)



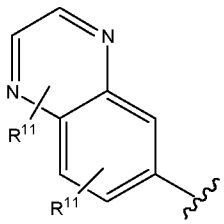
(Ic)



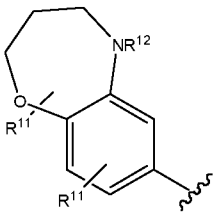
(Id)



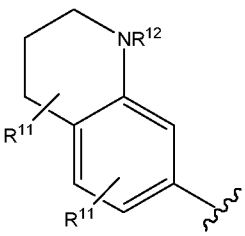
(Ie)



(If)



(Ij)



(Ik)

wherein each R^{11} is hydrogen and R^{12} is selected from hydrogen, C_{1-4}alkyl, C_{3-7}cycloalkyl, C_{4-7}heterocyclyl, COR^{13}, SO_2R^{13}, C_{1-4}alkyl-CO_2R^{14} , C_{1-4}alkyl-OR^{14}, C_{1-4}alky-$NR^{14}R^{15}$, C_{1-4}alkyl-C_{3-7}cycloalkyl, COC_{1-4}alkyl-$NR^{14}R^{15}$, an amino acid, and a quaternary ammonium cation ($NR^{16}{}_4^+$);

R^{13} is selected from C_{1-4}alkyl, C_{3-7}cycloalkyl, phenyl, and monocyclic 5- or 6-membered heteroaryl, the phenyl or 5- or 6- membered heteroaryl being optionally substituted with one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of halogen, C_{1-2}alkyl, O (oxo), S (sulfinyl), NR^3R^4, OR^3 and SR^3;

R^{14} and R^{15} are independently selected from hydrogen, C_{1-4}alkyl, C_{1-4}alkyl-hydroxyl, C_{3-7}cycloalkyl, phenyl, monocyclic 5- or 6- membered heteroaryl, and SO_2R^{13}, the

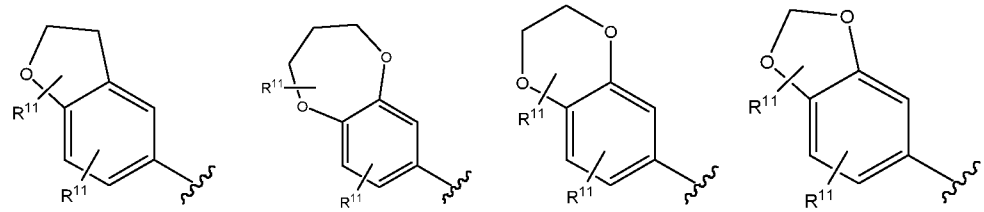
phenyl or 5- or 6- membered heteroaryl being optionally substituted with one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of halogen, C_{1-2}alkyl, O (oxo), S (sulfinyl), NR^3R^4, OR^3 and SR^3;

R^{16} groups are independently selected from C_{1-4}alkyl and phenyl, the phenyl being optionally substituted with one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of halogen, C_{1-2}alkyl, O (oxo), S (sulfinyl), NR^3R^4, OR^3 and SR^3; and

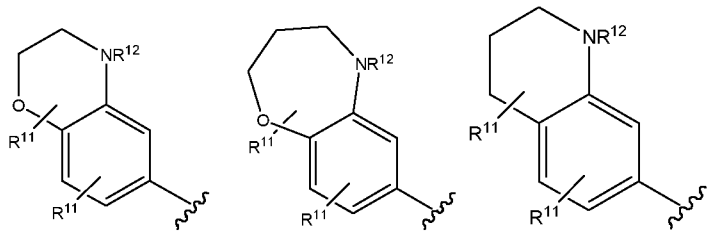
R^{10} is selected from the group consisting of phenyl and pyridyl, wherein the phenyl is optionally substituted with one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of C_{1-4}alkyl, O (oxo), S(sulfinyl), $CONR^3R^4$, NR^3R^4, OR^8, hydroxyl, OCF_3, -CF_3, R^8, C_{3-7}cycoalkyl, C_{4-7}heterocyclyl, COR^{13}, SO_2R^{13}, C_{1-4}alkyl-CO_2R^{14}, C_{1-4}alkyl-OR^{14}, C_{1-4}alkyl-$NR^{14}R^{15}$, C_{1-4}alkyl-C_{3-7}cycloalkyl, COC_{1-4}alkyl-$NR^{14}R^{15}$, an amino acid, and a quaternary ammonium cation ($NH^{16}{}_4^+$), and the pyridyl is are optionally substituted with one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of halogen, C_{1-4}alkyl, O (oxo), S(sulfinyl), C_{1-4}alkoxy, $CONR^3R^4$, NR^3R^4, OR^8, hydroxyl, OCF_3, -CF_3, R^8, C_{3-7}cycoalkyl, C_{4-7}heterocyclyl, COR^{13}, SO_2R^{13}, C_{1-4}alkyl-CO_2R^{14}, C_{1-4}alkyl-OR^{14}, C_{1-4}alkyl-$NR^{14}R^{15}$, C_{1-4}alkyl-C_3-cycloalkyl, COC_{1-4}alkyl-$NR^{14}R^{15}$, an amino acid, and a quaternary ammonium cation ($NH^{16}{}_4^+$).

Preferably, R^{10} is selected from the group consisting of phenyl and pyridyl, wherein the phenyl is optionally substituted with one or more substituents selected from NH_2, NHMe, C_{1-2}alkyl, $CONH_2$, CONHMe, $CONMe_2$, OCH_2C_3cycloalkyl, OC_3cycloalkyl, OCF_3 and hydroxyl, and the pyridyl is optionally substituted with one or more substituents selected from Cl, F, NH_2, NHMe, C_{1-2}alkyl, C_{1-2}alkoxy, $CONH_2$, CONHMe, $CONMe_2$, OCH_2C_3cycloalkyl, OC_3cycloalkyl, OCF_3 and hydroxyl. More preferably, the phenyl is optionally substituted with one or more substituents selected from NH_2, Me and C_{1-2}alkyl, and the pyridyl is optionally substituted with one or more substituents selected from Cl, F, NH_2, NHMe and C_{1-2}alkyl.

Preferably, R^7 is a fused bicyclic system selected from the group consisting of:



(Ia) (Ib) (Ic) (Id)



(Ie) (Ij) (Ik)

wherein each R^{11} is hydrogen and R^{12} is selected from hydrogen, C_{1-4}alkyl, C_{3-7}cycloalkyl, C_{4-7}heterocyclyl, COR^{13}, SO_2R^{13}, C_{1-4}alkyl-CO_2R^{14} , C_{1-4}alkyl-OR^{14}, C_{1-4}alky-$NR^{14}R^{15}$, C_{1-4}alkyl-C_{3-7}cycloalkyl, COC_{1-4}alkyl-$NR^{14}R^{15}$, an amino acid, and a quaternary ammonium cation ($NR^{16}{}_4^+$);

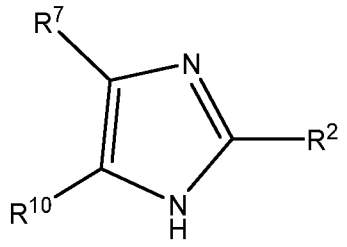
R^{13} is selected from C_{1-4}alkyl, C_{3-7}cycloalkyl, phenyl, and monocyclic 5- or 6-membered heteroaryl, the phenyl or 5- or 6- membered heteroaryl being optionally substituted with one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of halogen, C_{1-2}alkyl, O (oxo), S (sulfinyl), NR^3R^4, OR^3 and SR^3;

R^{14} and R^{15} are independently selected from hydrogen, C_{1-4}alkyl, C_{1-4}alkyl-hydroxyl, C_{3-7}cycloalkyl, phenyl, monocyclic 5- or 6- membered heteroaryl, and SO_2R^{13}, the phenyl or 5- or 6- membered heteroaryl being optionally substituted with one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of halogen, C_{1-2}alkyl, O (oxo), S (sulfinyl), NR^3R^4, OR^3 and SR^3;

R^{16} groups are independently selected from C_{1-4}alkyl and phenyl, the phenyl being optionally substituted with one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of halogen, C_{1-2}alkyl, O (oxo), S (sulfinyl), NR^3R^4, OR^3 and SR^3.

Preferably, R^{10} is pyridyl optionally substituted with one or more substituents selected from Cl, F, NH_2, NHMe, C_{1-2}alkyl, C_{1-2}alkoxy, $CONH_2$, CONHMe, $CONMe_2$, OCH_2C_3cycloalkyl, OC_3cycloalkyl, OCF_3 and hydroxyl. More preferably, the pyridyl is optionally substituted with one or more substituents selected from Cl, F, NH_2, NHMe and C_{1-2}alkyl.

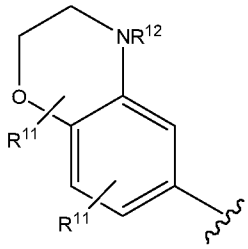
According to a further preferred embodiment of the second aspect of the present invention, there is provided a compound or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, hydrate, solvate or ester thereof, having the general formula (V):



(V)

wherein R^2 is NH_2;

R^7 is



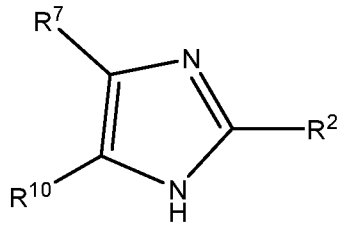
(Ie) and each R^{11} is hydrogen and R^{12} is selected from hydrogen, C_{1-4}alkyl, C_{3-7}cycloalkyl, C_{1-4}alkyl-CO_2R^{14}, C_{1-4}alkyl-OR^{14} and C_{1-4}alky-$NR^{14}R^{15}$;

R^{14} and R^{15} are independently selected from hydrogen, C_{1-4}alkyl, C_{3-7}cycloalkyl, phenyl, monocyclic 5- or 6- membered heteroaryl, and SO_2R^{13}, the phenyl or 5- or 6-membered heteroaryl being optionally substituted with one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of halogen, C_{1-2}alkyl, O (oxo), S (sulfinyl), NR^3R^4, OR^3 and SR^3;

R^{13} is selected from C_{1-4}alkyl, C_{3-7}cycloalkyl, phenyl, and monocyclic 5- or 6-membered heteroaryl, the phenyl or 5- or 6- membered heteroaryl being optionally substituted with one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of halogen, C_{1-2}alkyl, O (oxo), S (sulfinyl), NR^3R^4, OR^3 and SR^3; and

R^{10} is a pyridyl group, wherein the pyridyl group is optionally substituted with one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of Cl, F, NH_2, and methyl.

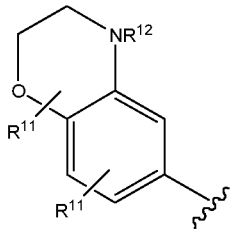
According to a further preferred embodiment of the second aspect of the present invention, there is provided a compound, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, hydrate, solvate or ester thereof, having the general formula (V):



(V)

wherein R^2 is NH_2;

R^7 is



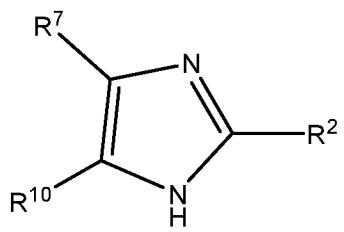
(Ie) and each R^{11} is hydrogen and R^{12} is selected from hydrogen, C_{1-4}alkyl, C_{3-7}cycloalkyl, C_{1-4}alkyl-CO_2R^{14}, C_{1-4}alkyl-OR^{14} and C_{1-4}alky-$NR^{14}R^{15}$;

R^{14} and R^{15} are independently selected from hydrogen, C_{1-4}alkyl, C_{3-7}cycloalkyl, phenyl, monocyclic 5- or 6- membered heteroaryl, and SO_2R^{13}, the phenyl or 5- or 6- membered heteroaryl being optionally substituted with one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of halogen, C_{1-2}alkyl, O (oxo), S (sulfinyl), NR^3R^4, OR^3 and SR^3;

R^{13} is selected from C_{1-4}alkyl, C_{3-7}cycloalkyl, phenyl, and monocyclic 5- or 6- membered heteroaryl, the phenyl or 5- or 6- membered heteroaryl being optionally substituted with one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of halogen, C_{1-2}alkyl, O (oxo), S (sulfinyl), NR^3R^4, OR^3 and SR^3; and

R^{10} is a pyridyl group, wherein the pyridyl group is optionally substituted with methyl.

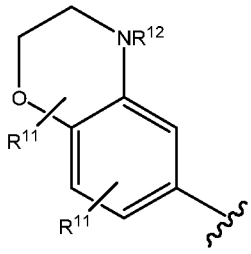
According to a further preferred embodiment of the second aspect of the present invention, there is provided a compound of general formula (V), or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, hydrate, solvate or ester thereof:



(V)

wherein R^2 is NH_2;

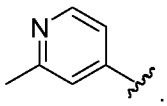
R^7 is



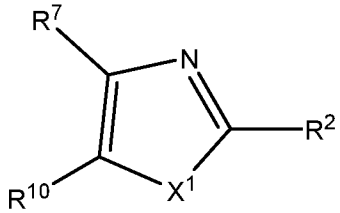
(Ie) and each R^{11} is hydrogen and R^{12} is selected from hydrogen, C_{1-4}alkyl, C_{3-7}cycloalkyl, C_{1-4}alkyl-CO_2R^{14}, C_{1-4}alkyl-OR^{14} and C_{1-4}alky-$NR^{14}R^{15}$;

R^{14} and R^{15} are independently selected from hydrogen, C_{1-4}alkyl, C_{3-7}cycloalkyl, phenyl, monocyclic 5- or 6- membered heteroaryl, and SO_2R^{13}, the phenyl or 5- or 6-membered heteroaryl being optionally substituted with one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of halogen, C_{1-2}alkyl, O (oxo), S (sulfinyl), NR^3R^4, OR^3 and SR^3;

R^{13} is selected from C_{1-4}alkyl, C_{3-7}cycloalkyl, phenyl, and monocyclic 5- or 6-membered heteroaryl, the phenyl or 5- or 6- membered heteroaryl being optionally substituted with one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of halogen, C_{1-2}alkyl, O (oxo), S (sulfinyl), NR^3R^4, OR^3 and SR^3; and

R^{10} is a pyridyl group substituted with methyl, preferably R^{10} is  .

According to a first embodiment of the compound of general formula (II), or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, hydrate, solvate or ester thereof for use in the treatment of infection with, or disease caused by the bacterium *Enterobacteriaceae* according to a further aspect of the present invention, there is provided a compound, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, hydrate, solvate or ester thereof, having the general formula (III):



(III)

wherein

X^1 is selected from NH or S;

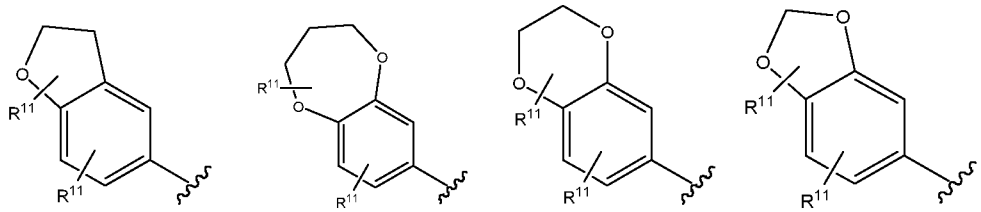
R^2 is selected from the group consisting of NHR^3, Cl, hydroxyl, $-CH_2NR^5R^6$, COOH and $-CONR^3R^4$;

R^3 and R^4 are independently selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, and C_{1-3}alkyl;

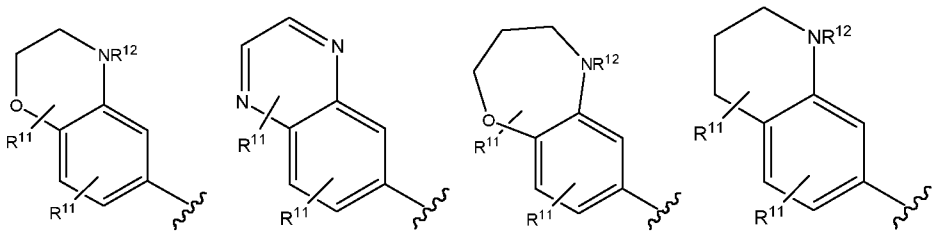
R^5 and R^6 are independently selected from the group consisting of hydrogen and C_{1-2}alkyl;

R^7 is selected from the group consisting of phenyl, monocyclic 6-membered nitrogen containing heterocyclyl and monocyclic 6-membered nitrogen containing heteroaryl, wherein the phenyl, 6-membered heterocyclyl and 6-membered heteroaryl groups are optionally substituted with one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of Cl, F, NH_2, NHMe, C_{1-2}alkyl, C_{1-2}alkoxy, $CONR^3R^4$, OCH_2R^9, OCF_3, OCH_2CN, and hydroxyl;

or R^7 is a fused bicyclic system selected from the group consisting of:



(Ia) (Ib) (Ic) (Id)



(Ie) (If) (Ij) (Ik)

wherein each R^{11} is independently selected from hydrogen, halogen, O (oxo), and C_{1-4}alkyl; and R^{12} is selected from hydrogen, C_{1-4}alkyl, C_{3-7}cycloalkyl, C_{4-7}heterocyclyl, COR^{13}, SO_2R^{13}, C_{1-4}alkyl-CO_2R^{14} , C_{1-4}alkyl-OR^{14}, C_{1-4}alky-$NR^{14}R^{15}$, C_{1-4}alkyl-C_{3-7}cycloalkyl, COC_{1-4}alkyl-$NR^{14}R^{15}$, an amino acid, and a quaternary ammonium cation ($NR^{16}{}_4^+$);

R^{13} is selected from C_{1-4}alkyl, C_{3-7}cycloalkyl, phenyl, and monocyclic 5- or 6-membered heteroaryl, the phenyl or 5- or 6- membered heteroaryl being optionally substituted with one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of halogen, C_{1-2}alkyl, O (oxo), S (sulfinyl), NR^3R^4, OR^3 and SR^3;

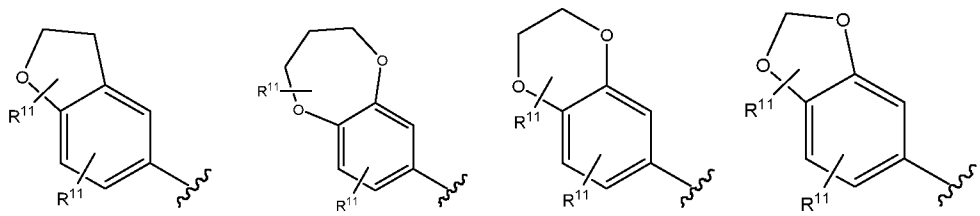
R^{14} and R^{15} are independently selected from hydrogen, C_{1-4}alkyl, C_{1-4}alkyl-hydroxyl, C_{3-7}cycloalkyl, phenyl, monocyclic 5- or 6- membered heteroaryl, and SO_2R^{13}, the phenyl or 5- or 6- membered heteroaryl being optionally substituted with one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of halogen, C_{1-2}alkyl, O (oxo), S (sulfinyl), NR^3R^4, OR^3 and SR^3;

R^{16} groups are independently selected from C_{1-4}alkyl and phenyl, the phenyl being optionally substituted with one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of halogen, C_{1-2}alkyl, O (oxo), S (sulfinyl), NR^3R^4, OR^3 and SR^3;

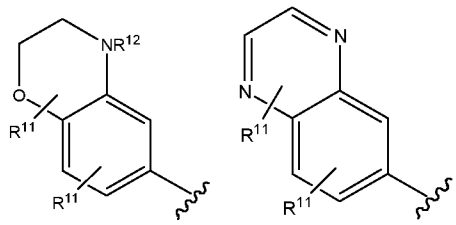
R^9 is selected from the group consisting of phenyl optionally substituted with one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of Cl, F, methyl, NH_2, NHMe, and OH;

R^{10} is selected from the group consisting of phenyl and monocyclic 6-membered, nitrogen containing heteroaryl and monocyclic 6-membered nitrogen containing heterocyclyl, wherein the phenyl, 6-membered heteroaryl and 6-membered heterocyclyl groups are optionally substituted with one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of halogen, C_{1-4}alkyl, O (oxo), S(sulfinyl), C_{1-4}alkoxy, $CONR^3R^4$, NR^3R^4, OR^8, hydroxyl, OCF_3, $-CF_3$, R^8, C_{3-7}cycoalkyl, C_{4-7}heterocyclyl, COR^{13}, SO_2R^{13}, C_{1-4}alkyl-CO_2R^{14}, C_{1-4}alkyl-OR^{14}, C_{1-4}alkyl-$NR^{14}R^{15}$, C_{1-4}alkyl-C_{3-7}cycloalkyl, COC_{1-4}alkyl-$NR^{14}R^{15}$, an amino acid, and a quaternary ammonium cation ($NH^{16}{}_4^+$);

or R^{10} is a fused bicyclic system selected from the group consisting of:



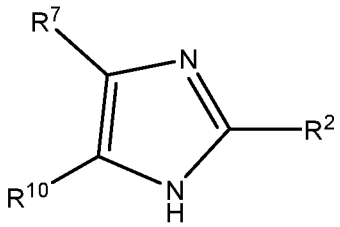
(Ia) (Ib) (Ic) (Id)



(Ie) (If)

wherein each R^{11} is independently selected from hydrogen, halogen, and C_{1-4}alkyl and R^{12} is selected from hydrogen, and C_{1-4}alkyl.

According to a further preferred embodiment of the further aspect of the present invention, there is provided a compound, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, hydrate, solvate or ester thereof, having the general formula (IV):



(IV)

wherein

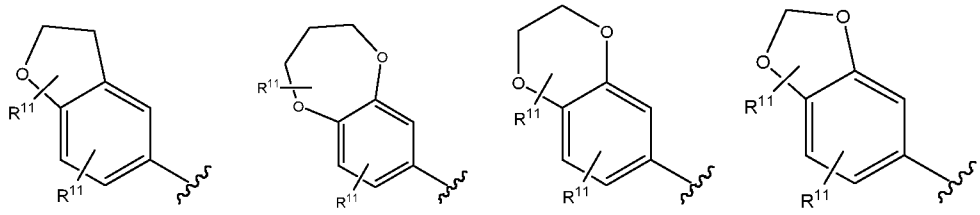
R^2 is selected from the group consisting of NHR^3 or $-CH_2NR^5R^6$;

R^3 and R^4 are independently selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, and C_{1-3}alkyl;

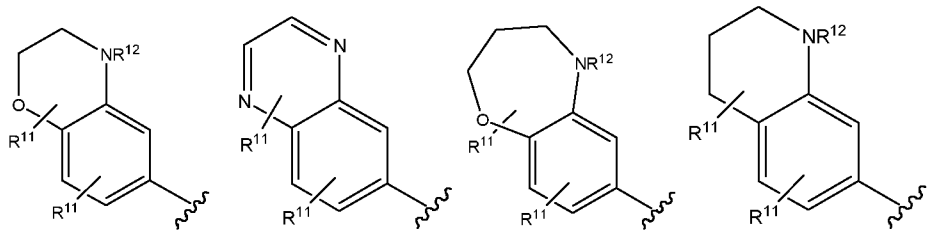
R^5 and R^6 are independently selected from the group consisting of hydrogen and C_{1-2}alkyl;

R^7 is selected from the group consisting of phenyl, pyridyl, and pyrimidine, wherein the phenyl and pyridyl groups are optionally substituted with one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of Cl, F, NH_2, Me, NHMe, methoxy, ethoxy, $CONH_2$, CONHMe, OCH_2R^9, OCF_3, OCH_2CN, and hydroxyl;

or R^7 is a fused bicyclic system selected from the group consisting of:



(Ia) (Ib) (Ic) (Id)



(Ie) (If) (Ij) (Ik)

wherein each R^{11} is independently selected from hydrogen, F, O (oxo), methyl and ethyl; and R^{12} is selected from hydrogen, C_{1-4}alkyl, C_{3-7}cycloalkyl, C_{4-7}heterocyclyl, COR^{13}, SO_2R^{13}, C_{1-4}alkyl-CO_2R^{14} , C_{1-4}alkyl-OR^{14}, C_{1-4}alky-$NR^{14}R^{15}$, C_{1-4}alkyl-C_{3-7}cycloalkyl, COC_{1-4}alkyl-$NR^{14}R^{15}$, an amino acid, and a quaternary ammonium cation ($NR^{16}{}_4^+$);

R^{13} is selected from C_{1-4}alkyl, C_{3-7}cycloalkyl, phenyl, and monocyclic 5- or 6-membered heteroaryl, the phenyl or 5- or 6- membered heteroaryl being optionally substituted with one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of halogen, C_{1-2}alkyl, O (oxo), S (sulfinyl), NR^3R^4, OR^3 and SR^3;

R^{14} and R^{15} are independently selected from hydrogen, C_{1-4}alkyl, C_{1-4}alkyl-hydroxyl, C_{3-7}cycloalkyl, phenyl, monocyclic 5- or 6- membered heteroaryl, and SO_2R^{13}, the phenyl or 5- or 6- membered heteroaryl being optionally substituted with one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of halogen, C_{1-2}alkyl, O (oxo), S (sulfinyl), NR^3R^4, OR^3 and SR^3;

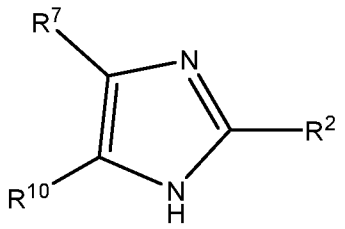
R^{16} groups are independently selected from C_{1-4}alkyl and phenyl, the phenyl being optionally substituted with one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of halogen, C_{1-2}alkyl, O (oxo), S (sulfinyl), NR^3R^4, OR^3 and SR^3

R^9 is selected from the group consisting of phenyl, optionally substituted with F, methyl, NH_2 and OH; and

R^{10} is selected from the group consisting of phenyl, pyridyl and pyridinone, wherein the phenyl and pyridyl groups are optionally substituted with one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of halogen, C_{1-4}alkyl, O (oxo), S(sulfinyl), C_{1-4}alkoxy, $CONR^3R^4$, NR^3R^4, OR^8, hydroxyl, OCF_3, $-CF_3$, R^8, C_{3-7}cycoalkyl, C_{4-7}heterocyclyl, COR^{13}, SO_2R^{13}, C_{1-4}alkyl-CO_2R^{14}, C_{1-4}alkyl-OR^{14}, C_{1-4}alkyl-$NR^{14}R^{15}$, C_{1-4}alkyl-C_{3-7}cycloalkyl, COC_{1-4}alkyl-$NR^{14}R^{15}$, an amino acid, and a quaternary ammonium cation ($NH^{16}{}_4^+$).

Preferably, R^2 is NH_2 in the above preferred emboidments of the further aspect of the present invention.

According to a further preferred embodiment of the further aspect of the present invention, there is provided a compound, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, hydrate, solvate or ester thereof, having the general formula (V):



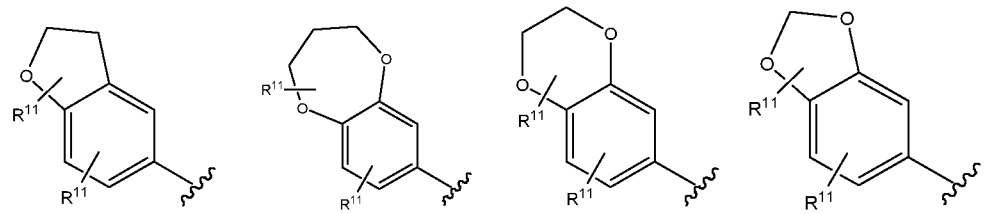
(V)

wherein

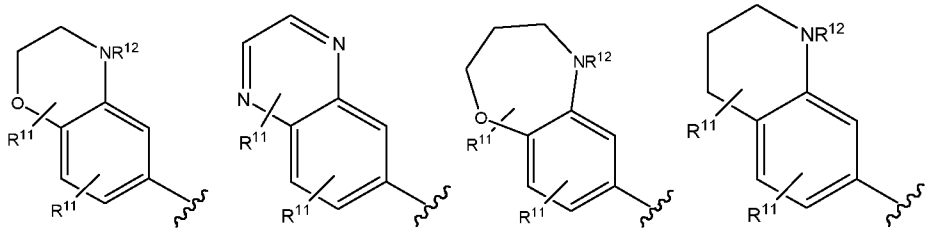
R^2 is NH_2;

R^7 is selected from the group consisting of phenyl and pyridyl, wherein the phenyl and pyridyl groups are optionally substituted with one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of Cl, F, NH_2, Me, NHMe, methoxy, $CONH_2$, OCH_2fluorophenyl and hydroxyl;

or R^7 is a fused bicyclic system selected from the group consisting of:



(Ia) (Ib) (Ic) (Id)



(Ie) (If) (Ij) (Ik)

wherein each R^{11} is hydrogen and R^{12} is selected from hydrogen, C_{1-4}alkyl, C_{3-7}cycloalkyl, C_{4-7}heterocyclyl, COR^{13}, SO_2R^{13}, C_{1-4}alkyl-CO_2R^{14}, C_{1-4}alkyl-OR^{14}, C_{1-4}alky-$NR^{14}R^{15}$, C_{1-4}alkyl-C_{3-7}cycloalkyl, COC_{1-4}alkyl-$NR^{14}R^{15}$, an amino acid, and a quaternary ammonium cation ($NR^{16}{}_4^+$);

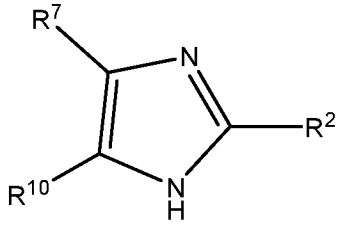
R^{13} is selected from C_{1-4}alkyl, C_{3-7}cycloalkyl, phenyl, and monocyclic 5- or 6-membered heteroaryl, the phenyl or 5- or 6- membered heteroaryl being optionally substituted with one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of halogen, C_{1-2}alkyl, O (oxo), S (sulfinyl), NR^3R^4, OR^3 and SR^3;

R^{14} and R^{15} are independently selected from hydrogen, C_{1-4}alkyl, C_{1-4}alkyl-hyroxyl, C_{3-7}cycloalkyl, phenyl, monocyclic 5- or 6- membered heteroaryl, and SO_2R^{13}, the phenyl or 5- or 6- membered heteroaryl being optionally substituted with one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of halogen, C_{1-2}alkyl, O (oxo), S (sulfinyl), NR^3R^4, OR^3 and SR^3;

R^{16} groups are independently selected from C_{1-4}alkyl and phenyl, the phenyl being optionally substituted with one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of halogen, C_{1-2}alkyl, O (oxo), S (sulfinyl), NR^3R^4, OR^3 and SR^3; and

R^{10} is selected from the group consisting of phenyl and pyridyl, wherein the phenyl and pyridyl groups are optionally substituted with one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of halogen, C_{1-4}alkyl, O (oxo), S(sulfinyl), C_{1-4}alkoxy, $CONR^3R^4$, NR^3R^4, OR^8, hydroxyl, OCF_3, $-CF_3$, R^8, C_{3-7}cycoalkyl, C_{4-7}heterocyclyl, COR^{13}, SO_2R^{13}, C_{1-4}alkyl-CO_2R^{14}, C_{1-4}alkyl-OR^{14}, C_{1-4}alkyl-$NR^{14}R^{15}$, C_{1-4}alkyl-C_{3-7}cycloalkyl, COC_{1-4}alkyl-$NR^{14}R^{15}$, an amino acid, and a quaternary ammonium cation ($NH^{16}{}_4^+$).

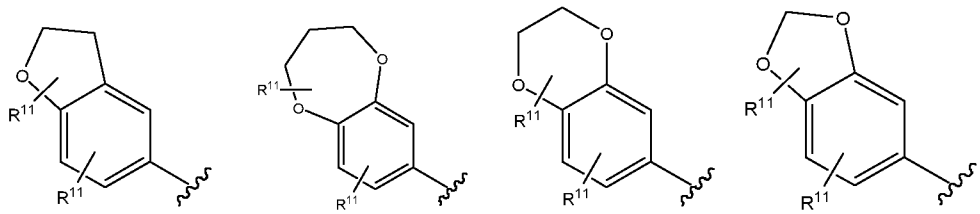
According to a further preferred embodiment of the further aspect of the present invention, there is provided a compound, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, hydrate, solvate or ester thereof, having the general formula (V):



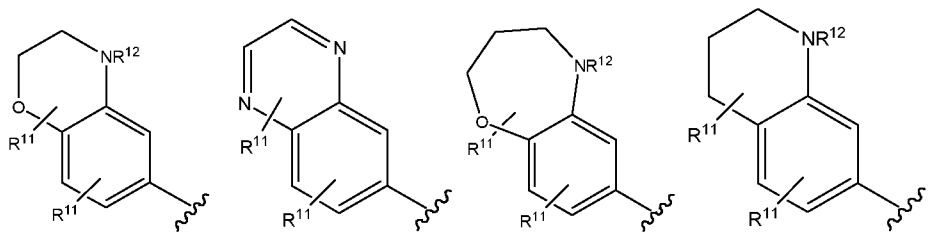
(V)

wherein R^2 is NH_2;

R^7 is a fused bicyclic system selected from the group consisting of:



(Ia) (Ib) (Ic) (Id)



(Ie) (If) (Ij) (Ik)

wherein each R^{11} is hydrogen and R^{12} is selected from hydrogen, C_{1-4}alkyl, C_{3-7}cycloalkyl, C_{4-7}heterocyclyl, COR^{13}, SO_2R^{13}, C_{1-4}alkyl-CO_2R^{14} , C_{1-4}alkyl-OR^{14}, C_{1-4}alky-$NR^{14}R^{15}$, C_{1-4}alkyl-C_{3-7}cycloalkyl, COC_{1-4}alkyl-$NR^{14}R^{15}$, an amino acid, and a quaternary ammonium cation ($NR^{16}{}_4^+$);

R^{13} is selected from C_{1-4}alkyl, C_{3-7}cycloalkyl, phenyl, and monocyclic 5- or 6-membered heteroaryl, the phenyl or 5- or 6- membered heteroaryl being optionally substituted with one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of halogen, C_{1-2}alkyl, O (oxo), S (sulfinyl), NR^3R^4, OR^3 and SR^3;

R^{14} and R^{15} are independently selected from hydrogen, C_{1-4}alkyl, C_{1-4}alkyl-hydroxyl, C_{3-7}cycloalkyl, phenyl, monocyclic 5- or 6- membered heteroaryl, and SO_2R^{13}, the phenyl or 5- or 6- membered heteroaryl being optionally substituted with one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of halogen, C_{1-2}alkyl, O (oxo), S (sulfinyl), NR^3R^4, OR^3 and SR^3;

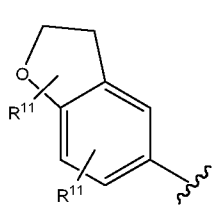
R^{16} groups are independently selected from C_{1-4}alkyl and phenyl, the phenyl being optionally substituted with one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of halogen, C_{1-2}alkyl, O (oxo), S (sulfinyl), NR^3R^4, OR^3 and SR^3; and

R^{10} is selected from the group consisting of phenyl and pyridyl, wherein the phenyl and pyridyl groups are optionally substituted with one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of halogen, C_{1-4}alkyl, O (oxo), S(sulfinyl), C_{1-4}alkoxy, $CONR^3R^4$, NR^3R^4, OR^8, hydroxyl, OCF_3, $-CF_3$, R^8, C_{3-7}cycoalkyl, C_{4-7}heterocyclyl, COR^{13}, SO_2R^{13}, C_{1-4}alkyl-CO_2R^{14}, C_{1-4}alkyl-OR^{14}, C_{1-4}alkyl-$NR^{14}R^{15}$, C_{1-4}alkyl-C_{3-}

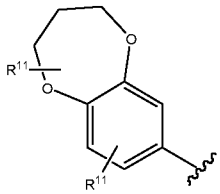
$_{7}$cycloalkyl, COC_{1-4}alkyl-$NR^{14}R^{15}$, an amino acid, and a quaternary ammonium cation ($NH^{16}_{4}{}^{+}$).

Preferably, R^{10} is selected from the group consisting of phenyl and pyridyl, wherein the phenyl and pyridyl groups are optionally substituted with one or more substituents selected from Cl, F, NH_2, NHMe, C_{1-2}alkyl, C_{1-2}alkoxy, $CONH_2$, CONHMe, $CONMe_2$, OCH_2C_3cycloalkyl, OC_3cycloalkyl, OCF_3 and hydroxyl. More preferably, the phenyl and pyridyl groups are optionally substituted with one or more substituents selected from Cl, F, NH_2, NHMe and C_{1-2}alkyl.

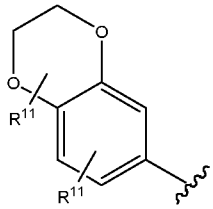
Preferably, R^7 is a fused bicyclic system selected from the group consisting of:



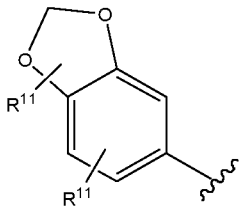
(Ia)



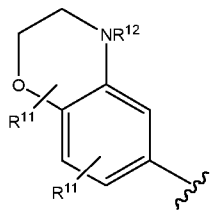
(Ib)



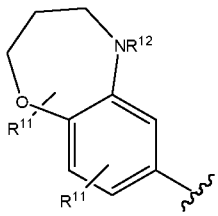
(Ic)



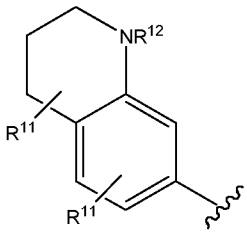
(Id)



(Ie)



(If)



(Ik)

wherein each R^{11} is hydrogen and R^{12} is selected from hydrogen, C_{1-4}alkyl, C_{3-7}cycloalkyl, C_{4-7}heterocyclyl, COR^{13}, SO_2R^{13}, C_{1-4}alkyl-CO_2R^{14} , C_{1-4}alkyl-OR^{14}, C_{1-4}alky-$NR^{14}R^{15}$, C_{1-4}alkyl-C_{3-7}cycloalkyl, COC_{1-4}alkyl-$NR^{14}R^{15}$, an amino acid, and a quaternary ammonium cation ($NR^{16}_{4}{}^{+}$);

R^{13} is selected from C_{1-4}alkyl, C_{3-7}cycloalkyl, phenyl, and monocyclic 5- or 6-membered heteroaryl, the phenyl or 5- or 6- membered heteroaryl being optionally substituted with one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of halogen, C_{1-2}alkyl, O (oxo), S (sulfinyl), NR^3R^4, OR^3 and SR^3;

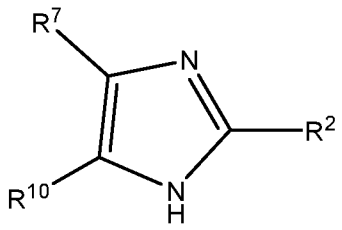
R^{14} and R^{15} are independently selected from hydrogen, C_{1-4}alkyl, C_{1-4}alkyl-hydroxyl, C_{3-7}cycloalkyl, phenyl, monocyclic 5- or 6- membered heteroaryl, and SO_2R^{13}, the

phenyl or 5- or 6- membered heteroaryl being optionally substituted with one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of halogen, C_{1-2}alkyl, O (oxo), S (sulfinyl), NR^3R^4, OR^3 and SR^3;

R^{16} groups are independently selected from C_{1-4}alkyl and phenyl, the phenyl being optionally substituted with one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of halogen, C_{1-2}alkyl, O (oxo), S (sulfinyl), NR^3R^4, OR^3 and SR^3.

Preferably, R^{10} is pyridyl optionally substituted with one or more substituents selected from Cl, F, NH_2, NHMe, C_{1-2}alkyl, C_{1-2}alkoxy, $CONH_2$, CONHMe, $CONMe_2$, OCH_2C_3cycloalkyl, OC_3cycloalkyl, OCF_3 and hydroxyl. More preferably, the pyridyl is optionally substituted with one or more substituents selected from Cl, F, NH_2, NHMe and C_{1-2}alkyl.

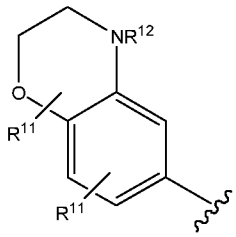
According to a further preferred embodiment of the further aspect of the present invention, there is provided a compound, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, hydrate, solvate or ester thereof, having the general formula (V):



(V)

wherein R^2 is NH_2;

R^7 is



(Ie) and each R^{11} is hydrogen and R^{12} is selected from hydrogen, C_{1-4}alkyl, C_{3-7}cycloalkyl, C_{1-4}alkyl-CO_2R^{14}, C_{1-4}alkyl-OR^{14} and C_{1-4}alky-$NR^{14}R^{15}$;

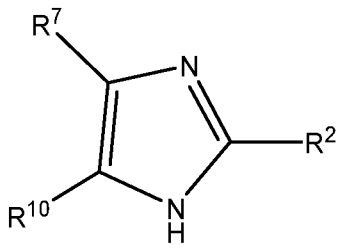
R^{14} and R^{15} are independently selected from hydrogen, C_{1-4}alkyl, C_{3-7}cycloalkyl, phenyl, monocyclic 5- or 6- membered heteroaryl, and SO_2R^{13}, the phenyl or 5- or 6-membered heteroaryl being optionally substituted with one or more substituents

selected from the group consisting of halogen, C_{1-2}alkyl, O (oxo), S (sulfinyl), NR^3R^4, OR^3 and SR^3;

R^{13} is selected from C_{1-4}alkyl, C_{3-7}cycloalkyl, phenyl, and monocyclic 5- or 6-membered heteroaryl, the phenyl or 5- or 6- membered heteroaryl being optionally substituted with one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of halogen, C_{1-2}alkyl, O (oxo), S (sulfinyl), NR^3R^4, OR^3 and SR^3; and

R^{10} is a pyridyl group, wherein the pyridyl group is optionally substituted with one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of Cl, F, NH_2, and methyl.

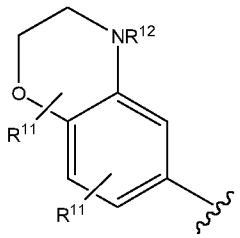
According to a further preferred embodiment of the further aspect of the present invention, there is provided a compound, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, hydrate, solvate or ester thereof, having the general formula (V):



(V)

wherein R^2 is NH_2;

R^7 is



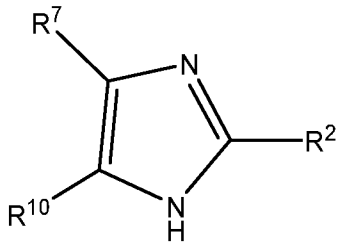
(Ie) and each R^{11} is hydrogen and R^{12} is selected from hydrogen, C_{1-4}alkyl, C_{3-7}cycloalkyl, C_{1-4}alkyl-CO_2R^{14}, C_{1-4}alkyl-OR^{14} and C_{1-4}alky-$NR^{14}R^{15}$;

R^{14} and R^{15} are independently selected from hydrogen, C_{1-4}alkyl, C_{3-7}cycloalkyl, phenyl, monocyclic 5- or 6- membered heteroaryl, and SO_2R^{13}, the phenyl or 5- or 6-membered heteroaryl being optionally substituted with one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of halogen, C_{1-2}alkyl, O (oxo), S (sulfinyl), NR^3R^4, OR^3 and SR^3;

R^{13} is selected from C_{1-4}alkyl, C_{3-7}cycloalkyl, phenyl, and monocyclic 5- or 6-membered heteroaryl, the phenyl or 5- or 6- membered heteroaryl being optionally substituted with one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of halogen, C_{1-2}alkyl, O (oxo), S (sulfinyl), NR^3R^4, OR^3 and SR^3; and

R^{10} is a pyridyl group, wherein the pyridyl group is optionally substituted with methyl.

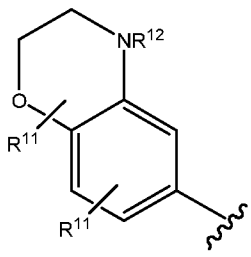
According to a further preferred embodiment of the further aspect of the present invention, there is provided a compound of general formula (V), or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, hydrate, solvate or ester thereof:



(V)

wherein R^2 is NH_2;

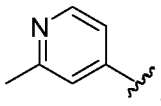
R^7 is



(Ie) and each R^{11} is hydrogen and R^{12} is selected from hydrogen, C_{1-4}alkyl, C_{3-7}cycloalkyl, C_{1-4}alkyl-CO_2R^{14}, C_{1-4}alkyl-OR^{14} and C_{1-4}alky-$NR^{14}R^{15}$;

R^{14} and R^{15} are independently selected from hydrogen, C_{1-4}alkyl, C_{3-7}cycloalkyl, phenyl, monocyclic 5- or 6- membered heteroaryl, and SO_2R^{13}, the phenyl or 5- or 6-membered heteroaryl being optionally substituted with one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of halogen, C_{1-2}alkyl, O (oxo), S (sulfinyl), NR^3R^4, OR^3 and SR^3;

R^{13} is selected from C_{1-4}alkyl, C_{3-7}cycloalkyl, phenyl, and monocyclic 5- or 6-membered heteroaryl, the phenyl or 5- or 6- membered heteroaryl being optionally substituted with one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of halogen, C_{1-2}alkyl, O (oxo), S (sulfinyl), NR^3R^4, OR^3 and SR^3; and

R^{10} is a pyridyl group substituted with methyl, preferably R^{10} is  .

Medical uses, methods of treatment and pharmaceutical formulations

The compounds of general formula (I), (II), (III), (IV) and (V), or pharmaceutically acceptable salts, hydrates, solvates or esters thereof, may be used in the treatment of bacterial infections and diseases caused by *Enterobacteriaceae*. Thus, the invention contemplates the compounds as described herein for use in medicine (e.g. for use in treatment or prophylaxis), methods of medical treatment or prophylaxis involving the administration of the compounds as described herein as well as pharmaceutical compositions comprising the compounds as described herein

The compounds of general formula (I), (II), (III), (IV) and (V), or pharmaceutically acceptable salts, hydrates, solvates or esters thereof, may have bacteriostatic or bactericidal activity against *Enterobacteriaceae*.

The compounds of general formula (I), (II), (III), (IV) and (V), or a pharmaceutically acceptable salts, hydrates, solvates or esters thereof may target one or more bacteria of the following *Enterobacteriaceae* genera: *Arsenophonus, Brenneria, Buchnera, Budvicia, Buttiauxella, Cedecea, Citrobacter, Cosenzaea, Cronobacter, Dickeya, Edwardsiella, Enterobacillus, Enterobacter, Erwinia, Escherichia, Ewingella, Franconibacter, Gibbsiella, Hafnia, Izhakiella, Kosakonia, Klebsiella, Kluyvera, Leclercia, Lelliottia, Leminorella, Levinea, Lonsdalea, Mangrovibacter, Moellerella, Morganella, Obesumbacterium, Pantoea, Pectobacterium, Phaseolibacter, Photorhabdus, Plesiomonas, Pluralibacter, Pragia, Proteus, Providencia, Pseudocitrobacter, Rahnella, Raoultella, Rosenbergiella, Rouxiella, Saccharobacter, Salmonella, Samsonia, Serratia, Shigella, Shimwellia, Siccibacter, Sodalis, Tatumella, Thorsellia, Trabulsiella, Wigglesworthia, Xenorhabdus, Yersinia* and *Yokenella*.

The compounds of general formula (I), (II), (III), (IV) and (V), or pharmaceutically acceptable salts, hydrates, solvates or esters thereof, are particularly effective at treating infections caused by *Enterobacteriaceae*.

Preferably, the compounds of general formula (I), (II), (III), (IV) and (V), or a pharmaceutically acceptable salts, hydrates, solvates or esters thereof, may be used to treat infections caused by *Enterobacteriaceae* which are in the form of a biofilm.

Preferably, the compounds of general formula (I), (II), (III), (IV) and (V), or a pharmaceutically acceptable salts, hydrates, solvates or esters thereof, may also be used in treating other conditions treatable by eliminating or reducing a *Enterobacteriaceae* infection. In this case they will act in a secondary manner alongside for example a chemotherapeutic agent used in the treatment of cancer.

Preferably, the compounds of general formula (I), (II), (III), (IV) and (V), or a pharmaceutically acceptable salts, hydrates, solvates or esters thereof, can be used in the treatment of the human body. They may be used in the treatment of the animal body. In particular, the compounds of general formula (I), (II), (III), (IV) and (V), or pharmaceutically acceptable salts, hydrates, solvates or esters thereof, can be used to treat commercial animals such as livestock. Alternatively, the compounds of general formula (I), (II), (III), (IV) and (V), or pharmaceutically acceptable salts, hydrates, solvates or esters thereof, can be used to treat companion animals such as cats, dogs, etc.

The *Enterobactericeae* disease or infection may involve intoxication with one or more bacterial toxins, including for example endotoxins, exotoxins and/or toxic enzymes. Thus, the compounds of general formula (I), (II), (III), (IV) and (V), or pharmaceutically acceptable salts, hydrates, solvates or esters thereof, find application in the treatment of *Enterobacteriaceae* intoxication. In such embodiments, preferred is the treatment of intoxication with bacterial endotoxins, exotoxins and/or toxic enzymes, for example with endotoxins, exotoxins and/or toxic enzymes produced by *Enterobacteriaceae*.

Preferably, for the compounds of general formula (I), (II), (III), (IV) and (V), or a pharmaceutically acceptable salts, hydrates, solvates or esters thereof, the dosage administered will, of course, vary with the compound employed, the mode of administration, the treatment desired and the disorder indicated. For example, if the

compound of general formula (I), (II), (III), (IV) and (V), or pharmaceutically acceptable salts, hydrates, solvates or esters thereof, is administered orally, then the daily dosage of the compound of the invention may be in the range from 0.01 micrograms per kilogram body weight (µg/kg) to 100 milligrams per kilogram body weight (mg/kg).

The size of the dose for therapeutic purposes of compounds of general formula (I), (II), (III), (IV) and (V), or pharmaceutically acceptable salts, hydrates, solvates or esters thereof will naturally vary according to the nature and severity of the conditions, the age and sex of the animal or patient and the route of administration, according to well-known principles of medicine.

Dosage levels, dose frequency, and treatment durations of compounds of general formula (I), (II), (III), (IV) and (V), or pharmaceutically acceptable salts, hydrates, solvates or esters thereof are expected to differ depending on the formulation and clinical indication, age, and co-morbid medical conditions of the patient. The standard duration of treatment with compounds of general formula (I), (II), (III), (IV) and (V), or pharmaceutically acceptable salts, hydrates, solvates or esters thereof is expected to vary between one and seven days for most clinical indications. It may be necessary to extend the duration of treatment beyond seven days in instances of recurrent infections or infections associated with tissues or implanted materials to which there is poor blood supply including bones/joints, respiratory tract, endocardium, and dental tissues.

Preferably, the compounds of general formula (I), (II), (III), (IV) and (V), or a pharmaceutically acceptable salts, hydrates, solvates or esters thereof, may take any form. It may be synthetic, purified or isolated from natural sources using techniques described in the art.

The compounds of general formula (I), (II), (III), (IV) and (V) may be obtained, stored and/or administered in the form of a pharmaceutically acceptable salt. Illustrative pharmaceutically acceptable salts are prepared from formic, acetic, propionic, succinic, glycolic, gluconic, lactic, malic, tartaric, citric, ascorbic, glucuronic, maleic, fumaric, pyruvic, aspartic, glutamic, benzoic, anthranilic, mesylic, stearic, salicylic, p-hydroxybenzoic, phenylacetic, mandelic, embonic (pamoic), methanesulfonic,

ethanesulfonic, benzenesulfonic, pantothenic, toluenesulfonic, 2-hydroxyethanesulfonic, sulfanilic, cyclohexylaminosulfonic, algenic, β-hydroxybutyric, galactaric and galacturonic acids.

Suitable pharmaceutically-acceptable base addition salts include metallic ion salts and organic ion salts. Metallic ion salts include, but are not limited to, appropriate alkali metal (group Ia) salts, alkaline earth metal (group IIa) salts and other physiologically acceptable metal ions. Such salts can be made from the ions of aluminium, calcium, lithium, magnesium, potassium, sodium and zinc. Organic salts can be made from tertiary amines and quaternary ammonium salts, including in part, trimethylamine, diethylamine, *N*, *N*'-dibenzylethylenediamine, chloroprocaine, choline, diethanolamine, ethylenediamine, meglumine (N-methylglucamine) and procaine. All of the above salts can be prepared by those skilled in the art by conventional means from the corresponding compound. Conventional procedures for the selection and preparation of suitable pharmaceutical formulations are described in, for example, "Pharmaceuticals - The Science of Dosage Form Designs", M. E. Aulton, Churchill Livingstone, 1988.

Preferably, the compounds of general formula (I), (II), (III), (IV) and (V), or a pharmaceutically acceptable salts, hydrates, solvates or esters thereof, are formulated as a pharmaceutical composition, comprising a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier.

Pharmaceutical compositions can include stabilizers, antioxidants, colorants and diluents. Pharmaceutically acceptable carriers and additives are chosen such that side effects from the pharmaceutical compound are minimized and the performance of the compound is not compromised to such an extent that treatment is ineffective.

The pharmaceutical compositions may be administered enterally and/or parenterally. Oral (intra-gastric) is a typical route of administration. Pharmaceutically acceptable carriers can be in solid dosage forms, including tablets, capsules, pills and granules, which can be prepared with coatings and shells, such as enteric coatings and others well known in the art. Liquid dosage forms for oral administration include pharmaceutically acceptable emulsions, solutions,

suspensions, syrups and elixirs. Parenteral administration includes subcutaneous, intramuscular, intradermal, intravenous, and other routes known in the art. Enteral administration includes solution, tablets, sustained release capsules, enteric coated capsules, and syrups. When administered, the pharmaceutical composition can be at or near body temperature.

Compositions intended for oral use can be prepared according to any method known in the art for the manufacture of pharmaceutical compositions and such compositions can contain one or more agents selected from the group consisting of sweetening agents, flavouring agents, colouring agents and preserving agents in order to provide pharmaceutically elegant and palatable preparations. Tablets contain the active ingredient in admixture with non-toxic pharmaceutically acceptable excipients, which are suitable for the manufacture of tablets. These excipients may be, for example, inert diluents, such as calcium carbonate, sodium carbonate, lactose, calcium phosphate or sodium phosphate, granulating and disintegrating agents, for example, maize starch, or alginic acid, binding agents, for example starch, gelatin or acacia, and lubricating agents, for example magnesium stearate, stearic acid, or talc. Tablets can be uncoated or they can be coated by known techniques, for example to delay disintegration and absorption in the gastrointestinal tract and thereby provide sustained action over a longer period. For example, a time delay material such as glyceryl monostearate or glyceryl distearate can be employed. Formulations for oral use can also be presented as hard gelatin capsules wherein the active ingredients are mixed with an inert solid diluent, for example, calcium carbonate, calcium phosphate or kaolin, or as soft gelatin capsules wherein the active ingredients are present as such, or mixed with water or an oil medium, for example, peanut oil, liquid paraffin or olive oil.

Aqueous suspensions can be produced that contain the active materials in a mixture with excipients suitable for the manufacture of aqueous suspensions. Such excipients include suspending agents, for example, sodium carboxymethylcellulose, methylcellulose, hydroxypropylmethylcellulose, sodium alginate, polyvinylpyrrolidone, gum tragacanth and gum acacia; dispersing or wetting agents can be naturally-occurring phosphatides, for example lecithin, or condensation products of an alkylene oxide with fatty acids, for example polyoxyethylene stearate, or condensation products of ethylene oxide with long chain aliphatic alcohols, for

example heptadecaethyleneoxycetanol, or condensation products of ethylene oxide with partial esters derived from fatty acids and a hexitol such as polyoxyethylene sorbitol monooleate, or condensation products of ethylene oxide with partial esters derived from fatty acids and hexitol anhydrides, for example polyoxyethylene sorbitan monooleate. Aqueous suspensions can also contain one or more preservatives, for example, ethyl or *N*-propyl p-hydroxybenzoate, one or more colouring agents, one or more flavouring - agents, or one or more sweetening agents, such as sucrose or saccharin. Suitable aqueous vehicles include Ringer's solution and isotonic sodium chloride. Aqueous suspensions according to the invention may include suspending agents such as cellulose derivatives, sodium alginate, polyvinylpyrrolidone and gum tragacanth, and a wetting agent such as lecithin. Suitable preservatives for aqueous suspensions include ethyl and *N*-propyl p-hydroxybenzoate.

Oily suspensions may be formulated by suspending the active ingredients in an omega-3 fatty acid, a vegetable oil, for example, arachis oil, olive oil, sesame oil or coconut oil, or in a mineral oil such as liquid paraffin. The oily suspensions can contain a thickening agent, for example beeswax, hard paraffin or cetyl alcohol.

Sweetening agents, such as those set forth above, and flavouring agents can be added to provide a palatable oral preparation. These compositions can be preserved by addition of an antioxidant such as ascorbic acid.

Dispersible powders and granules suitable for preparation of an aqueous suspension by addition of water provide the active ingredient in admixture with a dispersing or wetting agent, a suspending agent and one or more preservatives. Suitable dispersing or wetting agents and suspending agents are exemplified by those already mentioned above. Additional excipients, for example sweetening, flavouring and colouring agents, can also be present.

Syrups and elixirs containing the compound of the invention can be formulated with sweetening agents, for example glycerol, sorbitol, or sucrose. Such formulations can also contain a demulcent, a preservative and flavouring and colouring agents.

Preferably, the compounds of general formula (I), (II), (III), (IV) and (V), or a pharmaceutically acceptable salts, hydrates, solvates or esters thereof, can be administered parenterally, for example subcutaneously, intravenously, or intramuscularly, or by infusion techniques, in the form of sterile injectable aqueous or oleaginous suspensions. Such suspensions can be formulated according to known art using suitable dispersing or wetting agents and suspending agents such as those mentioned above or other acceptable agents. A sterile injectable preparation can be a sterile injectable solution or suspension in a non-toxic parenterally acceptable diluent or solvent, for example a solution in 1,3- butanediol. Among acceptable vehicles and solvents that can be employed are water, Ringer's solution and isotonic sodium chloride solution. In addition, sterile fixed oils are conventionally employed as a solvent or suspending medium. For this purpose, any bland fixed oil may be employed, including synthetic mono-or diglycerides. In addition, omega-3 polyunsaturated fatty acids can find use in preparation of injectables. Administration can also be by inhalation, in the form of aerosols or solutions for nebulizers, or rectally, in the form of suppositories prepared by mixing the drug with a suitable non-irritating excipient which is solid at ordinary temperature, but liquid at rectal" temperature and will therefore, melt in the rectum to release the drug. Such materials are cocoa butter and polyethylene glycols. Also encompassed by the present invention is buccal and sub-lingual administration, including administration in the form of lozenges, pastilles or a chewable gum comprising the compounds set forth herein. The compounds can be deposited in a flavoured base, usually sucrose, and acacia or tragacanth.

Other methods for administration of the compounds of general formula (I), (II), (III), (IV) and (V), or pharmaceutically acceptable salts, hydrates, solvates or esters thereof, include dermal patches that release the medicaments directly into and/or through a subject's skin.

Topical delivery systems are also encompassed by the present invention and include ointments, powders, sprays, creams, jellies, collyriums, solutions or suspensions.

Compositions of the present invention can optionally be supplemented with additional agents such as, for example, viscosity enhancers, preservatives,

surfactants and penetration enhancers. Viscosity-building agents include, for example, polyvinyl alcohol, polyvinyl pyrrolidone, methylcellulose, hydroxypropylmethylcellulose, hydroxyethylcellulose, carboxymethylcellulose, hydroxypropylcellulose or other agents known to those skilled in the art. Such agents are typically employed at a level of about 0.01% to about 2% by weight of a pharmaceutical composition.

Preservatives are optionally employed to prevent microbial growth prior to or during use. Suitable preservatives include polyquaternium-1, benzalkonium chloride, thimerosal, chlorobutanol, methylparaben, propylparaben, phenylethyl alcohol, edetate disodium, sorbic acid, or other agents known to those skilled in the art. Typically, such preservatives are employed at a level of about 0.001% to about 1.0% by weight of a pharmaceutical composition.

Solubility of components of the present compositions can be enhanced by a surfactant or other appropriate cosolvent in the composition. Such cosolvents include polysorbates 20, 60 and 80, polyoxyethylene/polyoxypropylene surfactants (e. g., Pluronic F-68, F-84 and P-103), cyclodextrin, or other agents known to those skilled in the art. Typically, such cosolvents are employed at a level of about 0.01% to about 2% by weight of a pharmaceutical composition.

Pharmaceutically acceptable excipients and carriers encompass all the foregoing and the like. The above considerations concerning effective formulations and administration procedures are well known in the art and are described in standard textbooks. See for example Remington: The Science and Practice of Pharmacy, 20th Edition (Lippincott, Williams and Wilkins), 2000; Lieberman et al., ed., Pharmaceutical Dosage Forms, Marcel Decker, New York, N. Y. (1980) and Kibbe et al., ed., Handbook of Pharmaceutical Excipients (3rd Edition), American Pharmaceutical Association, Washington (1999). Thus, in embodiments where the compound of the invention is formulated together with a pharmaceutically acceptable excipient, any suitable excipient may be used, including for example inert diluents, disintegrating agents, binding agents, lubricating agents, sweetening agents, flavouring agents, colouring agents and preservatives. Suitable inert diluents include sodium and calcium carbonate, sodium and calcium phosphate, and lactose,

while cornstarch and alginic acid are suitable disintegrating agents. Binding agents may include starch and gelatin, while the lubricating agent, if present, will generally be magnesium stearate, stearic acid or talc. The pharmaceutical compositions may take any suitable form, and include for example tablets, elixirs, capsules, solutions, suspensions, powders, granules, nail lacquers, varnishes and veneers, skin patches and aerosols.

The pharmaceutical composition may take the form of a kit of parts, which kit may comprise the composition of the invention together with instructions for use and/or a plurality of different components in unit dosage form.

For oral administration the compound of the invention can be formulated into solid or liquid preparations such as capsules, pills, tablets, troches, lozenges, melts, powders, granules, solutions, suspensions, dispersions or emulsions (which solutions, suspensions dispersions or emulsions may be aqueous or non-aqueous). The solid unit dosage forms can be a capsule which can be of the ordinary hard- or soft-shelled gelatin type containing, for example, surfactants, lubricants, and inert fillers such as lactose, sucrose, calcium phosphate, and cornstarch. Tablets for oral use may include the compound of the invention, either alone or together with pharmaceutically acceptable excipients, such as inert diluents, disintegrating agents, binding agents, lubricating agents, sweetening agents, flavouring agents, colouring agents and preservatives. Suitable inert diluents include sodium and calcium carbonate, sodium and calcium phosphate, and lactose, while corn starch and alginic acid are suitable disintegrating agents. Binding agents may include starch and gelatin, while the lubricating agent, if present, will generally be magnesium stearate, stearic acid or talc. If desired, the tablets may be coated with a material such as glyceryl monostearate or glyceryl distearate, to delay absorption in the gastrointestinal tract. Capsules for oral use include hard gelatin capsules in which the compound of the invention is mixed with a solid diluent, and soft gelatin capsules wherein the active ingredient is mixed with water or an oil such as peanut oil, liquid paraffin or olive oil. Formulations for rectal administration may be presented as a suppository with a suitable base comprising for example cocoa butter or a salicylate. Formulations suitable for vaginal administration may be presented as pessaries, tampons, creams, gels, pastes, foams or spray formulations containing in addition to the active ingredient such carriers as are known in the art to be appropriate. For

intramuscular, intraperitoneal, subcutaneous and intravenous use, the compounds of the invention will generally be provided in sterile aqueous solutions or suspensions, buffered to an appropriate pH and isotonicity.

The compounds of general formula (I), (II), (III), (IV) and (V), or pharmaceutically acceptable salts, hydrates, solvates or esters thereof, may also be presented as liposome formulations.

In another embodiment, the compounds of general formula (I), (II), (III), (IV) and (V), or pharmaceutically acceptable salts, hydrates, solvates or esters thereof, are tableted with conventional tablet bases such as lactose, sucrose, and cornstarch in combination with binders such as acacia, cornstarch, or gelatin, disintegrating agents intended to assist the break-up and dissolution of the tablet following administration such as potato starch, alginic acid, corn starch, and guar gum, lubricants intended to improve the flow of tablet granulations and to prevent the adhesion of tablet material to the surfaces of the tablet dies and punches, for example, talc, stearic acid, or magnesium, calcium, or zinc stearate, dyes, colouring agents, and flavouring agents intended to enhance the aesthetic qualities of the tablets and make them more acceptable to the patient.

Suitable excipients for use in oral liquid dosage forms include diluents such as water and alcohols, for example, ethanol, benzyl alcohol, and the polyethylene alcohols, either with or without the addition of a pharmaceutically acceptably surfactant, suspending agent or emulsifying agent.

The compounds of general formula (I), (II), (III), (IV) and (V), or pharmaceutically acceptable salts, hydrates, solvates or esters thereof, may also be administered parenterally, that is, subcutaneously, intravenously, intramuscularly, or interperitoneally. In such embodiments, the compound is provided as injectable doses in a physiologically acceptable diluent together with a pharmaceutical carrier (which can be a sterile liquid or mixture of liquids). Suitable liquids include water, saline, aqueous dextrose and related compound solutions, an alcohol (such as ethanol, isopropanol, or hexadecyl alcohol), glycols (such as propylene glycol or polyethylene glycol), glycerol ketals (such as 2,2-dimethyl-1,3-dioxolane-4-methanol), ethers (such as poly(ethylene-glycol) 400), an oil, a fatty acid, a fatty acid

ester or glyceride, or an acetylated fatty acid glyceride with or without the addition of a pharmaceutically acceptable surfactant (such as a soap or a detergent), suspending agent (such as pectin, carbomers, methylcellulose, hydroxypropylmethylcellulose, or carboxymethylcellulose), or emulsifying agent and other pharmaceutically adjuvants. Suitable oils which can be used in the parenteral formulations of this invention are those of petroleum, animal, vegetable, or synthetic origin, for example, peanut oil, soybean oil, sesame oil, cottonseed oil, corn oil, olive oil, petrolatum, and mineral oil.

Suitable fatty acids include oleic acid, stearic acid, and isostearic acid. Suitable fatty acid esters are, for example, ethyl oleate and isopropyl myristate. Suitable soaps include fatty alkali metal, ammonium, and triethanolamine salts and suitable detergents include cationic detergents, for example, dimethyl dialkyl ammonium halides, alkyl pyridinium halides, and alkylamines acetates; anionic detergents, for example, alkyl, aryl, and olefin sulphonates, alkyl, olefin, ether, and monoglyceride sulphates, and sulphosuccinates; nonionic detergents, for example, fatty amine oxides, fatty acid alkanolamides, and polyoxyethylenepolypropylene copolymers; and amphoteric detergents, for example, alkyl-beta-aminopropionates, and 2-alkylimidazoline quarternary ammonium salts, as well as mixtures.

The parenteral compositions of this invention will typically contain from about 0.5 to about 25% by weight of the compound of the invention in solution. Preservatives and buffers may also be used. In order to minimize or eliminate irritation at the site of injection, such compositions may contain a non-ionic surfactant having a hydrophile-lipophile balance (HLB) of from about 12 to about 17. The quantity of surfactant in such formulations ranges from about 5 to about 15% by weight. The surfactant can be a single component having the above HLB or can be a mixture of two or more components having the desired HLB. Illustrative of surfactants used in parenteral formulations are the class of polyethylene sorbitan fatty acid esters, for example, sorbitan monooleate and the high molecular weight adducts of ethylene oxide with a hydrophobic base, formed by the condensation of propylene oxide with propylene glycol.

The compounds of general formula (I), (II), (III), (IV) and (V), or pharmaceutically acceptable salts, hydrates, solvates or esters thereof, may also be administered topically, and when done so the carrier may suitably comprise a solution, ointment or gel base. The base, for example, may comprise one or more of the following: petrolatum, lanolin, polyethylene glycols, bee wax, mineral oil, diluents such as water and alcohol, and emulsifiers and stabilizers. Topical formulations may contain a concentration of the compound from about 0.1 to about 10% w/v (weight per unit volume).

When used adjunctively, the compounds of general formula (I), (II), (III), (IV) and (V), or pharmaceutically acceptable salts, hydrates, solvates or esters thereof, may be formulated for use with one or more other drug(s). In particular, the compounds of general formula (I), (II), (III), (IV) and (V), or pharmaceutically acceptable salts, hydrates, solvates or esters thereof, may be used in combination with analgesics, anti-inflammatories (e.g. steroids), immunomodulatory agents and anti-spasmodics.

Thus, adjunctive use may be reflected in a specific unit dosage designed to be compatible (or to synergize) with the other drug(s), or in formulations in which the compound is admixed with one or more anti-inflammatories, cytokines or immunosuppressive agents (or else physically associated with the other drug(s) within a single unit dose). Adjunctive uses may also be reflected in the composition of the pharmaceutical kits of the invention, in which the compound of the invention is co-packaged (e.g. as part of an array of unit doses) with the antimicrobial agents and/or anti-inflammatories. Adjunctive use may also be reflected in information and/or instructions relating to the co-administration of the compound with antimicrobial agents and/or anti-inflammatories.

The compounds of general formula (I), (II), (III), (IV) and (V), or pharmaceutically acceptable salts, hydrates, solvates or esters thereof, may be administered in combination with other active compounds (e.g. antifungal compounds, antiviral compounds) and, in particular, with other antibacterial compounds. The compound of general formula (I), (II), (III), (IV) and (V), or pharmaceutically acceptable salts, hydrates, solvates or esters thereof, and the other active (e.g. the other antibacterial compound) may be administered in different pharmaceutical formulations either

simultaneously or sequentially with the other active. Alternatively, the compound of general formula (I), (II), (III), (IV) and (V), or pharmaceutically acceptable salts, hydrates, solvates or esters thereof, and the other active (e.g. the other antibacterial compound) may form part of the same pharmaceutical formulation.

All publications, patents, patent applications and other references mentioned herein are hereby incorporated by reference in their entireties for all purposes as if each individual publication, patent or patent application were specifically and individually indicated to be incorporated by reference and the content thereof recited in full.

Features, integers, characteristics, compounds, chemical moieties or groups described in conjunction with a particular aspect, embodiment or example of the invention are to be understood to be applicable to any other aspect, embodiment or example described herein unless incompatible therewith.

Examples

The invention will now be described with reference to specific examples. These are merely exemplary and for illustrative purposes only; they are not intended to be limiting in any way to the scope of the monopoly claimed or to the invention described. These examples constitute the best mode currently contemplated for practising the invention.

The following abbreviations have been used:

Ac	acetyl
Ac_2O	acetic anhydride
AcOH	acetic acid
aq	aqueous
Ar	aryl
Boc	tert-butoxycarbonyl
nBuLi	*N*-butyllithium
calcd	calculated
CDI	carbonyldiimidazole
conc	concentrated

d	day
DCE	dichloroethane
DCM	dichloromethane
DIBALH	diisobutylaluminium hydride
DIPEA	diisopropylethylamine
DMAP	4-dimethylaminopyridine
DMF	dimethylformamide
EDC	1-ethyl-3-(3-dimethylaminopropyl)carbodiimide hydrochloride
ES+	electrospray ionization
EtOAc	ethyl acetate
EtOH	ethanol
Ex	Example
h	hour(s)
HBTU	*O*-benzotriazole-*N*,*N*,*N*',*N*'-tetramethyl-uronium-hexafluoro-phosphate
HOBt	1-hydroxybenzotriazole hydrate
HPLC	High Performance Liquid Chromatography
HRMS	High-Resolution Mass Spectrometry
Int	Intermediate
LCMS	Liquid Chromatography Mass Spectrometry
LDA	lithium diisopropylamide
M	molar
Me	methyl
mCPBA	meta-chloroperbenzoic acid
MeCN	acetonitrile
MeOH	methanol
min	minute(s)
Ms	methanesulfonate
MS	Mass Spectrometry
$NaBH(OAc)_3$	sodium triacetoxyborohydride
NIS	*N*-iodosuccinimide
NMP	*N*-methylpyrrolidone
Rf	Retention time
RT (or rt)	room temperature

sat	saturated
SCX	Strong Cation Exchange
SM	starting material
TFA	trifluoroacetic acid
THF	Tetrahydrofuran

Experimental Method

Reactions were conducted at room temperature unless otherwise specified. Microwave reactions were performed with a CEM Discover microwave reactor using process vials fitted with aluminium caps and septa. Preparative flash chromatography was performed using silica gel (100-200 mesh).

Prep HPLC was performed using one of the following methods: Instrument - Agilent-1260 infinity; Column: Sunfire C8 (19x250) mm, 5µ or Sunfire C18 (19x250) mm, 5µ; Solvents: solvent A = 5mM Ammonium acetate in water; solvent B = acetonitrile/ solvent A = 0.1% TFA; solvent B = acetonitrile/; Detection wavelength 214 nm. Instrument - Waters 2767 autoprep with 2998 detector; Column: X TERRA C18 (19x250)mm, 10µ or Sunfire C18 (19x250) mm, 10µ ; Solvents: solvent A = 5mM Ammonium acetate in water; solvent B = acetonitrile/ solvent A = acetonitrile; solvent B = 0.1% TFA in Water; Detection wavelength 214 nm. The purest fractions were collected, concentrated and dried under vacuum. Compounds were typically dried in a vacuum oven at 40 °C prior to purity analysis. Compound analysis was performed by Waters Acquity UPLC, Waters 3100 PDA Detector, SQD; Column: Acquity BEH C-18, 1.7 micron, 2.1 x 100 mm; Gradient [time (min)/solvent B in A (%)]:0.00/10, 1.00/10, 2.00/15, 4.50/55, 6.00/90, 8.00/90, 9.00/10, 10.00/10; Solvents: solvent A = 5 mM ammonium acetate in water; solvent B = acetonitrile; Injection volume 1µL; Detection wavelength 214 nm; Column temperature 30 °C; Flow rate 0.3 mL/min or Waters Acquity UPLC, Waters 3100 PDA Detector, SQD; Column: Acquity HSS-T3, 1.8 micron, 2.1 x 100 mm; Gradient [time (min)/solvent B in A (%)]: 0.00/10, 1.00/10, 2.00/15, 4.50/55, 6.00/90, 8.00/90, 9.00/10, 10.00/10; Solvents: solvent A = 0.1% trifluoroacetic acid in water; solvent B = acetonitrile; Injection volume 1µL; Detection wavelength 214 nm; Column temperature 30 °C; Flow rate 0.3 mL/min.

400MHz 1H nuclear magnetic resonance spectra (NMR) were recorded on an Avance Bruker AV400 spectrometer. In the NMR spectra the chemical shifts (δ) are expressed in ppm relative to the residual solvent peak. Abbreviations have the following significances: b = broad signal, s = singlet, d = doublet, t = triplet, dd = doublet of doublets, ddd = doublet of double doublets. Abbreviations may be compounded and other patterns are unabbreviated.

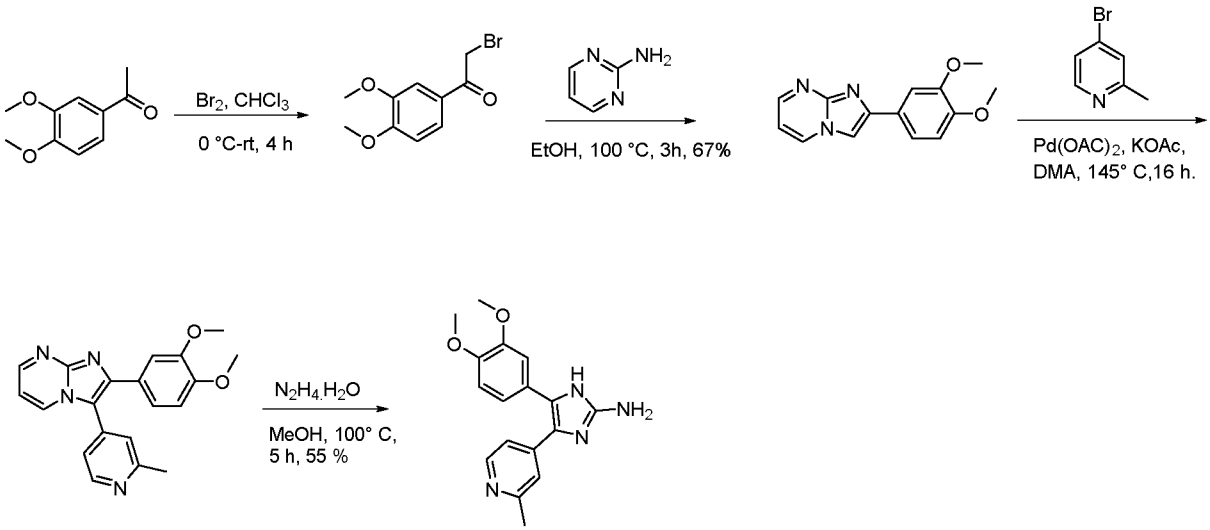
The compounds prepared were named using ChemBioDraw Ultra 13.0 by CambridgeSoft.

In the absence of intermediate synthesis, the compounds are commercially available.

Examples and intermediate compounds

Synthetic Route 1

5-(3,4-Dimethoxyphenyl)-4-(2-methylpyridin-4-yl)-1H-imidazol-2-amine (Example 1)



2-Bromo-1-(3,4-dimethoxyphenyl)ethan-1-one

To a solution of 1-(3,4-dimethoxyphenyl)ethan-1-one (5.0g, 27.7mmol) in $CHCl_3$ (100mL) was added a solution of bromine (1.4mL, 27.7mmol) in $CHCl_3$ (25mL) at 0 °C drop wise over a period of 1h. The reaction mixture was stirred at 0 °C for 3h and allowed to warm to rt. The TLC showed the reaction to be complete. The reaction mixture was quenched with saturated bicarbonate solution (100mL) and

extracted with DCM (2x100mL). The organic layer was washed with brine (100mL), dried (Na_2SO_4), filtered and concentrated under reduced pressure to give 2-bromo-1-(3,4-dimethoxyphenyl)ethan-1-one as a brown solid. Yield: 3.1 g (crude). The crude product was used without further purification.

2-(3,4-Dimethoxyphenyl)imidazo[1,2-a]pyrimidine

To a solution of 2-bromo-1-(3,4-dimethoxyphenyl)ethan-1-one (3.0g, 11.6mmol) in EtOH (30mL) was added pyrimidin-2-amine (1.1g, 11.6mmol) at rt. The reaction mixture was stirred at 100 °C for 3h. The TLC showed the reaction to be complete. The reaction mixture was cooled to rt. The solid precipitated was filtered, washed with Et_2O (50mL) and dried under reduced pressure to afford 2-(3,4-dimethoxyphenyl)imidazo[1,2-a]pyrimidine as a yellow solid. Yield: 2.01g (67%); MS (ESI+) for CHNOS *m/z* 256.17 $[M+H]^+$. ^1H NMR (400 MHz, DMSO-d_6): δ 9.20 (d, J = 6.6Hz, 1H), 8.90 (d, J = 2.3Hz, 1H), 8.65 (s, 1H), 7.50-7.68 (m, 3H), 7.16 (d, J = 8.9 Hz, 1H), 3.88 (s, 3H), 3.84 (s, 3H).

2-(3,4-Dimethoxyphenyl)-3-(2-methylpyridin-4-yl)imidazo[1,2-a]pyrimidine

A mixture of 2-(3,4-dimethoxyphenyl)imidazo[1,2-a]pyrimidine (1.0 g, 3.92mmol), 4-bromo-2-methylpyridine (539mg, 3.13mmol) and potassium acetate (768mg, 7.84mmol) in dimethylacetamide (10.0mL) was purged with N_2 gas for 10 min and $Pd(OAC)_2$ (43mg, 0.19mmol) was added under an atmosphere of nitrogen. The reaction mixture was purged with N_2 gas for 5 min and stirred further at 145° C for 16h. The TLC showed the reaction to be complete. The reaction was diluted with H_2O (50mL) and extracted with EtOAc (3x50mL), the combined organic layers were washed with brine (100mL), dried (Na_2SO_4), filtered and concentrated under reduced pressure. The crude LCMS showed the formation of two regioisomers with desired mass 60% and 33% respectively. The crude material was used in the next step without further purification. Yield: 620mg (crude). MS (ESI+) for CHNOS *m/z* 347.17 $[M+H]^+$

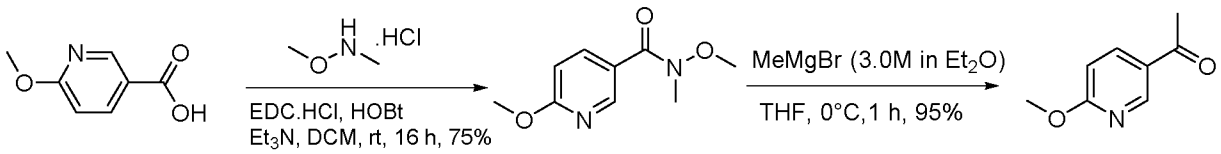
5-(3,4-Dimethoxyphenyl)-4-(2-methylpyridin-4-yl)-1H-imidazol-2-amine

To a solution of 2-(3,4-dimethoxyphenyl)-3-(2-methylpyridin-4-yl)imidazo[1,2-a]pyrimidine (400mg, 1.15mmol) was added hydrazine hydrate (0.3mL, 5.8mmol) at rt. The reaction mixture was stirred at 100 °C for 5h. The TLC showed the reaction

to be complete. The reaction mixture was allowed to cool to rt and concentrated under reduced pressure. The residue was diluted with water (20mL) and the precipitated solid was collected by filtration, washed with water (25mL) and dried under reduced pressure. The solid was further triturated with Et_2O (10mL) and dried under presser to afford 5-(3,4-dimethoxyphenyl)-4-(2-methylpyridin-4-yl)-1H-imidazol-2-amine as a yellow solid. Yield: 200mg (55%); MS (ESI+) for CHNOS m/z 311.21 [M+H] +; LC purity 99.7% (Ret. Time- 4.42min); 1H NMR (400 MHz, DMSO-d6): δ 10.93 (bs, 1H), 8.19 (d, J = 4.8 Hz, 1H), 6.93-7.45 (m, 5H), 5.37 (bs, 2H), 3.77 (s, 3H), 3.68 (s, 3H), 2.35 (s, 3H).

Intermediate 1

1-(6-Methoxypyridin-3-yl)ethan-1-one



***N*,6-Dimethoxy-N-methylnicotinamide**

To a solution of 6-methoxynicotinic acid (5g, 32.6mmol) in DCM (50mL) were added EDCI.HCl (12.5g, 65.3mmol), HOBT (4.99g, 32.6mmol) and triethylamine (13.7mL, 98.0mmol) at rt. The reaction mixture was stirred at rt for 15 min and *N*,O-dimethylhydroxylamine hydrochloride (3.8g, 39.2mmol) was added. The reaction mixture was further stirred at rt for 16h. The TLC showed the reaction to be complete. The reaction mixture was diluted with water (100mL) and extracted with DCM (2x50mL) and the organic layer was washed with brine (100mL), dried (Na_2SO_4), filtered and concentrated under reduced pressure. The residue was purified by column chromatography using silica gel (100-200 mesh), eluting with 10% EtOAc in hexane to afford *N*,6-dimethoxy-*N*-methylnicotinamide as a yellow liquid. Yield: 4.8g (75%); MS (ESI+) for CHNOS *m/z* 197.17 $[M+H]^+$. ^1H NMR (400 MHz, DMSO-d_6): δ 8.49 (s, 1H), 7.96 (d, *J* = 8.6Hz, 1H), 6.88 (d, *J* = 8.6Hz, 1H), 3.90 (s, 3H), 3.57 (s, 3H), 3.26 (s, 3H).

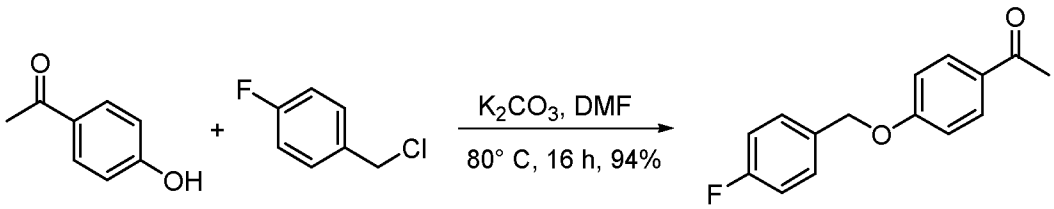
1-(6-Methoxypyridin-3-yl)ethan-1-one

To a solution of *N*,6-dimethoxy-*N*-methylnicotinamide (4.8g, 24.4mmol) in THF (50mL) was added methyl magnesium bromide (3M in Et_2O, 24.4mL, 73.3mmol) at 0

°C. The reaction mixture was stirred at 0°C for 1h. The TLC showed the reaction to be complete. The reaction mixture was quenched with saturated aqueous ammonium chloride solution (25mL) and extracted with EtOAc (3x25mL) and the organic layer was washed with brine (50mL), dried (Na_2SO_4), filtered and concentrated under reduced pressure to afford 1-(6-methoxypyridin-3-yl)ethan-1-one as a yellow solid. Yield: 3.51g (95%); MS (ESI+) for CHNOS *m/z* 152.13 $[M+H]^+$. ^1H NMR (400 MHz, DMSO-d_6): δ 8.82 (d, *J* = 2.3 Hz, 1H), (dd, *J* = 2.3, 8.7 Hz, 1H), 6.92 (d, *J* = 8.7Hz, 1H), 3.94 (s, 3H), 2.55 (s, 3H).

Intermediate 2

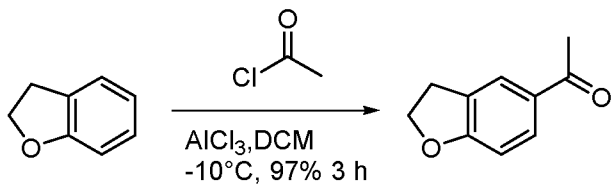
1-(4-((4-Fluorobenzyl)oxy)phenyl)ethan-1-one



To a solution of 1-(4-hydroxyphenyl)ethan-1-one (5g, 36.6 mmol) in DMF (50mL) were added 1-(chloromethyl)-4-fluorobenzene (5.3g, 36.6mmol) and K_2CO_3 (15.17g, 109.9mmol) at rt. The reaction mixture was stirred at 80°C for 16h. The TLC showed the reaction to be complete. The reaction mixture was cooled to rt, diluted with H_2O (100mL) and extracted with EtOAc (3x100mL). The organics were dried (Na_2SO_4), filtered and concentrated under reduced pressure. The crude residue was triturated with Et_2O (50mL), filtered and dried under reduced pressure to afford 1-(4-((4-fluorobenzyl)oxy)phenyl)ethan-1-one as an off white solid. Yield: 8.5 g (94%); MS (ESI+) for CHNOS *m/z* 245.08 $[M+H]^+$; ^1H NMR (400 MHz, DMSO-d_6) δ 7.92 (d, *J* = 8.0 Hz, 2H), 7.47- 7.57 (m, 2H), 7.18-7.27 (m, 2H), 7.11 (d, *J* = 8.0 Hz, 2H), 5.18 (s, 2 H), 2.52 (s ,3H).

Intermediate 3

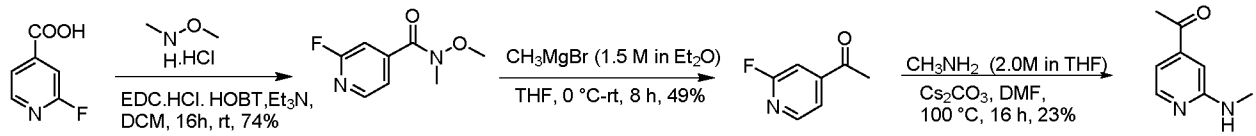
1-(2,3-Dihydrobenzofuran-5-yl)ethan-1-one



To a solution of 2,3-dihydrobenzofuran (1g, 8.3mmol) in DCM (10mL) was added acetyl chloride (1.3g, 16.6mmol) and $AlCl_3$ (3.3g, 24.6mmol) slowly at -10°C. The reaction mixture was stirred at -10°C for 3h. The TLC showed the reaction to be complete. The reaction mixture was diluted with 5% aqueous HCl (10mL) and extracted with DCM (3x10mL). The combined organic layers were washed with saturated aqueous bicarbonate solution (100mL), brine (100mL), dried (Na_2SO_4), filtered and concentrated under reduced pressure to afford 1-(2,3-dihydrobenzofuran-5-yl)ethan-1-one as a brown liquid. Yield: 1.34g (97%); MS (ESI+) for CHNOS *m/z* 163.0$[M+H]^+$; ^1H NMR (400 MHz, $CDCl_3$): δ 7.86 (s, 1H), 7.79 (d, J = 8.4Hz, 1H), 6.80 (d, J = 8.4 Hz, 1H), 4.66 (t, J = 8.8 Hz, 2H), 3.25 (t, J = 8.8 Hz, 2H), 2.52 (s, 3H).

Intermediate 4

1-(2-(Methylamino)pyridin-4-yl)ethan-1-one



,

2-Fluoro-*N*-methoxy-*N*-methylisonicotinamide

To a solution of 2-fluoroisonicotinic acid (5.0g, 36.5mmol) in DCM (100mL) were added *N*-methoxymethanamine hydrochloride (5.3g, 54.7mmol), HOBT (5.17g, 38.32mmol), EDC.HCl (14.1g, 91.2mmol) and Et_3N (20.4mL, 146mmol) at rt. The reaction mixture was stirred at rt for 16h. The TLC showed reaction to be complete. The reaction mixture was diluted with water (100mL) and extracted with DCM (3x100mL). The organic layer was dried (Na_2SO_4), filtered and concentrated under reduced pressure. The residue was purified by combiflash chromatography using 40g silica column, eluting with 20% EtOAc in hexane to afford 2-fluoro-*N*-methoxy-*N*-methylisonicotinamide as a light brown solid. Yield: 5.0g (74%); MS (ESI+) for CHNOS *m/z* 185.20$[M+H]^+$; ^1H NMR (400 MHz, $CDCl_3$): δ 8.27-8.31 (m, 1H), 7.38-7.43 (m, 1H), 7.17 (s, 1H), 3.37 (s, 3H), 3.55 (s, 3H).

1-(2-Fluoropyridin-4-yl)ethan-1-one

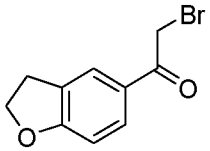
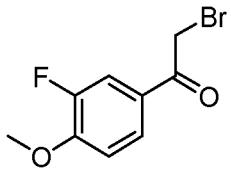
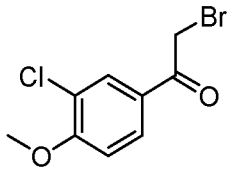
To a solution of 2-fluoro-*N*-methoxy-*N*-methylisonicotinamide (5.0g, 27.0mmol) in dry THF (120mL) was added MeMgBr (1.5M sol in Et_2O, 27mL, 40.5mmol) slowly at rt. The reaction mixture was stirred at rt for 8h. The TLC showed reaction to be complete. The reaction mixture was quenched with ice-water (50mL) and extracted with the EtOAc (3x50mL). The organic layer was dried (Na_2SO_4), filtered and concentrated under reduced pressure to afford 1-(2-fluoropyridin-4-yl)ethan-1-one as a pale yellow liquid which was used for next reaction without further purification. Yield: 2.2g (49.6%); MS (ESI+) for CHNOS *m/z* 140.15 $[M+H]^+$; ^1H NMR (400 MHz, $CDCl_3$): δ 8.39 (d, J = 5.1 Hz, 1H), 7.63 (d, J = 5.1 Hz, 1H), 7.37 (bs, 1H), 2.63 (s, 3H).

1-(2-(Methylamino)pyridin-4-yl)ethan-1-one

To a mixture of 1-(2-fluoropyridin-4-yl)ethan-1-one (6.0g, 42.9mmol) and Cs_2CO_3 (41.9g, 128.6mmol) in dry DMF (60mL) was added methylamine (2.0M in THF, 42.7mL, 85.7mmol) at rt. The reaction vessel was sealed and the reaction mixture was stirred at 120 °C for 16h. The TLC showed reaction to be complete. The reaction mixture was diluted with cold water (50mL) and extracted with EtOAc (3x50mL). The organic layer was dried (Na_2SO_4), filtered and concentrated under reduced pressure. The residue was purified by combiflash chromatography using 40g silica column, eluting with 10% EtOAc in hexane to afford 1-(2-(methylamino)pyridin-4-yl)ethan-1-one as a yellow solid. Yield: 1.5g (23.4%); (MS (ESI+) for CHNOS *m/z* 151.10$[M+H]^+$; ^1H NMR (400 MHz, DMSO-d_6): δ 8.13 (d, J = 5.84 Hz, 1H), 6.85-6.87 (m, 2H), 6.79 (bs, 1H), 2.80 (bs, 3H), 2.49 (s, 3H).

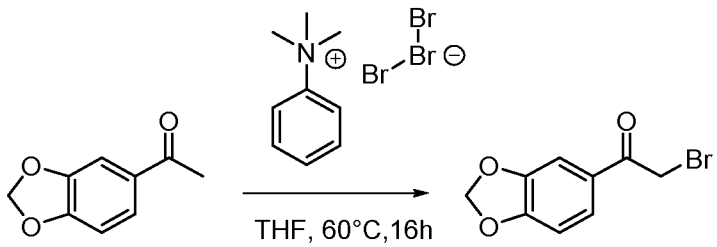
The following intermediates were prepared in a similar manner to 2-bromo-1-(3,4-dimethoxyphenyl)ethan-1-one.

Name	Int	Structure	Yield	Spectral Data 1H NMR & LCMS

2-Bromo-1-(2,3-dihydrobenzofuran-5-yl)ethan-1-one	5		**50%**	MS (ESI+) for CHNOS *m/z* 241.09 $[M+H]^+$; ^{1}H NMR (400 MHz, DMSO-d_6): δ 7.81-7.96 (m, 2H), 6.89 (d, J = 8.3 Hz, 1H), 4.75 (s, 2H), 4.65 (t, J = 8.8 Hz, 2H), 3.24 (t, J = 8.8 Hz, 2H)
2-Bromo-1-(3-fluoro-4-methoxyphenyl) ethan-1-one	6		**70%**	^{1}H NMR (400 MHz, DMSO-d_6): δ 7.76-7.89 (m, 2H), 7.24-7.41 (m, 1H), 4.87 (s, 2H), 3.94 (s, 3H).
2-Bromo-1-(3-chloro-4-methoxyphenyl) ethan-1-one	7		**56%**	MS (ESI-) for CHNOS *m/z* 261.23 $[M-H]^-$

Intermediate 8

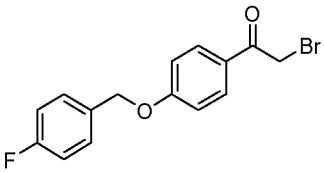
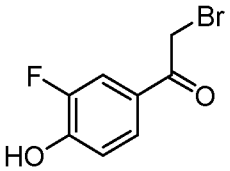
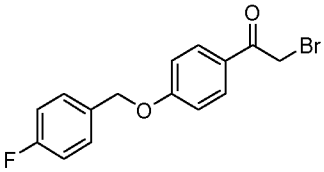
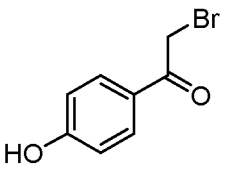
1-(Benzo[d][1,3]dioxol-5-yl)-2-bromoethan-1-one



To a solution of 1-(benzo[d][1,3]dioxol-5-yl)ethan-1-one (1g, 6.09mmol) in THF (20mL) was added trimethylphenylammonium tribromide (2.75 g, 7.01mmol) at rt. The reaction mixture was stirred at 60 °C for 16h. The TLC showed the reaction to be complete. The reaction mixture was diluted with water (20mL) and extracted with ethyl acetate (2x30mL). The combined organic layers were washed with brine (100mL), dried (Na_2SO_4), filtered and concentrated under reduced pressure to afford 1-(benzo[d][1,3]dioxol-5-yl)-2-bromoethan-1-one as a brown solid. Yield: 1.4g

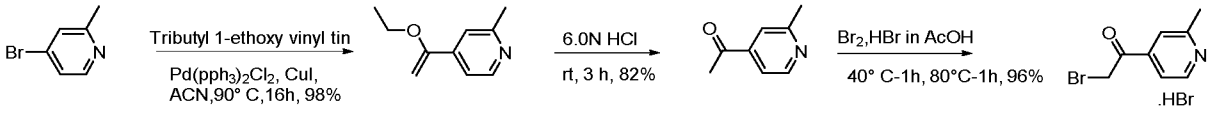
(crude); MS (ESI+) for CHNOS *m/z* 243.19 $[M+H]^+$. The crude product was used in the next step without further purification.

The following intermediates were prepared in a similar manner to 1-(benzo[d][1,3]dioxol-5-yl)-2-bromoethan-1-one.

Name	Int	Structure	Yield	Spectral Data 1H NMR & LCMS
2-Bromo-1-(4-((4-fluorobenzyl)oxy)phenyl)ethan-1-one	9		76%	MS (ESI-) for CHNOS *m/z* 321.02 $[M-H]^-$
2-Bromo-1-(3-fluoro-4-hydroxyphenyl)ethan-1-one	10		40%	MS (ESI-) for CHNOS *m/z* 231.04$[M-H]^-$; ^{1}H NMR (400 MHz, DMSO-d_6): δ 11.05 (bs, 1H), 7.55-7.94 (m, 2H), 6.95-7.18 (m, 1H), 4.82 (s, 2H)
2-Bromo-1-(4-((4-fluorobenzyl)oxy)phenyl)ethan-1-one	11		94%	MS (ESI-) for CHNOS *m/z* 320.92M-H]$^-$; ^{1}H NMR (400 MHz, DMSO-d_6): δ 7.93-8.02 (m,2H),7.44-7.58 (m, 2H), 7.12-7.21 (m, 4H), 5.21 (s, 2H), 4.84 (s, 2H)
2-Bromo-1-(4-hydroxypehnyl)ethan-1-one	12		50%	MS (ESI-) for CHNOS *m/z* 212.94 $[M-H]^+$; 1H NMR (400 MHz, DMSO-d_6) δ 10.52 (bs, 1H), 7.65-8.01 (m, 2H), 6.65-7.01 (m, 2H), 4.78 (s, 2 H)

Intermediate 13

2-Bromo-1-(2-methylpyridin-4-yl)ethan-1-one. hydrogen bromide



4-(1-Ethoxyvinyl)-2-methylpyridine

To a mixture of 4-bromo-2-methylpyridine (2.5g, 14.5mmol) and tributyl 1-ethoxy vinyl tin (10.5g, 29.1mmol) in toluene (15mL) was purged N_2 gas at rt for 10 min and $Pd(PPh_3)_4$ (1.7g, 1.45mmol) was added to it under N_2 atmosphere. The reaction mixture was purged with N_2 gas for 5 min at rt and stirred further at 110° C for 16h. The TLC showed the reaction to be complete. The reaction mixture was allowed to cool to rt before the solvent was removed under reduced pressure. The residue was stirred with hexane (25mL) and filtered through celite bed. The celite bed was washed with hexane (50mL). The combined filtrate was concentrated under reduced pressure. The crude residue was purified by column chromatography using silica gel, eluting with 0-5% EtOAc in hexane to afford 4-(1-ethoxyvinyl)-2-methylpyridine as a colourless oil. Yield: 2.35 g (98%); (MS (ESI+) for CHNOS *m/z* 164.10 $[M+H]^+$. ^1H NMR (400 MHz, DMSO-d_6): δ 8.41 (d, J = 5.2 Hz, 1H), 7.35 (s, 1H), 8.41 (d, J = 4.7 Hz, 1H), 5.01 (s, 1H), 4.46 (s, 1H), 3.91 (q, J = 6.9 Hz, 2H), 2.47 (s, 3H), 1.35 (t, J = 6.9 Hz, 3H).

1-(2-Methylpyridin-4-yl)ethan-1-one

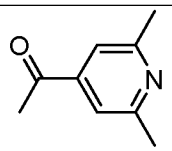
A suspension of 4-(1-ethoxyvinyl)-2-methylpyridine (2.6g, 15.9mmol) in 6N HCl (10mL) was stirred at rt for 3h. The TLC showed the reaction to be complete. The reaction mixture was diluted with water (20mL), basified to pH 11 with 5N NaOH and extracted with EtOAC (3x20mL). The organic layer was dried (Na_2SO_4), filtered and concentrated under reduced pressure to afford 1-(2-methylpyridin-4-yl)ethan-1-one as a colourless oil. Yield: 1.8g (82%); (MS (ESI+) for CHNOS *m/z* 136.05 $[M+H]^+$; ^1H NMR (400 MHz, DMSO-d_6): δ 8.65 (d, J = 5.0 Hz, 1H), 7.69 (s, 1H), 7.60 (d, J = 4.2 Hz, 1H), 2.49 (s, 3H), 2.57 (s, 3H).

2-Bromo-1-(2-methylpyridin-4-yl)ethan-1-one

To a solution of 1-(2-methylpyridin-4-yl)ethan-1-one (1.85g, 13.6mmol) in HBr (33% in AcOH, 15mL) was added a solution of bromine (0.7mL, 13.6mmol) in HBr (33%

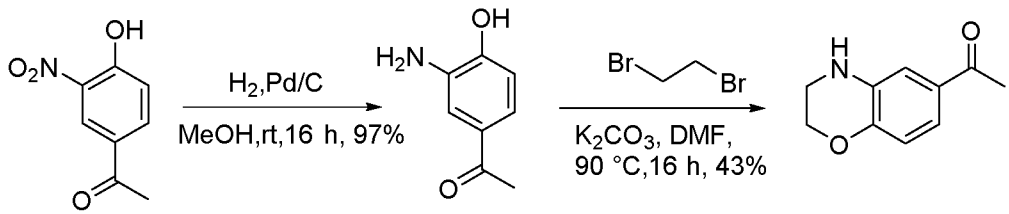
in AcOH, 3.5mL) at 0°C slowly. The reaction mixture was stirred at 40°C for 1h and then further stirred at 80°C for 1h. The TLC showed the reaction to be complete. The reaction mixture was cooled to rt, poured in Et_20 (100mL) and stirred at rt for 30 min. The precipitate was filtered, washed with Et_2O (20mL) and dried under reduced pressure to afford 2-bromo-1-(2-methylpyridin-4-yl)ethan-1-one (HBr salt) as a yellow solid. Yield: 2.8 g (96%); ^{1}H NMR (400 MHz, DMSO-d_6): δ 8.89 (d, J = 5.5 Hz, 1H), 8.12 (s, 1H), 8.00 (d, J = 5.2 Hz, 1H), 5.03 (s, 2H), 2.70 (s, 3H).

The following intermediates were prepared in a similar manner to 1-(2-methylpyridin-4-yl)ethan-1-one.

Name	Int	Structure	Yield	Spectral Data 1H NMR & LCMS
1-(2,6-Dimethylpyridin-4-yl)ethan-1-one	14		45%	MS (ESI+) for CHNOS *m/z* 150.08 $[M+H]^+$

Intermediate 15

1-(3,4-dihydro-2H-benzo[b][1,4]oxazin-6-yl)ethan-1-one



1-(3-Amino-4-hydroxyphenyl)ethan-1-one

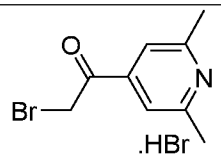
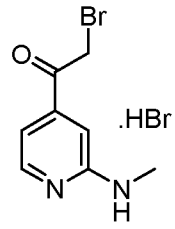
To a stirred solution of 1-(4-Hydroxy-3-nitrophenyl)ethan-1-one (10g, 55mmol) in MeOH (100mL) was added 10% Pd/C (1.0g) at rt. The reaction mixture was stirred at rt for under H_2 atmosphere (1atm) for 16h. The TLC showed reaction to be complete. The reaction mixture was filtered through a celite bed. The celite bed was washed with MeOH (30m). The filtrate was concentrated under reduced pressure. The residue was purified by combiflash chromatography using 40g silica column,

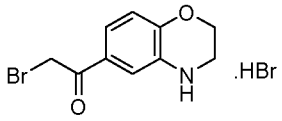
eluting with 10% EtOAc in hexane to afford 1-(3-Amino-4-hydroxyphenyl)ethan-1-one as a brown solid. Yield: 8.1g (97%); MS (ESI-) for CHNOS *m/z* 150.02[M-H]$^+$. ^{1}H NMR (400 MHz, DMSO-d_6): δ 10.1 (bs, 1H), 7.21 (s, 1H), 7.11-7.14 (m, 1H), 6.60 (d, J = 8.1 Hz, 1H), 4.76 (bs, 2H), 2.40 (s, 3H).

1-(3,4-Dihydro-2H-benzo[b][1,4]oxazin-6-yl)ethan-1-one

To a solution of 1-(3-Amino-4-hydroxyphenyl)ethan-1-one (8.0g, 52.6mmol) in DMF (100mL) were added K_2CO_3 (29g, 210mmol) and 1,2-dibromoethane (39.5g, 210mmol) at rt. The reaction mixture was further stirred at 90 °C for 16h. The TLC showed reaction to be complete. The reaction mixture was diluted with cold water (200mL) and extracted with EtOAc (3x100mL). The organic layer was dried (Na_2SO_4), filtered and concentrated under reduced pressure. The residue was purified by combiflash chromatography using 40g silica column, eluting with 50% EtOAc in hexane to afford 1-(3,4-dihydro-2H-benzo[b][1,4]oxazin-6-yl)ethan-1-one as a brown solid. Yield: 4.03g (43%); MS (ESI+) for CHNOS *m/z* 219.19 [M+H]$^+$. ^{1}H NMR (400 MHz, DMSO-d_6): δ 7.15-7.21 (m, 2H), 6.68-6.72 (d, J = 8.12 Hz, 1H), 6.01 (bs, 1H), 4.15-4.21 (m, 2H), 3.25-3.31 (m, 2H), 2.51 (s, 3H).

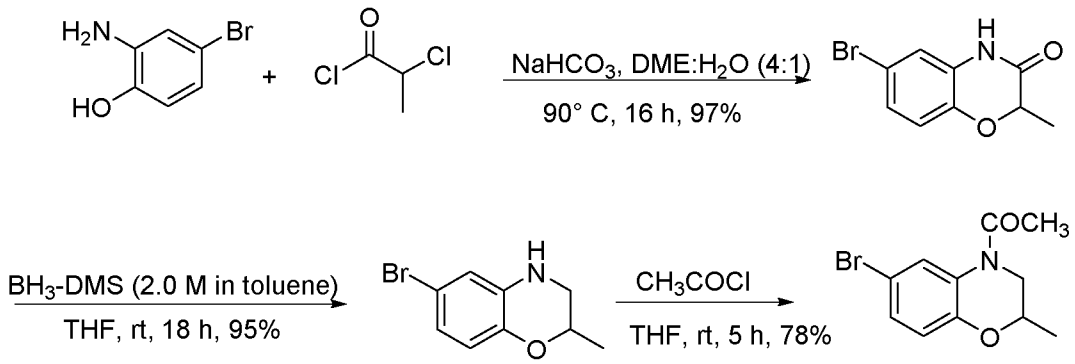
The following intermediates were prepared in a similar manner to 2-bromo-1-(2-methylpyridin-4-yl)ethan-1-one.hydrogen bromide.

Name	Int	Structure	Yield	Spectral Data 1H NMR & LCMS
2-Bromo-1-(2,6-dimethylpyridin-4-yl)ethan-1-one hydrobromide	16		52%	MS (ESI+) for CHNOS *m/z* 327.98 [M+H]$^+$
2-Bromo-1-(2-(methylamino)pyridin-4-yl)ethan-1-one hydrobromide	17		84%	MS (ESI+) for CHNOS *m/z* 229.01[M+H]$^+$; ^{1}H NMR (400 MHz, DMSO-d_6): δ 8.78 (bs, 1H), 8.09 (d, J = 6.4 Hz, 1H), 7.37 (s, 1H),

				7.11 (dd, *J* = 5.24 Hz, 1H), 4.94 (s, 2H), 2.96 (s, 3H)
2-Bromo-1-(3,4-dihydro-2H-benzo[b][1,4]oxazin-6-yl)ethan-1-one. hydrobromide	18		62%	MS (ESI+) for CHNOS *m/z* 256.03[M+H]$^+$; ^{1}H NMR (400 MHz, DMSO-d_6): δ 7.15-7.28 (m, 2H), 7.65 (d, *J* = 8.0 Hz, 1H), 4.73 (s, 2H), 4.31 (bs, 2H), 3.34 (bs, 2H)

Intermediate 19

1-(6-Bromo-2-methyl-2,3-dihydro-4H-benzo[b][1,4]oxazin-4-yl)ethan-1-one



6-Bromo-2-methyl-2H-benzo[*b*][1,4]oxazin-3(4H)-one

To a mixture of 2-amino-4-bromophenol (2.0 g, 10.7mmol), $NaHCO_3$ (2.7 g, 32.1mmol) in DME : H_2O (4:1, 20mL) was added 2-chloropropanoyl chloride (1.3mL, 12.8mmol) at rt. The reaction mixture was stirred at 90°C for 16 h. The TLC showed reaction to be complete. The reaction mixture was diluted with water (50mL) and extracted with EtOAc (3X50mL). The organics were dried (Na_2SO_4), filtered and concentrated under reduced pressure to give 6-bromo-2-methyl-2H-benzo[*b*][1,4]oxazin-3(4H)-one as a brown solid. Yield: 2.5g (97%). ^{1}H NMR (400 MHz, DMSO-d_6): δ 10.74 (bs, 1H), 6.88-7.12 (m, 3H), 4.68 (q, *J* = 6.7 Hz, 1H), 1.41 (d, *J* = 6.7 Hz, 3H). MS (ESI-) for CHNOS *m/z* 239. 93[M-H]$^-$.

6-Bromo-2-methyl-3,4-dihydro-2H-benzo[b][1,4]oxazine

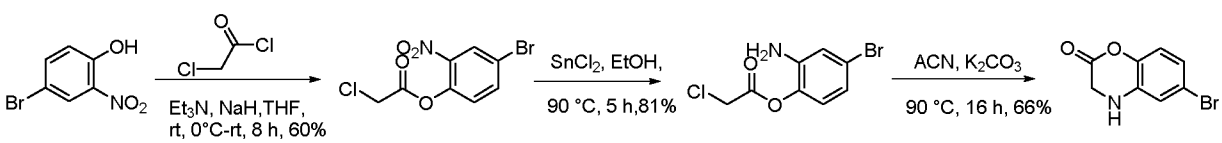
To a solution of 6-bromo-2-methyl-2H-benzo[*b*][1,4]oxazin-3(4H)-one (1.0 g, 4.14mmol) in dry THF (30mL) was added BH_3-DMS (2.0M in toluene, 6.3mL, 12.5mmol) at rt slowly. The reaction mixture was stirred at rt for 18 h. The TLC showed reaction to be complete. The reaction mixture was quenched with cold methanol (10mL) and resulted mixture was evaporated under reduced pressure. The residue was diluted with saturated aq $NaHCO_3$ (20mL) and extracted with EtOAc (3X20mL). The organics were dried (Na_2SO_4), filtered and concentrated under reduced pressure to 6-bromo-2-methyl-3,4-dihydro-2H-benzo[b][1,4]oxazine as a brown solid. Yield: 900 mg (95%).^{1}H NMR (400 MHz, DMSO-d_6): δ 6.50-6.77 (m, 3H), 6.06 (bs, 1H), 4.03-4.06 (m, 1 H), 3.31 (bs, 1H), 2.86- 2.93 (m, 1H), 1.25 (d, J = 6.4 Hz, 3H). MS (ESI+) for CHNOS *m/z* 227.88 $[M+H]^+$.

1-(6-Bromo-2-methyl-2,3-dihydro-4H-benzo[b][1,4]oxazin-4-yl)ethan-1-one

To a solution of 6-bromo-2-methyl-3,4-dihydro-2H-benzo[*b*][1,4]oxazine (800mg, 3.52mmol) in dry THF (20mL) was added acetyl chloride (0.5mL, 7.01mmol) at rt. The reaction mixture was stirred at rt for 5h. The TLC showed reaction to be complete. The reaction mixture was diluted with cold H_2O (20mL) and extracted with EtOAc (3X25mL). The combined organic layer was dried (Na_2SO_4), filtered and concentrated under reduced pressure to give 1-(6-bromo-2-methyl-2,3-dihydro-4H-benzo[b][1,4]oxazin-4-yl)ethan-1-one as a brown solid. Yield: 830mg (78%).^{1}H NMR (400 MHz, DMSO-d_6): δ 8.20 (bs, 1H), 7.10-7.23 (m, 1H), 6.84 (d, J = 8.7 Hz, 1H), 4.29-4.40 (m, 1 H), 4.10 (bs, 1 H), 3.32 (bs, 1H), 2.25 (s, 3H), 1.29 (d, J = 6.1 Hz, 3H). MS (ESI+) for CHNOS *m/z* 269.90 $[M+H]^+$.

Intermediate 20

6-Bromo-3,4-dihydro-2H-benzo[b][1,4]oxazin-2-one



4-Bromo-2-nitrophenyl 2-chloroacetate

To a suspension of NaH (60% dispersion in mineral oil, 1.44g, 36.7mmol) in dry THF (30mL) was added a solution of 4-bromo-2-nitrophenol (4.0g, 18.3mmol) in THF (20mL) dropwise at 0°C. The resulted mixture was stirred at 0 °C for 1h and 2-

chloroacetyl chloride (2.0mL, 25.6mmol) was added to it slowly. The resulted reaction mixture was allowed to warm to rt and stirred further for 7 h. The TLC showed reaction to be complete. The reaction mixture was diluted with cold H_2O (50mL) and extracted with EtOAc (3X50mL). The combined organic layer was dried (Na_2SO_4), filtered and concentrated under reduced pressure. The crude residue was purified by column chromatography using silica gel (100-200 mesh), eluting with 0-10% EtOAc in hexane to afford 4-bromo-2-nitrophenyl 2-chloroacetate as a yellow solid. Yield: 3.2g (60%).^{1}H NMR (400 MHz, DMSO-d_6): δ 8.38 (d, J = 2.3 Hz, 1H), 8.07 (dd, J = 2.3, 8.7 Hz, 1H), 7.52 (d, J = 8.7 Hz, 1H), 4.81 (s, 2H).

2-Amino-4-bromophenyl 2-chloroacetate

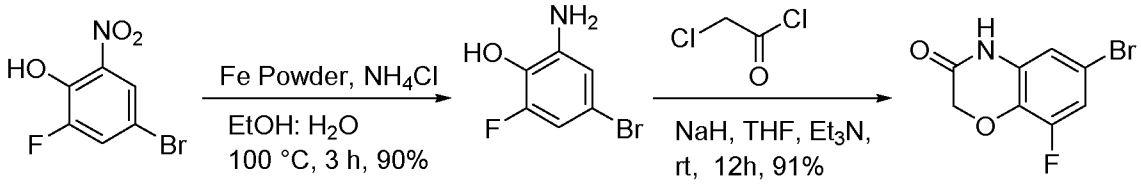
To a solution of 4-bromo-2-nitrophenyl 2-chloroacetate (3.0g, 10.3mmol) in EtOH (40mL) were added conc. HCl (2.5mL) and $SnCl_2$ (9.8g, 51.7mmol) at rt. The resulted mixture was stirred at 90 °C for 5h. The TLC showed reaction to be complete. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure. The residue was neutralized to pH 7 using saturated aq Na_2CO_3 solution and extracted with EtOAc (3X50mL). The organics were dried (Na_2SO_4), filtered and concentrated under reduced pressure. The crude residue was purified by column chromatography using silica gel (100-200 mesh), eluting with 0-20% EtOAc in hexane to afford 2-amino-4-bromophenyl 2-chloroacetate as a brown solid. Yield: 2.2g (81%). MS (ESI+) for CHNOS *m/z* 264.01 $[M+H]^+$.

6-Bromo-3,4-dihydro-2H-benzo[b][1,4]oxazin-2-one

To a solution of 2-amino-4-bromophenyl 2-chloroacetate (1.2g, 4.58mmol) in CH_3CN (15mL) was added K_2CO_3 (3.2g, 22.9mmol) at rt. The resulted mixture was stirred at 90 °C for 16h. THE TLC showed reaction to be complete. The solvent was evaporated under vacuum. The residue was diluted with H_20 (25mL) and extracted with EtOAc (3X25mL). The organics were dried (Na_2SO_4), filtered and concentrated under reduced pressure. The crude residue was purified by column chromatography using silica gel (100-200 mesh), eluting with 0-20% EtOAc in hexane to afford 6-bromo-3,4-dihydro-2H-benzo[*b*][1,4]oxazin-2-one as a brown solid. Yield: 680mg (66%).^{1}H NMR (400 MHz, DMSO-d_6): δ 7.08 (dd, J = 2.1, 8.5 Hz, 1H), 7.02 (d, J = 2.1 Hz, 1H), 6.91 (d, J = 8.5 Hz, 1H), 4.59 (s, 2H). MS (ESI-) for CHNOS *m/z* 226.01 $[M-H]^+$.

Intermediate 21

6-Bromo-8-fluoro-2H-benzo[b][1,4]oxazin-3(4H)-one



2-Amino-4-bromo-6-fluorophenol

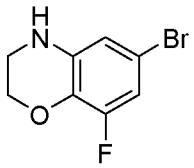
To a solution of 4-bromo-2-fluoro-6-nitrophenol (8.0g, 33.9mmol) in EtOH:H_2O (4:1, 100mL) were added Fe powder (9.1g, 169.4mmol) and $AlCl_3$ (22.5g, 169.4mmol) at rt. The reaction mixture was stirred and refluxed for 3h. The TLC showed reaction to be complete. The reaction mixture was filtered through a celite bed. The celite bed was further washed with EtOH (50mL). The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure. The residue was diluted with H_20 (50mL) and extracted with EtOAc (3X50mL). The combined organic layer was dried (Na_2SO_4), filtered and concentrated under reduced pressure. The crude residue was purified by column chromatography using silica gel (100-200 mesh), eluting with 0-5% EtOAc in hexane to afford 2-amino-4-bromo-6-fluorophenol as a brown solid. Yield: 6.2g (90%). MS (ESI-) for CHNOS *m/z* 203.89 $[M-H]^+$.

6-Bromo-8-fluoro-3,4-dihydro-2H-benzo[b][1,4]oxazine

To a solution of 2-amino-4-bromo-6-fluorophenol (5.0g, 24.4mmol) in dry THF (50mL) were added Et_3N (5.1mL, 36.6mmol) and 2-chloroacetyl chloride (2.1mL, 26.4mmol) at 0 °C. The reaction mixture was allowed to warm to rt and stirred for 2h. After 2h reaction mixture was again cooled to 0 °C and NaH (60% dispersion in mineral oil, 2.43g, 6.10mmol) was added portion wise. The reaction mixture was further stirred at rt for 12h. The TLC showed reaction to be complete. The reaction mixture was diluted with cold H_20 (50mL) and extracted with EtOAc (3X50mL). The combined organic layer was dried (Na_2SO_4), filtered and concentrated under reduced pressure. The residue was triturated with Et_2O (50mL) to afford 6-bromo-8-fluoro-3,4-dihydro-2H-benzo[b][1,4]oxazine as a brown solid. Yield: 5.3g (91%).^{1}H

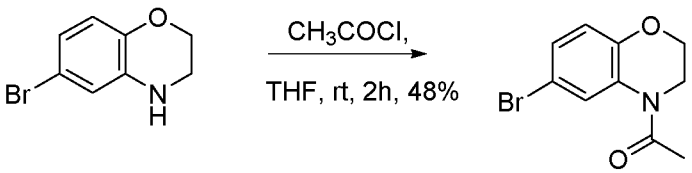
NMR (400 MHz, DMSO-d_6): δ 11.01 (bs, 1H), 7.18-7.29 (m, 1H), 6.88 (s, 1H), 4.68 (s, 2H) MS (ESI-) for CHNOS *m/z* 243.98 $[M-H]^+$.

The following intermediate was prepared in a similar manner to 1-(6-bromo-2-methyl-2,3-dihydro-4H-benzo[b][1,4]oxazin-4-yl)ethan-1-one.

Name	Int	Structure	Yield	Spectral Data 1H NMR & LCMS
6-Bromo-8-fluoro-3,4-dihydro-2H-benzo[b][1,4]oxazine	22		26%	MS (ESI-) for CHNOS *m/z* 230.10 $[M-H]^+$; ^{1}H NMR (400 MHz, DMSO-d_6): δ 6.49-6.63 (m, 2H), 6.38 (bs, 1H), 4.13 (t, *J* = 4.4 Hz, 2H), 3.30 (bs, 2H)

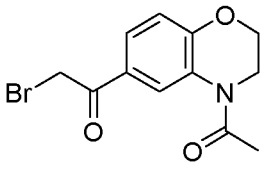
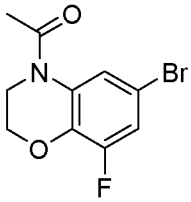
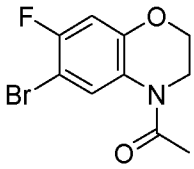
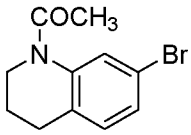
Intermediate 23

1-(6-Bromo-2,3-dihydro-4H-benzo[b][1,4]oxazin-4-yl)ethan-1-one



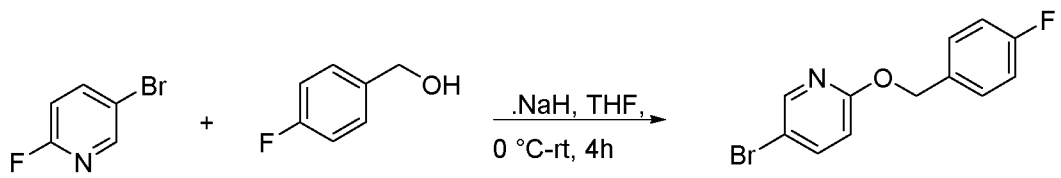
To a solution of 6-bromo-3,4-dihydro-2H-benzo[b][1,4]oxazine (600mg, 2.8mmol) in THF (10mL) was added acetyl chloride (330mg, 4.2mmol) slowly at rt. The reaction mixture was stirred at rt for 2h. The TLC showed the reaction to be complete. The reaction mixture was quenched with saturated aq solution of $NaHCO_3$ (10mL) and extracted with EtOAc (3x10mL). The organic layer was dried (Na_2SO_4), filtered and concentrated under reduced pressure to afford 1-(6-bromo-2,3-dihydro-4H-benzo[*b*][1,4]oxazin-4-yl)ethan-1-oneas a yellow solid. Yield: 350mg (48%); ^{1}H NMR (400 MHz, DMSO-d_6): δ 8.21 (bs, 1H), 7.18 (d, *J* = 8.5 Hz, 1H), 6.85 (d, *J* = 8.5 Hz, 1H), 4.25-4.27 (m, 2H), 3.82-3.85 (m, 2H), 2.25 (s, 3H).

The following intermediates were prepared in a similar manner to 1-(6-bromo-2-methyl-2,3-dihydro-4H-benzo[b][1,4]oxazin-4-yl)ethan-1-one.

Name	Int	Structure	Yield	Spectral Data 1H NMR & LCMS
1-(4-Acetyl-3,4-dihydro-2H-benzo[b][1,4]oxazin-6-yl)-2-bromoethan-1-one	24		63%	MS (ESI+) for CHNOS *m/z* 298.04 $[M+H]^+$
1-(6-Bromo-8-fluoro-2,3-dihydro-4H-benzo[b][1,4]oxazin-4-yl)ethan-1-one	25		68%	^{1}H NMR (400 MHz, DMSO-d_6): δ 8.01 (bs, 1H), 7.29-7.34 (m, 1H), 4.34 (t, J = 4.5 Hz, 2H), 3.66 (t, J = 4.5 Hz, 2H), 2.26 (s, 3H)
1-(6-Bromo-7-fluoro-2,3-dihydro-4H-benzo[b][1,4]oxazin-4-yl)ethan-1-one	26		65%	MS (ESI+) for CHNOS *m/z* 273.98 $[M+H]^+$
1-(7-Bromo-3,4-dihydroquinolin-1(2H)-yl)ethan-1-one	27		69%	MS (ESI+) for CHNOS *m/z* 254.16 M+H]$^+$

Intermediate 28

5-Bromo-2-((4-fluorobenzyl)oxy)pyridine

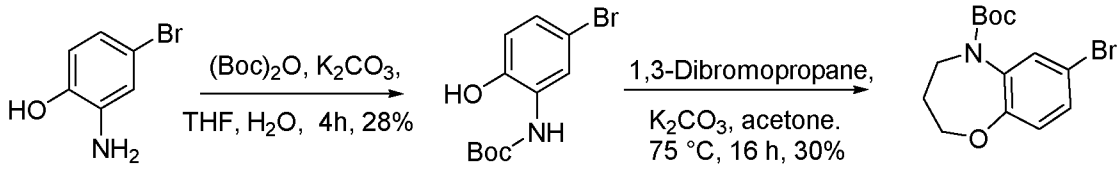


To a solution of (4-fluorophenyl)methanol (1g, 5.08mmol) in THF (10mL) was added NaH (60% in mineral oil, 455mg, 11.36mmol) at 0°C slowly. The reaction mixture was stirred at 0°C for 30 min and 5-bromo-2-fluoropyridine (1.1g, 8.52mmol) was

added slowly at 0°C. The reaction mixture was further stirred at 80°C for 3 h. The TLC showed the reaction to be complete. The reaction mixture was quenched with saturated aq NH_4Cl (25mL) and extracted with EtOAc (3x25mL). The organics were dried (Na_2SO_4), filtered and concentrated under reduced pressure to afford 5-bromo-2-((4-fluorobenzyl)oxy)pyridine as a yellow solid. Yield: 1.5g (crude). MS (ESI+) for CHNOS *m/z* 281.90 $[M+H]^+$.

Intermediate 29

***tert*-Butyl 7-bromo-3,4-dihydrobenzo[b][1,4]oxazepine-5(2H)-carboxylate**



***tert*-Butyl (5-bromo-2-hydroxyphenyl)carbamate**

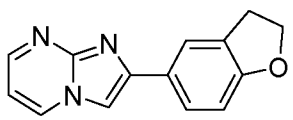
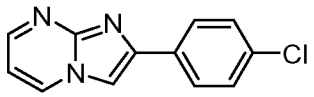
To a stirred solution of 2-amino-4-bromophenol (5.0g, 26.6mmol) in THF:H20 (1:1, 100mL) were added K_2CO_3 (18.3 g, 133mmol) followed by di-tert-butyl dicarbonate (15.1 g, 69.14mmol). The reaction mixture was stirred at rt for 4h. The TLC showed reaction to be complete. The reaction mixture was extracted with EtOAc (3X50mL). The organics were dried (Na2SO4), filtered and concentrated under reduced pressure. The crude was diluted with methanol (10mL) and 1.0 M aq. NaOH (20mL) and H20 (20mL) The resulted reaction mixture was stirred for 30 min at rt and MeOH was removed under reduced pressure. The residue was neutralized to pH 7 by using 1.0 N HCl and extracted with DCM (3X50mL). The organics were dried (Na_2SO_4), filtered and concentrated under reduced pressure. The crude residue was purified by column chromatography using silica gel (100-200 mesh), eluting with 0-5% EtOAc in hexane to afford tert-butyl (5-bromo-2-hydroxyphenyl)carbamate as a brown solid. Yield: 2.1 g (28%). MS (ESI+) for CHNO m/z 187.92 $[M-100+H]^+$.

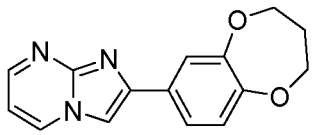
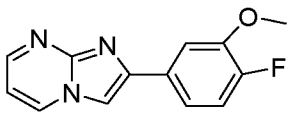
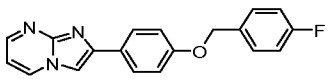
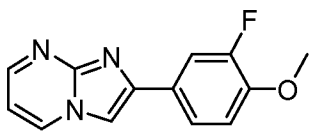
***tert*-Butyl 7-bromo-3,4-dihydrobenzo[b][1,4]oxazepine-5(2H)-carboxylate**

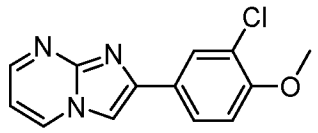
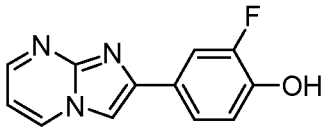
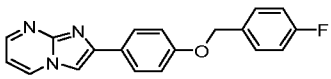
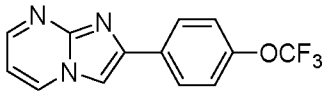
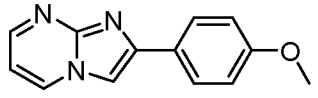
To a stirred solution of *tert*-butyl (5-bromo-2-hydroxyphenyl)carbamate (1.85g, 6.42mmol) in acetone (50mL) were added K_2CO_3 (7.0 g, 51.36 mmol) and 1,3-dibromopropane (3.9 g, 19.26 mmol) at rt. The reaction mixture was stirred at 75 °C

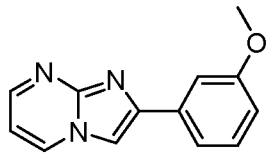
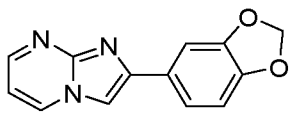
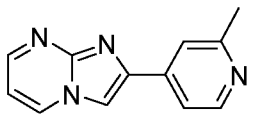
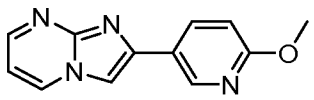
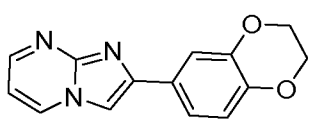
for 16h. The TLC showed reaction to be complete. The reaction mixture was filtered through celite bed. The celite bed was washed with acetone (20mL). The filtrate was concentrated under reduced pressure. The residue was diluted with H_20 (20mL) and extracted with EtOAc (3X20mL). The organics were dried (Na_2SO_4), filtered and concentrated under reduced pressure. The crude residue was purified by column chromatography using silica gel (100-200 mesh), eluting with 0-5% EtOAc in hexane to afford *tert*-butyl 7-bromo-3,4-dihydrobenzo[b][1,4]oxazepine-5(2H)-carboxylate as a white solid. Yield: 620mg (30%). MS (ESI+) for CHNO *m/z* 328.17 $[M+H]^+$.

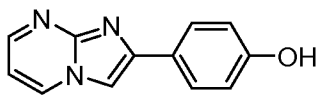
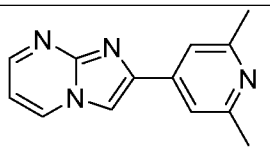
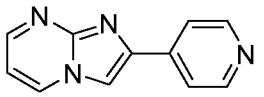
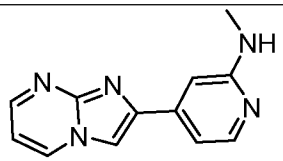
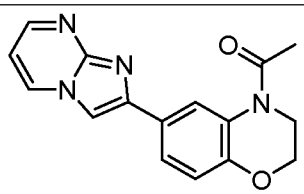
The following intermediates were prepared in a similar manner to 2-(3,4-dimethoxyphenyl)imidazo[1,2-a]pyrimidine.

Name	Int	Structure	Yield	Spectral Data 1H NMR & LCMS
2-(2,3-Dihydrobenzofuran-5-yl)imidazo[1,2-a]pyrimidine	30		72%	MS (ESI+) for CHNOS *m/z* 238.08 $[M+H]^+$;^{1}H NMR (400 MHz, DMSO-d_6): δ 9.24 (d, *J* = 6.0Hz, 1H), 8.92 (s, 1H), 8.57 (s, 1H), 7.98 (s, 1H), 7.76 (d, *J* = 8.5 Hz, 1H), 7.55-7.60 (m, 1H), 6.90-7.01 (m, 1H), 4.64 (t, *J* = 8.8 Hz, 2H), 3.27 (t, *J* = 8.8 Hz, 2H)
2-(4-Chlorophenyl)imidazo[1,2-a]pyrimidine	31		29%	MS (ESI+) for CHNOS *m/z* 230.11 $[M+H]^+$; LC purity 99.7% (Ret. Time- 4.27 min); ^{1}H NMR (400 MHz, DMSO-d_6): δ 8.97 (dd, *J* = 1.9, 6.7Hz, 1H), 8.56 (dd, *J* =1.9 , 4.0Hz, 1H), 8.43 (s, 1H), 8.03 (d, *J* = 8.6 Hz, 2H), 7.52 (d, *J* = 8.6

				Hz, 2H), 7.08 (dd, *J* = 4.0, 6.7Hz, 1H)
2-(3,4-Dihydro-2H-benzo[b][1,4]dioxepin-7-yl)imidazo[1,2-a]pyrimidine	32		46%	MS (ESI+) for CHNOS *m/z* 268.16 $[M+H]^+$
2-(4-Fluoro-3-methoxyphenyl)imidazo[1,2-a]pyrimidine	33		57%	MS (ESI+) for CHNOS *m/z* 244.11 $[M+H]^+$; 1H NMR (400 MHz, DMSO-d_6): δ 9.11 (d, *J* = 5.9 Hz, 1H), 8.74 (s, 1H), 8.57 (s, 1H), 7.79 (d, *J* = 7.1 Hz, 1H), 7.55-7.65 (m, 1H), 7.25-7.41 (m, 2H), 3.96 (s, 3H).
2-(4-((4-Fluorobenzyl)oxy)phenyl)imidazo[1,2-a]pyrimidine	34		33%	MS (ESI+) for CHNOS *m/z* 320.22 $[M+H]^+$; 1H NMR (400 MHz, DMSO-d_6): δ 9.21 (d, *J* = 6.4 Hz, 1H), 8.91 (d, *J* = 2.8 Hz, 1H) 8.58 (s, 1H), 7.95 (d, *J* = 8.5 Hz, 2H), 7.50-7.61 (m, 3H), 7.15-7.30 (m, 4H), 5.19 (s, 2H)
2-(3-Fluoro-4-methoxyphenyl)imidazo[1,2-a]pyrimidine	35		29%	MS (ESI+) for CHNOS *m/z* 244.15$[M+H]^+$; ^{1}H NMR (400 MHz, DMSO-d_6): δ 8.94 (d, *J* = 4.8 Hz, 1H), 8.51 (d, *J* = 2.0 Hz, 1H), 8.34 (s, 1H), 7.73-7.87 (m, 2H), 7.19-7.31 (m, 1H), 7.02-7.07 (m, 1H), 3.89 (m, 3H)

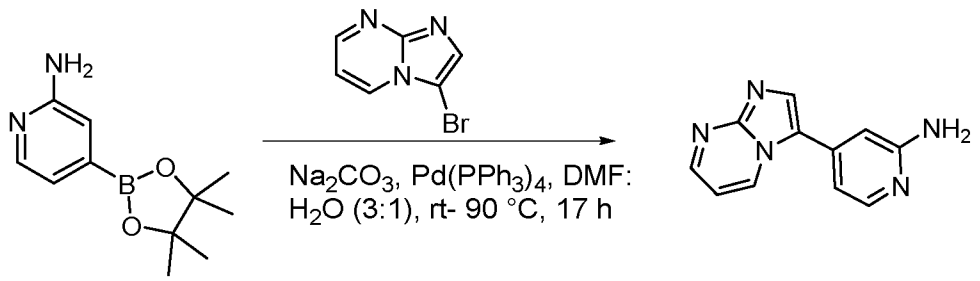
2-(3-chloro-4-methoxyphenyl)imidazo[1,2-a]pyrimidine	36		80%	MS (ESI+) for CHNOS *m/z* 260.05 $[M+H]^+$
2-Fluoro-4-(imidazo[1,2-a]pyrimidin-2-yl)phenol	37		54%	MS (ESI+) for CHNOS *m/z* 230.05$[M+H]^+$; ^{1}H NMR (400 MHz, DMSO-d_6): δ 10.33 (bs, 1H), 9.09 (d, J = 6.2 Hz, 1H), 8.72 (s, 1H), 8.43 (s, 1H), 7.50-7.90 (m, 2H), 7.20 (bs, 1H), 6.92-7.20 (m, 1H)
2-(4-((4-Fluorobenzyl)oxy)phenyl)imidazo[1,2-a]pyrimidine	38		52%	MS (ESI+) for CHNOS *m/z* 320.07$[M+H]^+$; ^{1}H NMR (400 MHz, DMSO-d_6): δ 8.98 (d, J = 5.3Hz, 1H), 8.55 (d, J = 2.1 Hz, 1H), 8.32 (s, 1H), 7.94 (d, J = 8.6 Hz, 2H), 7.50-7.60 (m, 2H), 7.07-7.29 (m, 5H), 5.15 (s, 2H)
2-(4-(Trifluoromethoxy)phenyl)imidazo[1,2-a]pyrimidine	39		78%	MS (ESI+) for CHNOS *m/z* 280.15$[M+H]^+$
2-(4-Methoxyphenyl)imidazo[1,2-a]pyrimidine	40		96%	MS (ESI+) for CHNOS *m/z* 226.12$[M+H]^+$; ^{1}H NMR (400 MHz, DMSO-d_6): δ 9.28 (d, J = 6.5 Hz, 1H), 8.97 (bs, 1H), 8.66 (s, 1H), 7.96 (d, J = 8.5 Hz, 2H), 7.58-7.63 (m, 1H), 6.93 (d, J = 8.5 Hz, 2H),3.85 (s, 3H)

2-(3-Methoxyphenyl)imidazo[1,2-a]pyrimidine	41		51%	MS (ESI+) for CHNOS *m/z* 226.06 $[M+H]^+$; LC purity 98.3% (Ret. Time- 4.3 min) ^1H NMR (400 MHz, DMSO-d_6), 9.20 (d, *J* = 6.8 Hz, 1H), 8.88 (d, *J* = 2.9 Hz, 1H), 8.69 (s, 1H), 7.56-7.62 (m, 2H), 7.45-7.50 (m, 2H), 7.07 (d, *J* = 7.5 Hz, 1H), 3.86 (s, 3H)
2-(Benzo[d][1,3]dioxol-5-yl)imidazo[1,2-a]pyrimidine	42		48%	MS (ESI+) for CHNOS *m/z* 240.06 $[M+H]^+$
2-(2-Methylpyridin-4-yl)imidazo[1,2-a]pyrimidine	43		58%	(MS (ESI+) for CHNOS *m/z* 211.17 $[M+H]^+$
2-(6-Methoxypyridin-3-yl)imidazo[1,2-a]pyrimidine	44		4%	MS (ESI+) for CHNOS *m/z* 227.06 $[M+H]^+$; ^1H NMR (400 MHz, DMSO-d_6): δ 8.97 (d, *J* = 6.5 Hz, 1H), 8.81 (s, 1H), 8.53 (bs, 1H), 8.36 (s, 1H), 8.27 (d, *J* = 8.7 Hz, 1H), 7.01-7.08 (m, 1H), 6.87-6.96 (s, 1H), 3.85 (s, 3H)
2-(2,3-Dihydrobenzo[b][1,4]dioxin-6-yl)imidazo[1,2-a]pyrimidine	45		6%	MS (ESI+) for CHNOS *m/z* 254.12 M+H]$^+$; ^1H NMR (400 MHz, DMSO-d_6): δ 8.91 (d, *J* = 6.2Hz, 1H), 8.49 (s, 1H), 8.26 (s, 1H), 7.37-7.58 (m, 2H),6.83-7.09 (m,2H), 4.29 (s,

				4H)
4-(Imidazo[1,2-a]pyrimidin-2-yl)phenol	46		88%	MS (ESI+) for CHNOS *m/z* 212.00 $[M+H]^+$
2-(2,6-Dimethylpyridin-4-yl)imidazo[1,2-a]pyrimidine	47		30%	MS (ESI+) for CHNO *m/z* 225.12 $[M+H]^+$
2-(Pyridin-4-yl)imidazo[1,2-a]pyrimidine	48		43%	MS (ESI+) for CHNO *m/z* 197.13 $[M+H]^+$
4-(Imidazo[1,2-a]pyrimidin-2-yl)-*N*-methylpyridin-2-amine	49		36%	MS (ESI+) for CHNO *m/z* 226.08 $[M+H]^+$
1-(6-(Imidazo[1,2-a]pyrimidin-2-yl)-2,3-dihydro-4H-benzo[b][1,4]oxazin-4-yl)ethan-1-one	50		crude	MS (ESI+) for CHNOS *m/z* 295.11$[M+H]^+$

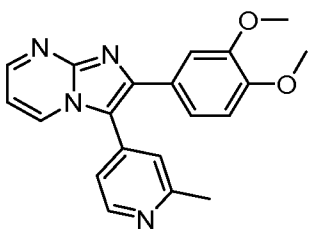
Intermediate 51

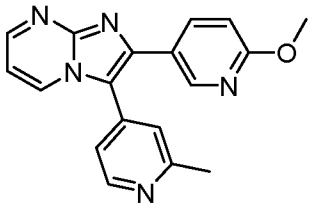
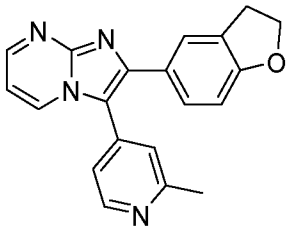
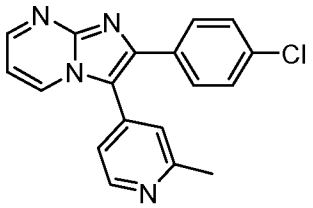
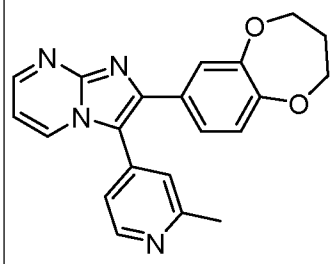
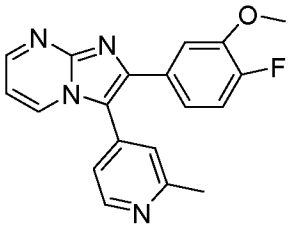
4-(Imidazo[1,2-*a*]pyrimidin-3-yl)pyridin-2-amine

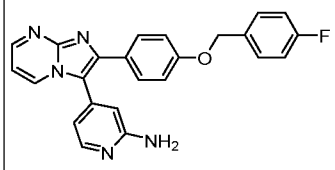
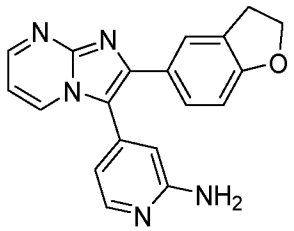
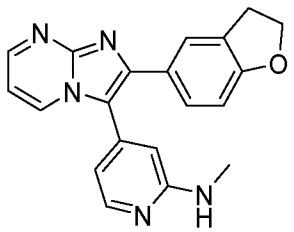
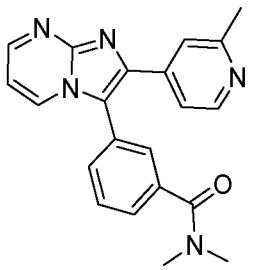


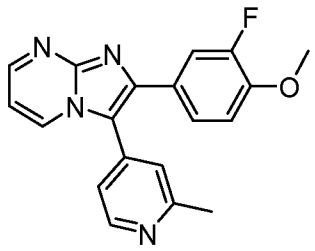
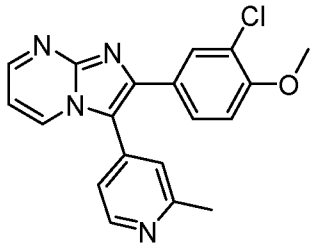
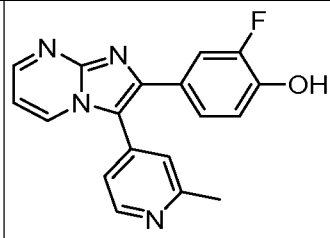
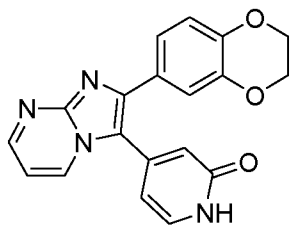
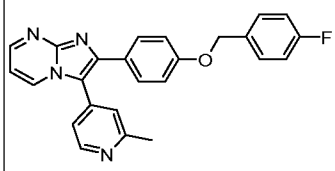
A mixture of 4-(4,4,5,5-tetramethyl-1,3,2-dioxaborolan-2-yl)pyridin-2-amine (1.0g, 4.54mmol), 3-bromoimidazo[1,2-a]pyrimidine (899mg, 4.54mmol) and Na_2CO_3 (963mg, 9.09mmol) in DMF:H_2O (3: 1, 20mL) was degassed with N_2 for 15 min at rt. $Pd(PPh_3)_4$ (525mg, 0.45mmol) was added to this degassed mixture at rt. The reaction mixture was again purged with N_2 for 5 min. The reaction vessel was sealed and stirred at 90 °C for 16h. The TLC showed reaction to be complete. The reaction mixture was allowed to cool to rt and concentrated under reduced pressure. The crude residue was triturated with MeOH (25mL) and the precipitated solid was filtered through the sintered funnel. The filtrate was concentrated under reduced pressure. The residue was purified by combiflash chromatography using 12g silica column, eluting with 10% MeOH in DCM to afford 4-(imidazo[1,2-a]pyrimidin-3-yl)pyridin-2-amine as a brown solid. Yield: 500mg (51%); MS (ESI+) for CHNOS *m/z* 212.0$[M+H]^+$; ^1H NMR (400 MHz, DMSO-d_6): δ 8.96-9.05 (m, 1H), 8.55-8.61 (m, 1H), 8.40 (s, 1H), 7.94-8.01 (m, 1H), 6.98-7.15 (m, 3H), 6.05-6.15 (bs, 2H).

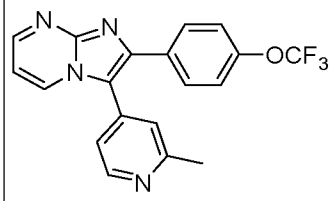
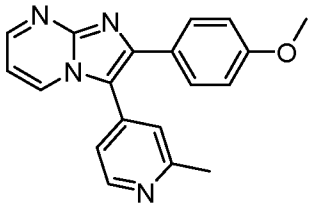
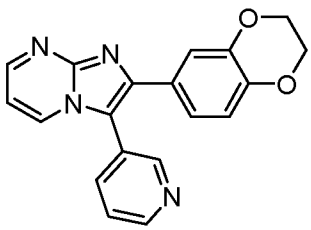
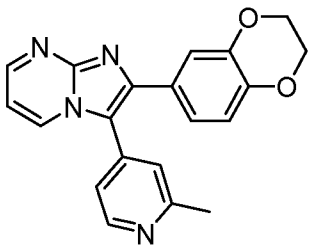
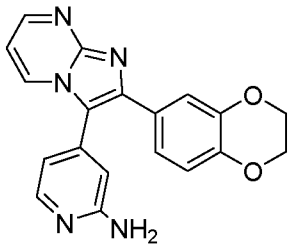
The following intermediates were prepared in a similar manner to 2-(3,4-dimethoxyphenyl)-3-(2-methylpyridin-4-yl)imidazo[1,2-a]pyrimidine.

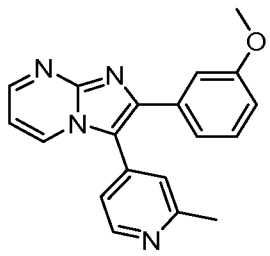
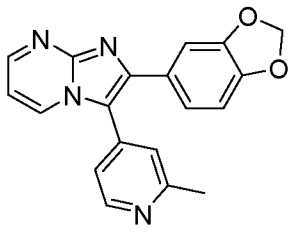
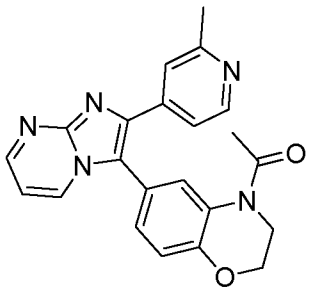
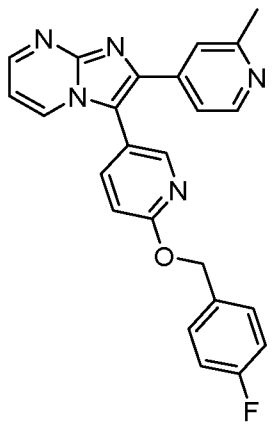
Name	Int	Structure	Yield	Spectral Data 1H NMR & LCMS
2-(3,4-Dimethoxyphenyl)-3-(2-methylpyridin-4-yl)imidazo[1,2-	52		45%	MS (ESI+) for CHNOS *m/z* 347.17 $[M+H]^+$

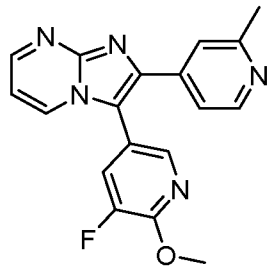
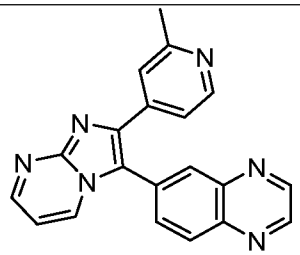
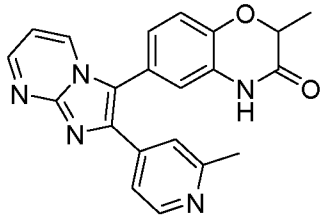
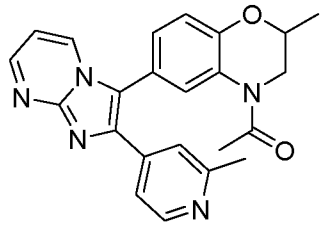
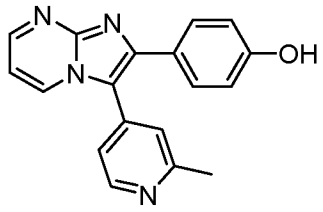
a]pyrimidine				
2-(6-Methoxypyridin-3-yl)-3-(2-methylpyridin-4-yl)imidazo[1,2-a]pyrimidine	53		34%	MS (ESI+) for CHNOS *m/z* 318.08 $[M+H]^+$
2-(2,3-Dihydrobenzofuran-5-yl)-3-(2-methylpyridin-4-yl)imidazo[1,2-a]pyrimidine	54		53%	MS (ESI+) for CHNOS *m/z* 329.10 $[M+H]^+$
2-(4-Chlorophenyl)-3-(2-methylpyridin-4-yl)imidazo[1,2-a]pyrimidine	55		92%	MS (ESI+) for CHNOS *m/z* 321.03 $[M+H]^+$
2-(3,4-Dihydro-2H-benzo[b][1,4]dioxepin-7-yl)-3-(2-methylpyridin-4-yl)imidazo[1,2-a]pyrimidine	56		51%	MS (ESI+) for CHNOS *m/z* 359.17 $[M+H]^+$
2-(4-Fluoro-3-methoxyphenyl)-3-(2-methylpyridin-4-yl)imidazo[1,2-	57		43%	MS (ESI+) for CHNOS *m/z* 335.23 $[M+H]^+$

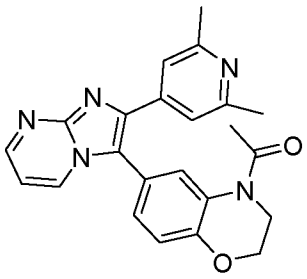
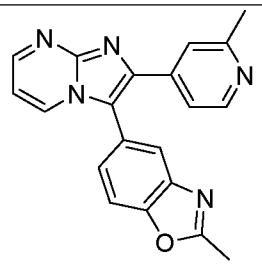
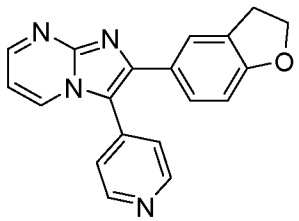
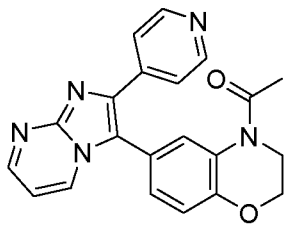
a]pyrimidine				
4-(2-(4-((4-Fluorobenzyl)oxy)phenyl)imidazo[1,2-a]pyrimidin-3-yl)pyridin-2-amine	58		61%	MS (ESI+) for CHNOS *m/z* 412.08 $[M+H]^+$
4-(2-(2,3-Dihydrobenzofuran-5-yl)imidazo[1,2-a]pyrimidin-3-yl)pyridin-2-amine	59		20%	MS (ESI+) for CHNOS *m/z* 330.10 $[M+H]^+$
4-(2-(2,3-Dihydrobenzofuran-5-yl)imidazo[1,2-a]pyrimidin-3-yl)-*N*-methylpyridin-2-amine	60		39%	MS (ESI+) for CHNOS *m/z* 344.12 $[M+H]^+$
N,*N*-Dimethyl-3-(2-(2-methylpyridin-4-yl)imidazo[1,2-a]pyrimidin-3-yl)benzamide	61		24%	MS (ESI+) for CHNOS *m/z* 358.09 $[M+H]^+$

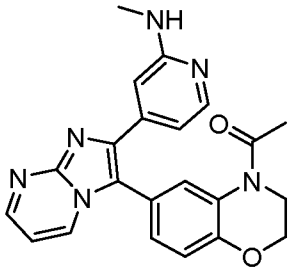
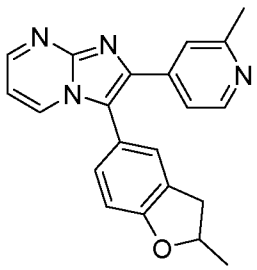
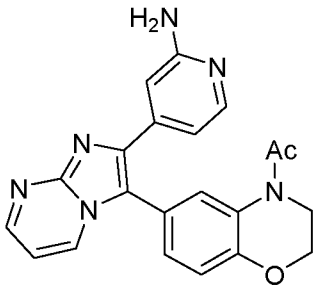
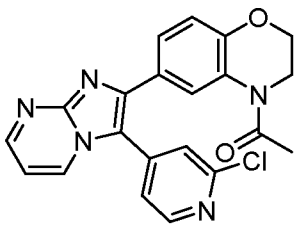
2-(3-Fluoro-4-methoxyphenyl)-3-(2-methylpyridin-4-yl)imidazo[1,2-a]pyrimidine	62		53%	MS (ESI+) for CHNOS *m/z* 335.11 $[M+H]^+$
2-(3-Chloro-4-methoxyphenyl)-3-(2-methylpyridin-4-yl)imidazo[1,2-a]pyrimidine	63		62%	MS (ESI+) for CHNOS *m/z* 351.25 $[M+H]^+$
2-Fluoro-4-(3-(2-methylpyridin-4-yl)imidazo[1,2-a]pyrimidin-2-yl)phenol	64		42%	MS (ESI+) for CHNOS *m/z* 321.04 $[M+H]^+$
4-(2-(2,3-Dihydrobenzo[b][1,4]dioxin-6-yl)imidazo[1,2-a]pyrimidin-3-yl)pyridin-2(1H)-one	65		44%	MS (ESI+) for CHNOS *m/z* 347.26 $[M+H]^+$
2-(4-((4-Fluorobenzyl)oxy)phenyl)-3-(2-methylpyridin-4-yl)imidazo[1,2-a]pyrimidine	66		31%	MS (ESI+) for CHNOS *m/z* 411.26 $[M+H]^+$

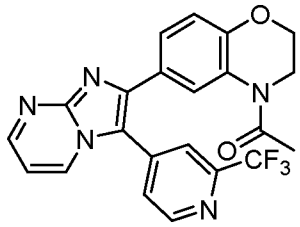
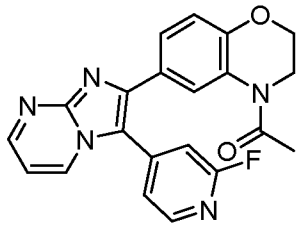
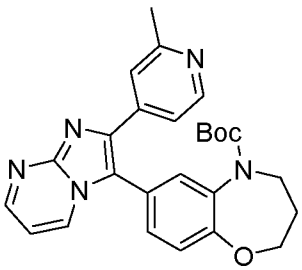
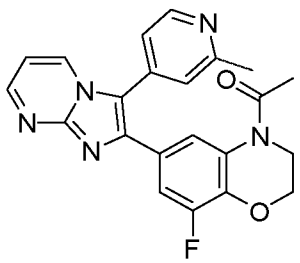
3-(2-Methylpyridin-4-yl)-2-(4-(trifluoromethoxy)phenyl)imidazo[1,2-a]pyrimidine	67		31%	MS (ESI+) for CHNOS *m/z* 371.23 $[M+H]^+$
2-(4-Methoxyphenyl)-3-(2-methylpyridin-4-yl)imidazo[1,2-a]pyrimidine	68		Crude	MS (ESI+) for CHNOS *m/z* 317.27 $[M+H]^+$
2-(2,3-Dihydrobenzo[b][1,4]dioxin-6-yl)-3-(pyridin-3-yl)imidazo[1,2-a]pyrimidine	69		Crude	MS (ESI+) for CHNOS *m/z* 331.21 $[M+H]^+$
2-(2,3-Dihydrobenzo[b][1,4]dioxin-6-yl)-3-(2-methylpyridin-4-yl)imidazo[1,2-a]pyrimidine	70		Crude	MS (ESI+) for CHNOS *m/z* 345.12 $[M+H]^+$
4-(2-(2,3-Dihydrobenzo[b][1,4]dioxin-6-yl)imidazo[1,2-a]pyrimidin-3-yl)pyridin-2-amine	71		Crude	(MS (ESI+) for CHNOS *m/z* 346.11 $[M+H]^+$

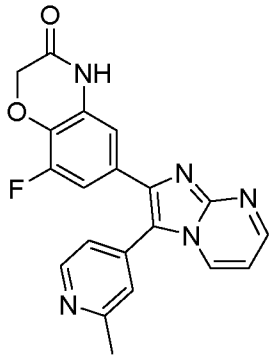
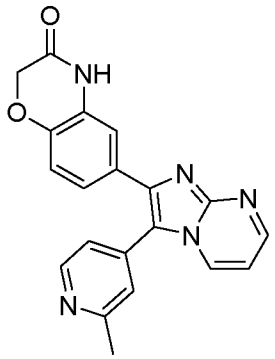
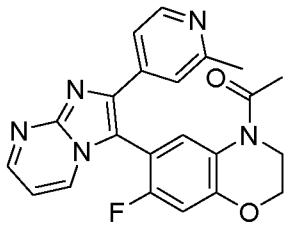
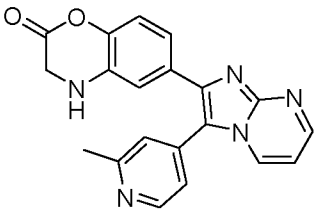
2-(3-Methoxyphenyl)-3-(2-methylpyridin-4-yl)imidazo[1,2-a]pyrimidine	72		71%	Peak 1, MS (ESI+) for CHNOS *m/z* 317.10 $[M+H]^+$
2-(Benzo[d][1,3]dioxol-5-yl)-3-(2-methylpyridin-4-yl)imidazo[1,2-a]pyrimidine	73		Crude	MS (ESI+) for CHNOS *m/z* 331.27 $[M+H]^+$
1-(6-(2-(2-Methylpyridin-4-yl)imidazo[1,2-a]pyrimidin-3-yl)-2,3-dihydro-4H-benzo[b][1,4]oxazin-4-yl)ethan-1-one	74		46%	MS (ESI+) for CHNOS *m/z* 386.47 $[M+H]^+$
3-(6-((4-Fluorobenzyl)oxy)pyridin-3-yl)-2-(2-methylpyridin-4-yl)imidazo[1,2-a]pyrimidine	75		Crude	MS (ESI+) for CHNOS *m/z* 412.18 $[M+H]^+$

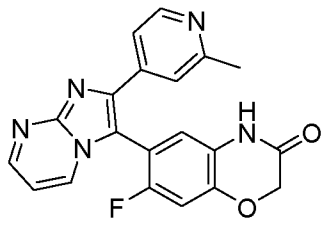
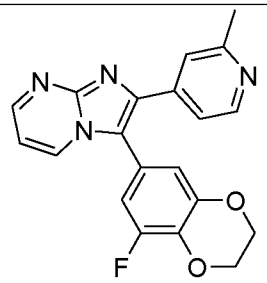
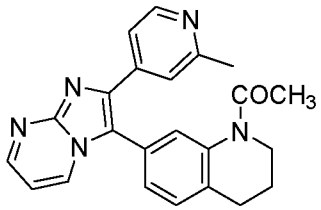
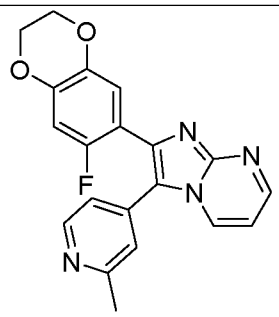
3-(5-Fluoro-6-methoxypyridin-3-yl)-2-(2-methylpyridin-4-yl)imidazo[1,2-a]pyrimidine	76		Crude	MS (ESI+) for CHNOS *m/z* 336.2 $[M+H]^+$
6-(2-(2-Methylpyridin-4-yl)imidazo[1,2-a]pyrimidin-3-yl)quinoxaline	77		Crude	MS (ESI+) for CHNOS *m/z* 339.09 $[M+H]^+$
2-Methyl-6-(2-(2-methylpyridin-4-yl)imidazo[1,2-a]pyrimidin-3-yl)-2H-benzo[b][1,4]oxazin-3(4H)-one Intermediate for	78		Crude	MS (ESI+) for CHNOS *m/z* 372.08 $[M+H]^+$
1-(2-Methyl-6-(2-(2-methylpyridin-4-yl)imidazo[1,2-a]pyrimidin-3-yl)-2,3-dihydro-4H-benzo[b][1,4]oxazin-4-yl)ethan-1-one	79		Crude	MS (ESI+) for CHNOS *m/z* 400.2 $[M+H]^+$
4-(3-(2-Methylpyridin-4-yl)imidazo[1,2-a]pyrimidin-2-yl)phenol	80		Crude	MS (ESI+) for CHNOS *m/z* 303.01 $[M+H]^+$

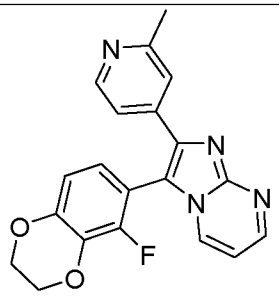
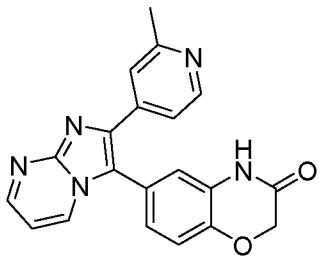
1-(6-(2-(2,6-Dimethylpyridin-4-yl)imidazo[1,2-a]pyrimidin-3-yl)-2,3-dihydro-4H-benzo[b][1,4]oxazin-4-yl)ethan-1-one	81		Crude	MS (ESI+) for CHNO *m/z* 400.34 $[M+H]^+$
2-Methyl-5-(2-(2-methylpyridin-4-yl)imidazo[1,2-a]pyrimidin-3-yl)benzo[d]oxazole	82		Crude	MS (ESI+) for CHNOS *m/z* 341.96 $[M+H]^+$
2-(2,3-Dihydrobenzofuran-5-yl)-3-(pyridin-4-yl)imidazo[1,2-a]pyrimidine	83		Crude	MS (ESI+) for CHNOS *m/z* 314.96 $[M+H]^+$
1-(6-(2-(Pyridin-4-yl)imidazo[1,2-a]pyrimidin-3-yl)-2,3-dihydro-4H-benzo[b][1,4]oxazin-4-yl	84		Crude	MS (ESI+) for CHNO *m/z* 371.98 $[M+H]^+$

1-(6-(2-(2-(Methylamino)pyridin-4-yl)imidazo[1,2-a]pyrimidin-3-yl)-2,3-dihydro-4H-benzo[b][1,4]oxazin-4-yl)ethan-1-one	85		Crude	MS (ESI+) for CHNOS *m/z* 401.19 $[M+H]^+$
3-(2-Methyl-2,3,3a,7a-tetrahydrobenzofuran-5-yl)-2-(2-methylpyridin-4-yl)imidazo[1,2-a]pyrimidine	86		Crude	MS (ESI-) for CHNOS *m/z* 343.14 $[M-H]^+$
1-(6-(2-(2-Aminopyridin-4-yl)imidazo[1,2-a]pyrimidin-3-yl)-2,3-dihydro-4H-benzo[b][1,4]oxazin-4-yl)ethan-1-one	87		Crude	MS (ESI+) for CHNOS *m/z* 387.22 $[M+H]^+$
1-(6-(3-(2-Chloropyridin-4-yl)imidazo[1,2-a]pyrimidin-2-yl)-2,3-dihydro-4H-benzo[b][1,4]oxazin-4-yl)ethan-1-one	88		Crude	MS (ESI+) for CHNOS *m/z* 406.16$[M+H]^+$

1-(6-(3-(2-(triFluoromethyl)pyridin-4-yl)imidazo[1,2-a]pyrimidin-2-yl)-2,3-dihydro-4H-benzo[b][1,4]oxazin-4-yl)ethan-1-one	89		Crude	MS (ESI+) for CHNOS *m/z* 440.18$[M+H]^+$
1-(6-(3-(2-Fluoropyridin-4-yl)imidazo[1,2-a]pyrimidin-2-yl)-2,3-dihydro-4H-benzo[b][1,4]oxazin-4-yl)ethan-1-one	90		Crude	MS (ESI+) for CHNOS *m/z* 390.12$[M+H]^+$
tert-Butyl 7-(2-(2-methylpyridin-4-yl)imidazo[1,2-a]pyrimidin-3-yl)-3,4-dihydrobenzo[b][1,4]oxazepine-5(2H)-carboxylate	91		Crude	MS (ESI+) for CHNO *m/z* 458.18 $[M+H]^+$
1-(8-Fluoro-6-(3-(2-methylpyridin-4-yl)imidazo[1,2-a]pyrimidin-2-yl)-2,3-dihydro-4H-benzo[b][1,4]oxazin-4-yl)ethan-1-one	92		Crude	MS (ESI+) for CHNOS *m/z* 404.14 $[M+H]^+$

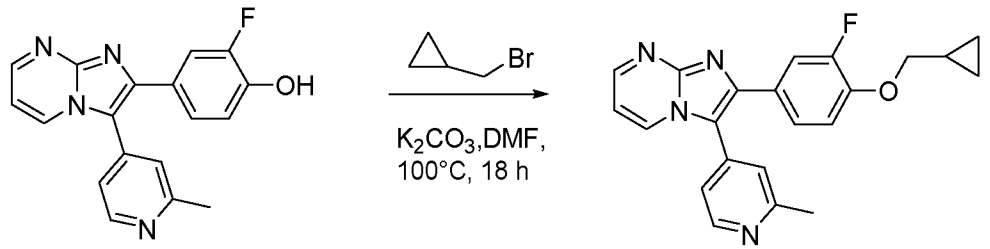
8-Fluoro-6-(3-(2-methylpyridin-4-yl)imidazo[1,2-a]pyrimidin-2-yl)-2H-benzo[b][1,4]oxazin-3(4H)-one	93		Crude	MS (ESI+) for CHNOS *m/z* 376.08 $[M+H]^+$
6-(3-(2-Methylpyridin-4-yl)imidazo[1,2-a]pyrimidin-2-yl)-2H-benzo[b][1,4]oxazin-3(4H)-one	94		Crude	MS (ESI+) for CHNOS *m/z* 358.12$[M+H]^+$
1-(7-Fluoro-6-(2-(2-methylpyridin-4-yl)imidazo[1,2-a]pyrimidin-3-yl)-2,3-dihydro-4H-benzo[b][1,4]oxazin-4-yl)ethan-1-one	95		Crude	MS (ESI+) for CHNOS *m/z* 404.13 $[M+H]^+$
6-(3-(2-Methylpyridin-4-yl)imidazo[1,2-a]pyrimidin-2-yl)-3,4-dihydro-2H-benzo[b][1,4]oxazin-2-one	96		Crude	MS (ESI+) for CHNOS *m/z* 358.20$[M+H]^+$

7-Fluoro-6-(2-(2-methylpyridin-4-yl)imidazo[1,2-a]pyrimidin-3-yl)-2H-benzo[b][1,4]oxazin-3(4H)-one	97		Crude	MS (ESI+) for CHNOS *m/z* 376.13$[M+H]^+$
3-(8-Fluoro-2,3-dihydrobenzo[b][1,4]dioxin-6-yl)-2-(2-methylpyridin-4-yl)imidazo[1,2-a]pyrimidine	98		Crude	MS (ESI+) for CHNOS *m/z* 363.21$[M+H]^+$
1-(7-(2-(2-Methylpyridin-4-yl)imidazo[1,2-a]pyrimidin-3-yl)-3,4-dihydroquinolin-1(2H)-yl)ethan-1-one	99		Crude	MS (ESI+) for CHNOS *m/z* 384.27 $[M+H]^+$
2-(7-Fluoro-2,3-dihydrobenzo[b][1,4]dioxin-6-yl)-3-(2-methylpyridin-4-yl)imidazo[1,2-a]pyrimidine	100		Crude	MS (ESI+) for CHNOS *m/z* 363.18 $[M+H]^+$

3-(5-Fluoro-2,3-dihydrobenzo[b][1,4]dioxin-6-yl)-2-(2-methylpyridin-4-yl)imidazo[1,2-a]pyrimidine	101		Crude	MS (ESI+) for CHNOS *m/z* 363.15 $[M+H]^+$
6-(2-(2-Methylpyridin-4-yl)imidazo[1,2-a]pyrimidin-3-yl)-2H-benzo[b][1,4]oxazin-3(4H)-one	102		The crude LCMS showed 24% desired product. The crude was enriched up to 88% by combiflash using 40 g silica coloumn, eluting with 0-12% meoH in DCM followed by the trituration with Diethylether	MS (ESI+) for CHNOS *m/z* 358.04 $[M+H]^+$

Intermediate 103

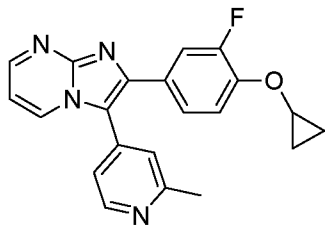
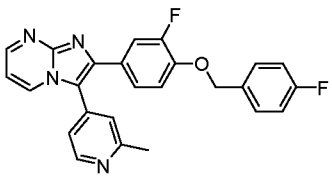
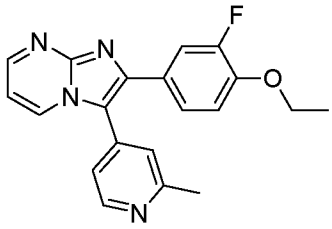
2-(4-(cyclopropylmethoxy)-3-fluorophenyl)-3-(2-methylpyridin-4-yl)imidazo[1,2-a]pyrimidine

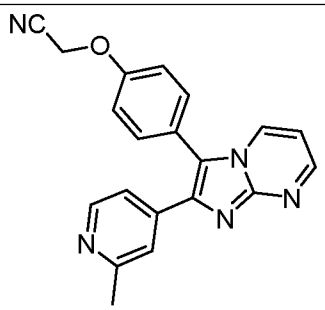


To a solution of 2-fluoro-4-(3-(2-methylpyridin-4-yl)imidazo[1,2-a]pyrimidin-2-yl)phenol (350mg, 1.09mmol) in DMF (5mL) were added K_2CO_3 (453mg, 3.28mmol) and (bromomethyl)cyclopropane (295mg, 2.19mmol) at rt. The reaction mixture was

stirred 100 °C for 18h. The TLC showed reaction to complete. The reaction mixture was allowed to cool to rt, diluted with water (100mL) and extracted with EtOAc (3x50mL). The organics were washed with brine (100mL), dried (Na_2SO_4), filtered and concentrated under reduced pressure to afford 2-(4-(cyclopropylmethoxy)-3-fluorophenyl)-3-(2-methylpyridin-4-yl)imidazo[1,2-a]pyrimidine as brown waxy. Yield: 380mg (crude). The crude LCMS showed two peaks with desired mass 25% and 67% respectively. MS (ESI+) for CHNOS *m/z* 375.05 $[M+H]^+$.

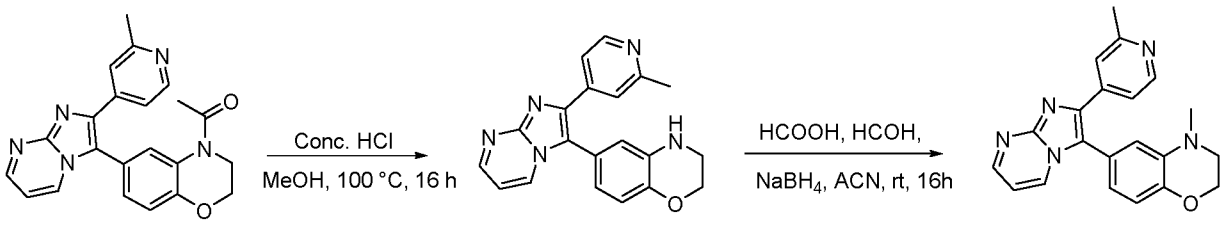
The following intermediates were prepared in a similar manner to 2-(4-(cyclopropylmethoxy)-3-fluorophenyl)-3-(2-methylpyridin-4-yl)imidazo[1,2-a]pyrimidine.

Name	Int	Structure	Yield	Spectral Data 1H NMR & LCMS
2-(4-Cyclopropoxy-3-fluorophenyl)-3-(2-methylpyridin-4-yl)imidazo[1,2-a]pyrimidine	104		69%	MS (ESI+) for CHNOS *m/z* 361.11 $[M+H]^+$
2-(3-fluoro-4-((4-fluorobenzyl)oxy)phenyl)-3-(2-methylpyridin-4-yl)imidazo[1,2-a]pyrimidine	105		45%	MS (ESI+) for CHNOS *m/z* 429.23 $[M+H]^+$
2-(4-Ethoxy-3-fluorophenyl)-3-(2-methylpyridin-4-yl)imidazo[1,2-a]pyrimidine	106		64%	MS (ESI+) for CHNOS *m/z* 349.09 $[M+H]^+$

2-(4-(2-(2-Methylpyridin-4-yl)imidazo[1,2-a]pyrimidin-3-yl)phenoxy)acetonitrile	107		Crude	MS (ESI+) for CHNOS *m/z* 342.00[M+H]$^+$

Intermediate 108

4-Methyl-6-(2-(2-methylpyridin-4-yl)imidazo[1,2-a]pyrimidin-3-yl)-3,4-dihydro-2H-benzo[b][1,4]oxazine



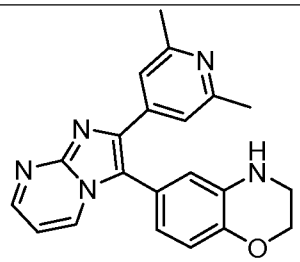
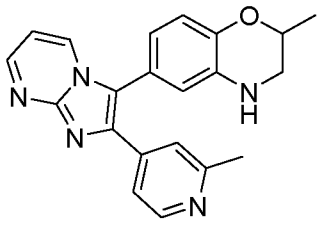
6-(2-(2-Methylpyridin-4-yl)imidazo[1,2-a]pyrimidin-3-yl)-3,4-dihydro-2H-benzo[b][1,4]oxazine

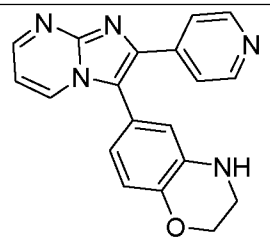
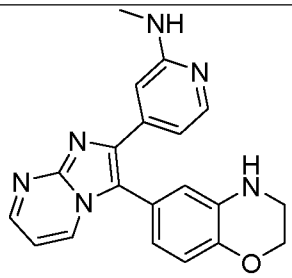
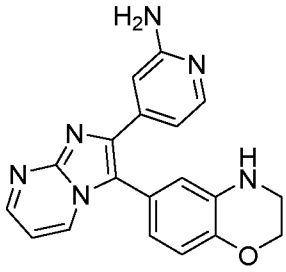
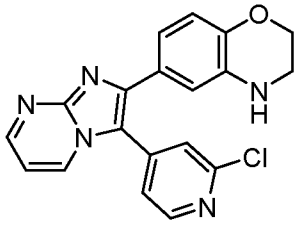
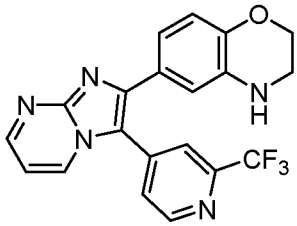
To a solution of 1-(6-(2-(2-methylpyridin-4-yl)imidazo[1,2-a]pyrimidin-3-yl)-2,3-dihydro-4H-benzo[b][1,4]oxazin-4-yl)ethan-1-one (3.5g, 6.47mmol) in EtOH (30mL) were added Conc. HCl (5mL) at rt. The reaction mixture was stirred at 100 °C for 16h. The TLC showed reaction to be complete. The reaction mixture was allowed to cool to rt, neutralized with saturated aq $NaHCO_3$ solution and extracted with 10% MeOH in DCM (3X50mL). The organics were washed with brine (100mL), dried (Na_2SO_4), filtered and concentrated under reduced pressure. The crude residue was enriched upto 82% by column chromatography using silica gel (100-200 mesh), eluting with 0-5% MeOH in DCM to to afford 6-(2-(2-methylpyridin-4-yl)imidazo[1,2-a]pyrimidin-3-yl)-3,4-dihydro-2H-benzo[b][1,4]oxazine as a yellow solid. Yield: 1.7g (mixture of regioisomers). The LCMS showed two peaks with desired mass 31% and 52% respectively. (ESI+) for CHNOS *m/z* 344.12 [M+H]$^+$.

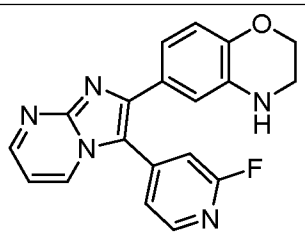
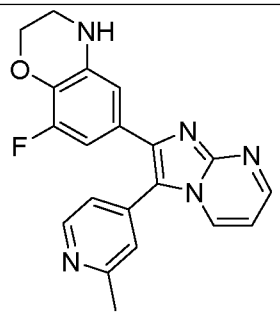
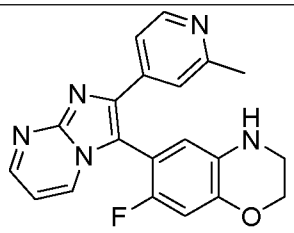
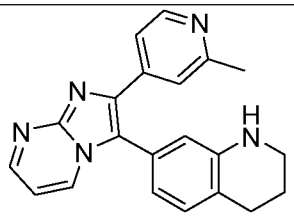
4-Methyl-6-(2-(2-methylpyridin-4-yl)imidazo[1,2-a]pyrimidin-3-yl)-3,4-dihydro-2H-benzo[b][1,4]oxazine

To a solution of 6-(2-(2-methylpyridin-4-yl)imidazo[1,2-a]pyrimidin-3-yl)-3,4-dihydro-2H-benzo[*b*][1,4]oxazine (150mg, 0.436mmol) in CH_3CN (10 mL) were added formaldehyde (136mg, 4.36mmol), formic acid (201mg, 4.36mmol) and acetic acid (0.1 mL) at rt. The reaction mixture was stirred at rt for 30 min and $NaBH_4$ (166mg, 4.36mmol) was added to it. The reaction mixture was further stirred at rt for 16h. The TLC showed reaction to be complete. The reaction was diluted with water (20mL) and extracted with 10% MeOH in DCM (3X20mL). The organics were washed with brine (20mL), dried (Na_2SO_4), filtered and concentrated under reduced pressure to afford 4-methyl-6-(2-(2-methylpyridin-4-yl)imidazo[1,2-a]pyrimidin-3-yl)-3,4-dihydro-2H-benzo[b][1,4]oxazine as a yellow solid. Yield: 130 mg (crude); MS (ESI+) for CHNOS *m/z* 358.15$[M+H]^+$.

The following intermediates were prepared in a similar manner 6-(2-(2-methylpyridin-4-yl)imidazo[1,2-a]pyrimidin-3-yl)-3,4-dihydro-2H-benzo[b][1,4]oxazine.

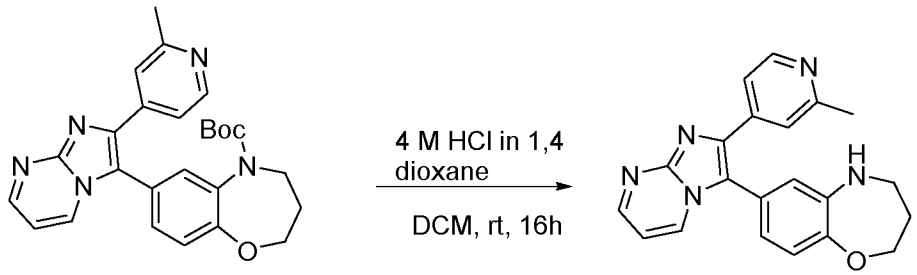
Name	Int	Structure	Yield	Spectral Data 1H NMR & LCMS
6-(2-(2,6-Dimethylpyridin-4-yl)imidazo[1,2-a]pyrimidin-3-yl)-3,4-dihydro-2H-benzo[b][1,4]oxazine	109		Crude	MS (ESI+) for CHNO *m/z* 358.13
2-Methyl-6-(2-(2-methylpyridin-4-yl)imidazo[1,2-a]pyrimidin-3-yl)-3,4-dihydro-2H-benzo[b][1,4]oxazine	110		Crude	MS (ESI+) for CHNOS *m/z* 358.02 [M+H]

6-(2-(Pyridin-4-yl)imidazo[1,2-a]pyrimidin-3-yl)-3,4-dihydro-2H-benzo[b][1,4]oxazine	111		Crude	MS (ESI+) for CHNO *m/z* 329.98 $[M+H]^+$
4-(3-(3,4-Dihydro-2H-benzo[b][1,4]oxazin-6-yl)imidazo[1,2-a]pyrimidin-2-yl)-*N*-methylpyridin-2-amine	112		Crude	MS (ESI+) for CHNO *m/z* 359.04 $[M+H]^+$
4-(3-(3,4-Dihydro-2H-benzo[b][1,4]oxazin-6-yl)imidazo[1,2-a]pyrimidin-2-yl)pyridin-2-amine	113		Crude	MS (ESI+) for CHNOS *m/z* 345.19 $[M+H]^+$
6-(3-(2-Chloropyridin-4-yl)imidazo[1,2-a]pyrimidin-2-yl)-3,4-dihydro-2H-benzo[b][1,4]oxazine	114		Crude	MS (ESI+) for CHNOS *m/z* 364.01 $[M+H]^+$
6-(3-(2-(triFluoromethyl)pyridin-4-yl)imidazo[1,2-a]pyrimidin-2-yl)-3,4-dihydro-2H-benzo[b][1,4]oxazine	115		Crude	MS (ESI+) for CHNOS *m/z* 398.20 $[M+H]^+$

6-(3-(2-Fluoropyridin-4-yl)imidazo[1,2-a]pyrimidin-2-yl)-3,4-dihydro-2H-benzo[b][1,4]oxazine	116		Crude	MS (ESI+) for CHNOS *m/z* 348.14 $[M+H]^+$
8-Fluoro-6-(3-(2-methylpyridin-4-yl)imidazo[1,2-a]pyrimidin-2-yl)-3,4-dihydro-2H-benzo[b][1,4]oxazine	117		Crude	MS (ESI+) for CHNOS *m/z* 362.13$[M+H]^+$
7-Fluoro-6-(2-(2-methylpyridin-4-yl)imidazo[1,2-a]pyrimidin-3-yl)-3,4-dihydro-2H-benzo[b][1,4]oxazine	118		Crude	MS (ESI+) for CHNOS *m/z* 362.13 $[M+H]^+$
7-(2-(2-Methylpyridin-4-yl)imidazo[1,2-a]pyrimidin-3-yl)-1,2,3,4-tetrahydroquinoline	119		Crude	MS (ESI+) for CHNOS *m/z* 342.18 $[M+H]^+$

Intermediate 120

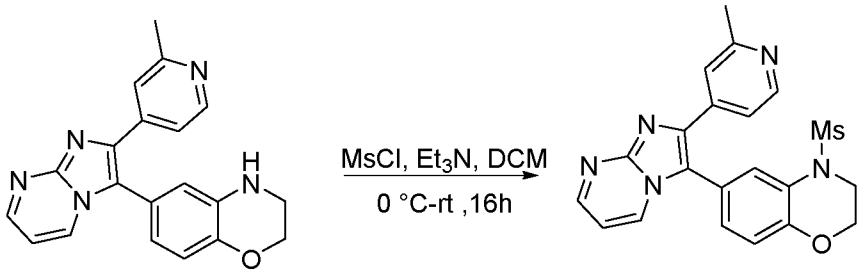
7-(2-(2-Methylpyridin-4-yl)imidazo[1,2-a]pyrimidin-3-yl)-2,3,4,5-tetrahydrobenzo[b][1,4]oxazepine



To a solution of tert-butyl 7-bromo-3,4-dihydrobenzo[b][1,4]oxazepine-5(2H)-carboxylate (5, 350mg, 0.765mmol) in DCM (10 mL) was added 4.0 M HCl in dioxane (2.0mL). The reaction mixture was stirred at rt for 16h. The reaction mixture was concentrated under reduced pressure, triturated with Et_2O(5.0mL) and dried under reduced pressure to afford 7-(2-(2-methylpyridin-4-yl)imidazo[1,2-a]pyrimidin-3-yl)-2,3,4,5-tetrahydrobenzo[b][1,4]oxazepine as brown solid Yield: 410 mg (Crude). MS (ESI+) for CHNO *m/z* 358.12 $[M+H]^+$.

Intermediate 121

6-(2-(2-Methylpyridin-4-yl)imidazo[1,2-a]pyrimidin-3-yl)-4-(methylsulfonyl)-3,4-dihydro-2H-benzo[b][1,4]oxazine

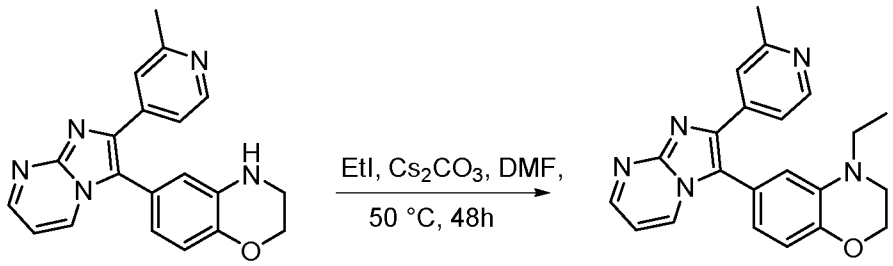


To a 6-(2-(2-methylpyridin-4-yl)imidazo[1,2-a]pyrimidin-3-yl)-3,4-dihydro-2H-benzo[*b*][1,4]oxazine (200mg, 0.58mmol) in DCM (5mL) was added Et_3N (117mg, 1.16mmol) at 0 °C. The reaction mixture was stirred at 0 °C for 0.5 h and mesyl chloride (100mg, 0.87mmol) was added to it. The reaction mixture was warmed to rt and further stirred for 16h. The TLC showed reaction to be complete. The reaction mixture was diluted with saturated aq $NaHCO_3$ solution (10mL) and extracted with 10% MeOH in DCM (3X20mL). The organics were washed with brine (100mL), dried (Na_2SO_4), filtered and concentrated under reduced pressure. The residue was triturated with Et_2O (5.0mL) and dried under reduced to afford 6-(2-(2-methylpyridin-

4-yl)imidazo[1,2-a]pyrimidin-3-yl)-4-(methylsulfonyl)-3,4-dihydro-2H-benzo[b][1,4]oxazine as a brown waxy solid. The crude data showed product and it was used in the next step without further purification.

Intermediate 122

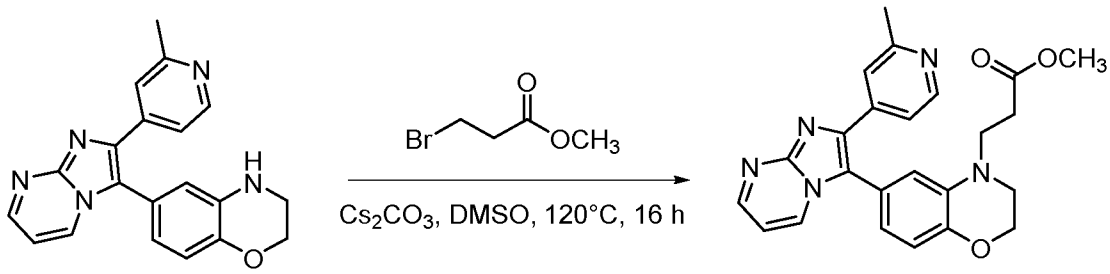
4-Ethyl-6-(2-(2-methylpyridin-4-yl)imidazo[1,2-a]pyrimidin-3-yl)-3,4-dihydro-2H-benzo[b][1,4]oxazine



To a solution of 6-(2-(2-methylpyridin-4-yl)imidazo[1,2-a]pyrimidin-3-yl)-3,4-dihydro-2H-benzo[b][1,4]oxazine (300mg, 0.87mmol) in DMF (10mL) were added Cs_2CO_3 (284mg, 8.7mmol) and ethyliodide (953mg, 6.1mmol) at rt. The reaction mixture was stirred at 50 °C for 48h. The TLC showed reaction to be completed. The reaction mixture was diluted with water (10mL) and extracted with EtOAc (3x10mL). The organic layer was dried (Na_2SO_4), filtered and concentrated under reduced pressure. The residue was enriched to 74% purity by combiflash, using 12g silica column, eluting with 5% MeOH in DCM to afford 4-ethyl-6-(2-(2-methylpyridin-4-yl)imidazo[1,2-a]pyrimidin-3-yl)-3,4-dihydro-2H-benzo[b][1,4]oxazine as a light brown solid. Yield: 71 mg (mixture of regioisomers); (MS (ESI+) for CHNOS *m/z* 372.21$[M+H]^+$. The LCMS showed two peaks with desired mass 36% and 38% respectively.

Intermediate 123

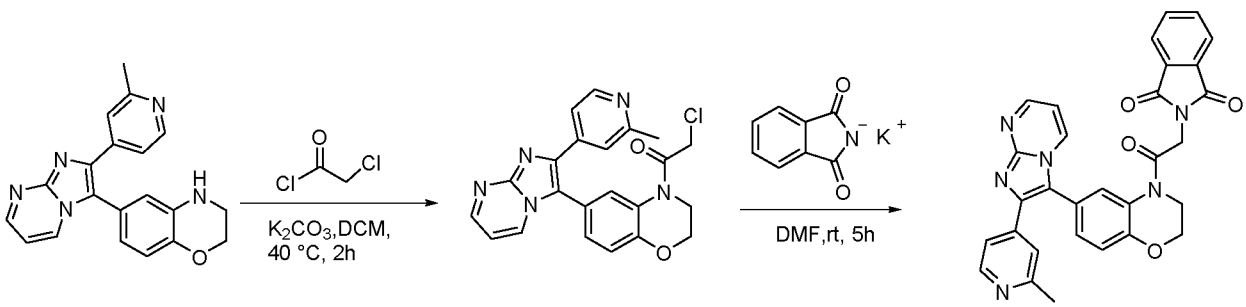
Methyl 3-(6-(2-(2-methylpyridin-4-yl)imidazo[1,2-a]pyrimidin-3-yl)-2,3-dihydro-4H-benzo[b][1,4]oxazin-4-yl)propanoate



To a solution of 6-(2-(2-methylpyridin-4-yl)imidazo[1,2-a]pyrimidin-3-yl)-3,4-dihydro-2H-benzo[*b*][1,4]oxazine (500mg, 1.45mmol) in DMSO (5.0mL) were added KI (50mg, cat.), Cs_2CO_3 (1.49g, 4.3mmol) and methyl-3-bromopropanoate (243mg, 1.45mmol) at rt. The reaction mixture was stirred at 120 °C for 16h. The TLC showed reaction to be completed. The reaction mixture was diluted with cold water (20mL) and extracted with 5%MeOH in DCM (3x25mL). The organic layer was dried (Na_2SO_4), filtered and concentrated under reduced pressure. The residue was purified by combiflash chromatography using 12g silica column, eluting with 10% MeOH in DCM to afford methyl 3-(6-(2-(2-methylpyridin-4-yl)imidazo[1,2-a]pyrimidin-3-yl)-2,3-dihydro-4H-benzo[b][1,4]oxazin-4-yl)propanoate as a yellow waxy liquid which was enriched up to 33% by trituration with Et_2O. Yield: 398 mg (crude); MS (ESI+) for CHNOS *m/z* 430.38$[M+H]^+$; The crude LCMS showed two peaks with desired mass 25% and 8% respectively.

Intermediate synthesis 124

2-(2-(6-(2-(2-Methylpyridin-4-yl)imidazo[1,2-a]pyrimidin-3-yl)-2,3-dihydro-4H-benzo[b][1,4]oxazin-4-yl)-2-oxoethyl)isoindoline-1,3-dione



2-Chloro-1-(6-(2-(2-methylpyridin-4-yl)imidazo[1,2-*a*]pyrimidin-3-yl)-2,3-dihydro-4H-benzo[b][1,4]oxazin-4-yl)ethan-1-one

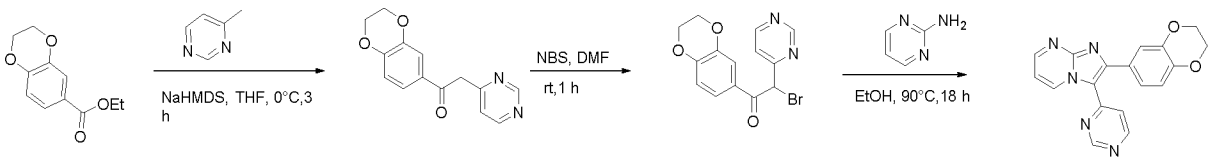
To a solution of 6-(2-(2-methylpyridin-4-yl)imidazo[1,2-a]pyrimidin-3-yl)-3,4-dihydro-2H-benzo[b][1,4]oxazine(400mg, 1.1mmol) in DCM (20mL) were added Et_3N (0.5mL, 3.4mmol), followed by chloroacetyl chloride (197mg, 1.7mmol) slowly at 0 °C. The reaction mixture was stirred at rt for 4h. The TLC showed reaction to be complete. The reaction mixture was diluted with water (30mL) and extracted with 10% MeOH in DCM (3x25mL). The organic layer was dried (Na_2SO_4), filtered and concentrated under reduced pressure. The residue was purified by combiflash chromatography using 12g silica column, eluting with 5% MeOH in DCM to afford 2-chloro-1-(6-(2-(2-methylpyridin-4-yl)imidazo[1,2-a]pyrimidin-3-yl)-2,3-dihydro-4H-benzo[b][1,4]oxazin-4-yl)ethan-1-one as a yellow solid. Yield: 320 mg (65%, mixture of regioisomers); MS (ESI+) for CHNOS *m/z* 419.97$[M+H]^+$. The LCMS showed two peaks with desired mass 72 % and 23% respectively.

2-(2-(6-(2-(2-Methylpyridin-4-yl)imidazo[1,2-a]pyrimidin-3-yl)-2,3-dihydro-4H-benzo[b][1,4]oxazin-4-yl)-2-oxoethyl)isoindoline-1,3-dione

To a solution of 2-chloro-1-(6-(2-(2-methylpyridin-4-yl)imidazo[1,2-a]pyrimidin-3-yl)-2,3-dihydro-4H-benzo[b][1,4]oxazin-4-yl)ethan-1-one (300mg, 0.70mmol) in DMF (10mL) was added potassium phthalimide (198mg, 1.07mmol) at rt. The reaction mixture was stirred at rt for 5h. The TLC showed reaction to be complete. The reaction mixture was diluted with water (10mL) and extracted with 10% MeOH in DCM (3x10mL). The organic layer was dried (Na_2SO_4), filtered and concentrated under reduced pressure. The residue was triturated with the Et_2O (10mL) to yield 2-(2-(6-(2-(2-methylpyridin-4-yl)imidazo[1,2-a]pyrimidin-3-yl)-2,3-dihydro-4H-benzo[b][1,4]oxazin-4-yl)-2-oxoethyl)isoindoline-1,3-dione as a waxy solid. Yield: 180 mg (crude, mixture of regioisomers); MS (ESI+) for CHNOS *m/z* 531.03 $[M+H]^+$.

Intermediate 125

2-(2,3-Dihydrobenzo[b][1,4]dioxin-6-yl)-3-(pyrimidin-4-yl)imidazo[1,2-a]pyrimidine



1-(2,3-Dihydrobenzo[b][1,4]dioxin-6-yl)-2-(pyrimidin-4-yl)ethan-1-one

To a solution of 4-methylpyrimidine (543mg, 5.8mmol) in THF (30mL) was added NaHMDS (1M in THF, 12mL, 12mmol) slowly at rt. The reaction mixture was stirred at rt for 30 min and a solution of ethyl 2,3-dihydrobenzo[b][1,4]dioxine-6-carboxylate (1g, 4.8mmol) in THF (5mL) was added slowly at rt. The reaction mixture was stirred at rt for 2 h. The TLC showed the reaction to be complete. The reaction mixture was poured into saturated aq NH_4Cl (50mL) and extracted with EtOAc (3x50mL). The organics were washed with brine (100mL), dried (Na_2SO_4), filtered and concentrated under reduced pressure. The crude residue was enriched up to 80% purity by trituration with pentane (25mL), filtered and dried under reduced pressure to afford 1-(2,3-dihydrobenzo[b][1,4]dioxin-6-yl)-2-(pyrimidin-4-yl)ethan-1-one as a yellow solid. Yield: 1g (81%). MS (ESI+) for CHNOS *m/z* 257.18 $[M+H]^+$.

2-Bromo-1-(2,3-dihydrobenzo[b][1,4]dioxin-6-yl)-2-(pyrimidin-4-yl)ethan-1-one

To a solution of 1-(2,3-dihydrobenzo[b][1,4]dioxin-6-yl)-2-(pyrimidin-4-yl)ethan-1-one (1g, 3.9mmol) in DMF (5mL) was added NBS (0.83g, 4.7mmol) at rt. The reaction mixture was stirred at rt for 1h. The TLC showed the reaction to be complete. The reaction mixture was diluted with water (25mL) and extracted with EtOAc (3x25mL). The organics were washed with brine (50mL), dried (Na_2SO_4), filtered and concentrated under reduced pressure to afford 2-bromo-1-(2,3-dihydrobenzo[b][1,4]dioxin-6-yl)-2-(pyrimidin-4-yl)ethan-1-one as a brown waxy solid. Yield: 1.2 g crude (84% by LCMS). MS (ESI+) for CHNOS *m/z* 335.05 $[M+H]^+$. The crude product was used in the next step without further purification.

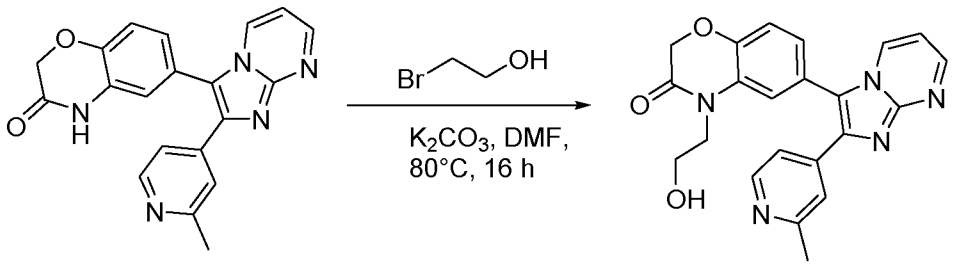
2-(2,3-Dihydrobenzo[b][1,4]dioxin-6-yl)-3-(pyrimidin-4-yl)imidazo[,2-a]pyrimidine

To a solution of 2-bromo-1-(2,3-dihydrobenzo[b][1,4]dioxin-6-yl)-2-(pyrimidin-4-yl)ethan-1-one (1.2g, 3.59mmol) in EtOH (30mL) was added pyrimidin-2-amine (341mg, 35.9mmol). The reaction mixture was stirred at 90°C for 48h. The TLC showed the reaction to be complete. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure. The crude residue was diluted with H_2O (25mL) and extracted with EtOAc (3x25mL). The organics were washed with brine, dried (Na_2SO_4), filtered and concentrated under reduced pressure to afford 2-(2,3-dihydrobenzo[b][1,4]dioxin-6-yl)-3-(pyrimidin-4-yl)imidazo[1,2-a]pyrimidine as a brown waxy oil. Yield: 600 mg

(crude, 37% by LCMS); MS (ESI+) for CHNOS *m/z* 332.21 $[M+H]^+$. The crude was used in the next step without further purification.

Intermeidate 126

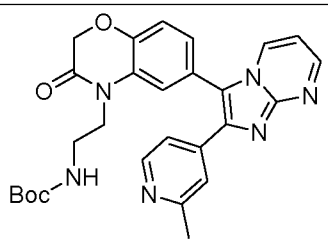
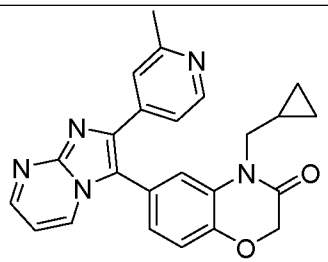
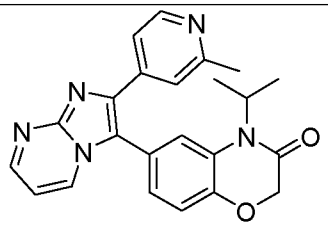
4-(2-Hydroxyethyl)-6-(2-(2-methylpyridin-4-yl)imidazo[1,2-a]pyrimidin-3-yl)-2H-benzo[b][1,4]oxazin-3(4H)-one

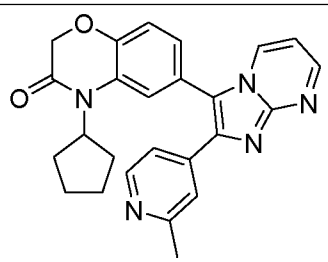
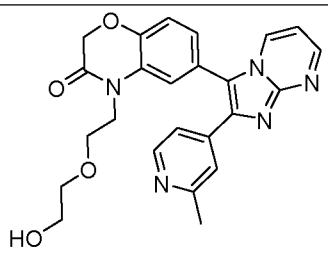


To a solution of 6-(2-(2-methylpyridin-4-yl)imidazo[1,2-a]pyrimidin-3-yl)-2H-benzo[b][1,4]oxazin-3(4H)-one (600mg, 1.68mmol) in DMF (5.0mL) were added K_2CO_3 (1.16g, 8.40mmol) and 2-bromoethan-1-ol (421mg, 3.36mmol) at rt. The reaction mixture was stirred at 80°C for 16h. The TLC showed reaction to complete. The reaction mixture was allowed to cool to rt, diluted with water (50mL) and extracted with 10% meOH in DCM (3X50mL). The organics were washed with brine (100mL), dried (Na_2SO_4), filtered and concentrated under reduced pressure to 4-(2-hydroxyethyl)-6-(2-(2-methylpyridin-4-yl)imidazo[1,2-a]pyrimidin-3-yl)-2H-benzo[b][1,4]oxazin-3(4H)-one_as a yellow solid. Yield: 470mg (crude, 74% by LCMS). The crude was enriched up to 74% by combiflash using 12 g silica column, eluting with 0-5% MeOH in DCM. MS (ESI+) for CHNOS *m/z* 402.17 $[M+H]^+$.

The following intermediates were prepared in a similar manner to 4-(2-Hydroxyethyl)-6-(2-(2-methylpyridin-4-yl)imidazo[1,2-a]pyrimidin-3-yl)-2H-benzo[b][1,4]oxazin-3(4H)-one.

Name	Int	Structure	Yield	Spectral Data 1H NMR & LCMS

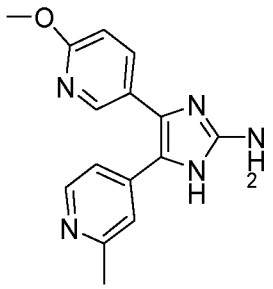
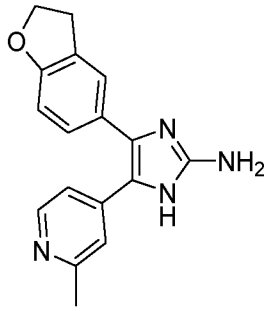
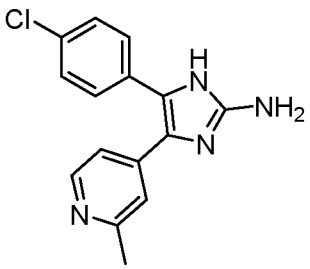
tert-Butyl (2-(6-(2-(2-methylpyridin-4-yl)imidazo[1,2-a]pyrimidin-3-yl)-3-oxo-2,3-dihydro-4H-benzo[b][1,4]oxazin-4-yl)ethyl)carbamate	127		33% The crude LCMS shows ~46% conversion to desired product. The crude was enriched up to 83% by combiflash using 12 g silica column, eluting with 0-10% MeOH in DCM	MS (ESI+) for CHNOS *m/z* 501.10[M+H]$^{+}$
4-(Cyclopropylmethyl)-6-(2-(2-methylpyridin-4-yl)imidazo[1,2-a]pyrimidin-3-yl)-2H-benzo[b][1,4]oxazin-3(4H)-one	128		The crude data showed 32% desired product. Enriched up to 46% by combiflash using 12 g column , eluting with 0-10% MeOH in DCM	MS (ESI+) for CHNOS *m/z* 412.21[M+H]$^{+}$
4-Isopropyl-6-(2-(2-methylpyridin-4-yl)imidazo[1,2-a]pyrimidin-3-yl)-2H-benzo[b][1,4]oxazin-3(4H)-one	129		40% The crude LCMS showed two peaks with desired mass 11% and 20% respectively. Enrich upto 65% mixture of two peaks with same mass by combiflash using 12 g silica column, eluting with 0-10% MeOH in DCM	MS (ESI+) for CHNOS *m/z* 400.19[M+H]$^{+}$

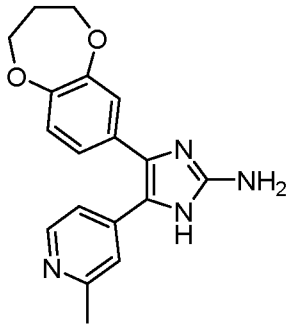
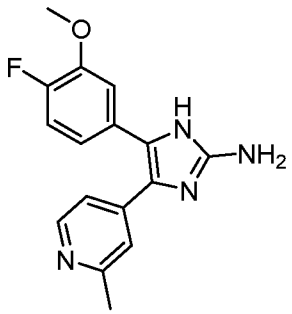
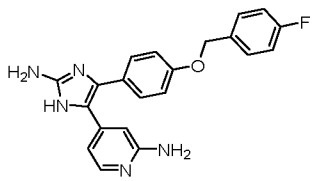
4-Cyclopentyl-6-(2-(2-methylpyridin-4-yl)imidazo[1,2-a]pyrimidin-3-yl)-2H-benzo[b][1,4]oxazin-3(4H)-one For J23-453	130		59% The crude LCMS showed two peaks with desired mass 21% and 20% respectively. Enrich upto 90% mixture of two peaks with same mass by combiflash using 12 g silica column, eluting with 0-10% MeOH in DCM	MS (ESI+) for CHNOS *m/z* 426.22[M+H]$^{+}$
4-(2-(2-Hydroxyethoxy)ethyl)-6-(2-(2-methylpyridin-4-yl)imidazo[1,2-a]pyrimidin-3-yl)-2H-benzo[b][1,4]oxazin-3(4H)-one	131		38% The crude LCMS shows ~43% conversion to desired product. The crude was enriched upto 80% by combiflash using 12 g silica column, eluting with 0-10% MeOH in DCM	MS (ESI+) for CHNOS *m/z* 446.11[M+H]$^{+}$

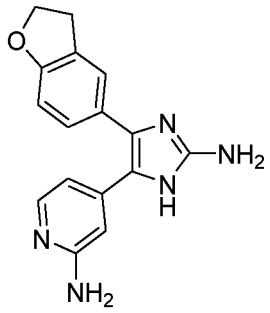
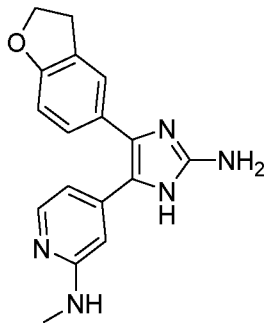
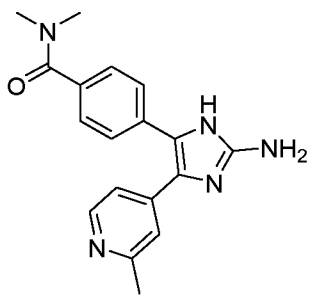
The following compounds were prepared in a similar manner 5-(3,4-Dimethoxyphenyl)-4-(2-methylpyridin-4-yl)-1H-imidazol-2-amine.

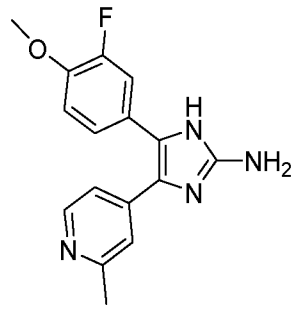
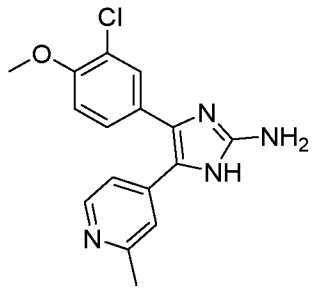
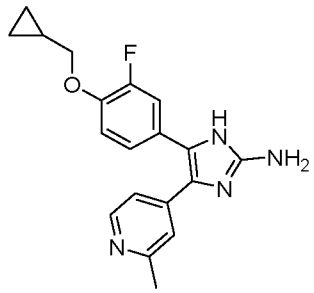
5

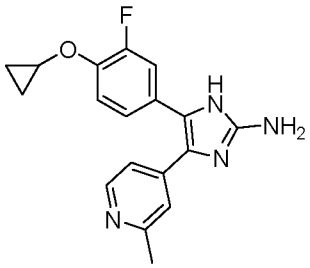
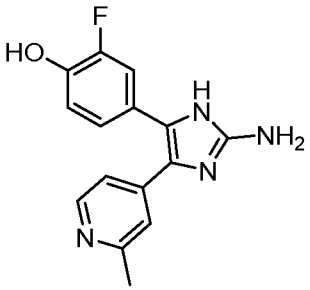
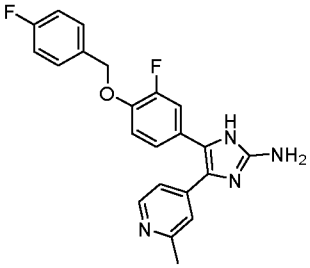
Name	Ex	Structure	Yield	Spectral Data 1H NMR & LCMS

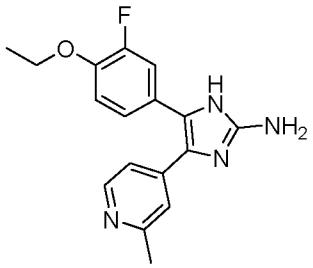
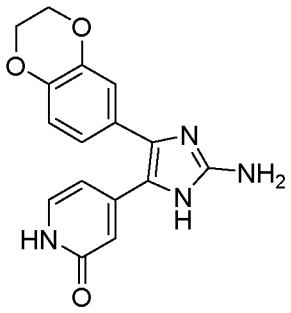
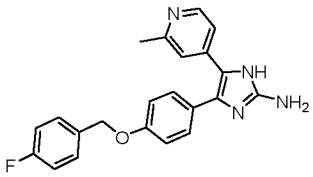
4-(6-Methoxypyridin-3-yl)-5-(2-methylpyridin-4-yl)-1H-imidazol-2-amine	2		17%	MS (ESI+) for CHNOS *m/z* 282.06 $[M+H]^+$; LC purity 97.6% (Ret. Time- 3.67 min); ^{1}H NMR (400 MHz, DMSO-d_6): δ 11.09 (bs, 1H), 8.18-8.23 (m, 2H), 7.68 (dd, *J* = 2.4, 8.6 Hz, 1H), 7.21 (bs, 1H), 7.04 (d, *J* = 4.6Hz, 1H), 6.83 (d, *J* = 8.0Hz, 1H), 5.51 (bs, 2H), 3.87 (s, 3H), 2.36 (s, 3H)
4-(2,3-Dihydrobenzofuran-5-yl)-5-(2-methylpyridin-4-yl)-1H-imidazol-2-amine	3		18%	MS (ESI+) for CHNOS m/z 293.7 $[M+H]^+$; LC purity 96.1% (Ret. Time- 3.96 min); 1H NMR (400 MHz DMSO-d_6 + *d*-TFA)): δ 8.64 (d, J = 6.5 Hz, 1H), 7.77 (s, 1H), 7.56 (d, *J* = 6.2 Hz, 1H), 7.42 (s, 1H), 7.27 (d, *J* = 8.5Hz, 1H), 6.93 (d, J = 6.2 Hz, 1H), 4.60-4.67 (m, 2H), 3.20-3.26 (m, 2H), 2.63 (s, 3H)
5-(4-Chlorophenyl)-4-(2-methylpyridin-4-yl)-1H-imidazol-2-amine	4		56%	MS (ESI+) for CHNOS m/z 284.98 $[M+H]^+$; LC purity 97.3% (Ret. Time- 4.49 min); 1H NMR (400 MHz, DMSO-d_6 + d-TFA): δ 8.55 (d, J = 6.4 Hz, 1H), 7.72 (bs, 1H), 7.20-7.50 (m, 5H), 2.57 (s, 3H)

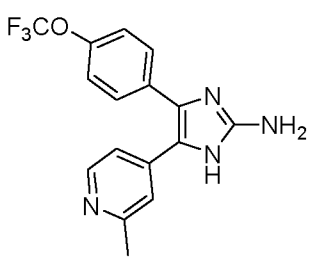
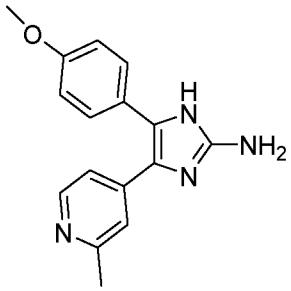
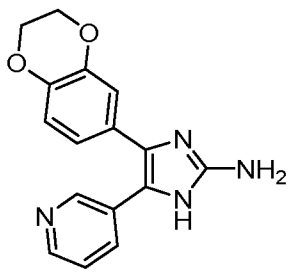
4-(3,4-dihydro-2H-benzo[b][1,4]dioxepin-7-yl)-5-(2-methylpyridin-4-yl)-1H-imidazol-2-amine	5		9%	MS (ESI+) for CHNOS m/z 323.03 $[M+H]^+$; LC purity 95.4% (Ret. Time- 4.05 min); 1H NMR (400 MHz, DMSO-d6 + *d*- TFA): δ 8.63 (d, *J* = 6.0 Hz, 1H), 7.78 (s, 1H), 7.56 (bs, 1H), 7.04-7.20 (m, 3H), 4.16-4.21 (m, 4H), 2.61 (s, 3H), 2.14 (bs, 2H)
5-(4-Fluoro-3-methoxyphenyl)-4-(2-methylpyridin-4-yl)-1H-imidazol-2-amine	6		30%	MS (ESI+) for CHNOS *m/z* 299.03 $[M+H]^+$; LC purity 98.3% (Ret. Time- 3.75 min); ^{1}H NMR (400 MHz, DMSO-d_6): *δ* 11.09 (bs , 1H), 8.23 (d, *J* = 5.6 Hz, 1H), 7.05-7.30 (m, 4H) , 6.97(s, 1H), 5.50 (bs, 2H), 3.76 (s, 3H), 2.36 (s, 3H)
4-(2-Amino-4-(4-((4-fluorobenzyl)oxy)phenyl)-1H-imidazol-5-yl)pyridin-2-amine	7		58%	MS (ESI+) for CHNOS *m/z* 376.02 $[M+H]^+$; LC purity 97.9% (Ret. Time- 4.86 min); ^{1}H NMR (400 MHz, DMSO-d_6 + D_2O): *δ* 7.74 (d, *J* = 6.8 Hz, 1H), 7.45-7.51 (m, 2H), 7.38 (d, *J* = 8.6 Hz, 2H), 7.15-7.23 (m, 2H), 7.10 (d, *J* = 8.6 Hz, 2H), 6.83 (s, 1H), 6.58 (d, *J* = 6.8 Hz, 1H), 5.09 (s, 2H)

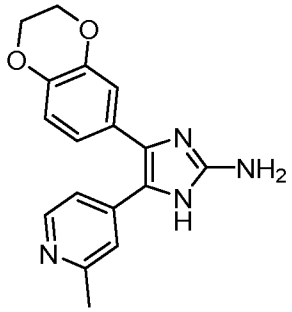
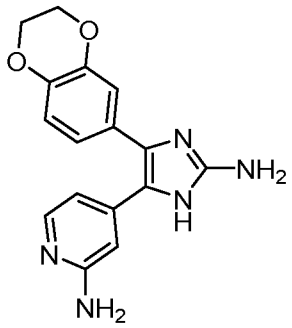
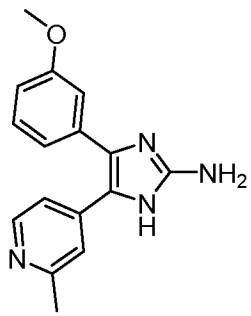
4-(2-Amino-4-(2,3-dihydrobenzofuran-5-yl)-1H-imidazol-5-yl)pyridin-2-amine	8		6%	MS (ESI+) for CHNOS *m/z* 294.04 $[M+H]^+$; LC purity 93.1% (Ret. Time- 3.58 min); ^{1}H NMR (400 MHz, DMSO-d_6): δ 10.76 (s , 1H), 7.66 (bs, 1H), 7.00-7.40 (m, 2H), 6.55-6.90 (m, 2H), 6.10-6.55 (m, 1H), 5.60 (bs, 2H), 5.20 (bs 2H), 4.53 (bs, 2H), 3.16 (bs, 2H)
4-(2-Amino-4-(2,3-dihydrobenzofuran-5-yl)-1H-imidazol-5-yl)-N-methylpyridin-2-amine	9		6%	MS (ESI+) for CHNOS *m/z* 308.04 $[M+H]^+$; LC purity 92.2% (Ret. Time- 3.82 min); ^{1}H NMR (400 MHz, DMSO-d_6): δ 10.87 (bs , 1H), 7.75 (d, *J* = 5.2 Hz, 1H), 7.27 (s, 1H), 7.12 (d, *J* = 7.8 Hz, 1H), 6.73 (d, *J* = 8.1 Hz, 1H), 6.42-6.52 (m, 2H), 6.20 (d, *J* = 4.3 Hz, 1H), 5.26 (bs, 2H), 4.53 (t, *J* = 8.6 Hz, 2H), 3.15 (t, *J* = 8.6 Hz, 2H), 2.68 (d, *J* = 4.8 Hz, 3H)
4-(2-Amino-4-(2-methylpyridin-4-yl)-1H-imidazol-5-yl)-N,N-dimethylbenzamide	10		8%	MS (ESI+) for CHNOS *m/z* 322.02 $[M+H]^+$; LC purity 97.9% (Ret. Time- 4.63 min); ^{1}H NMR (400 MHz, DMSO-d_6): δ 11.22 (bs , 1H), 8.23 (d, *J* = 4.9 Hz, 1H), 7.43-7.52 (m, 2H), 7.34-7.42 (m, 2H), 7.24 (bs ,1H), 7.07-7.16 (m, 1H), 5.56 (bs, 2H), 2.97 (bs,

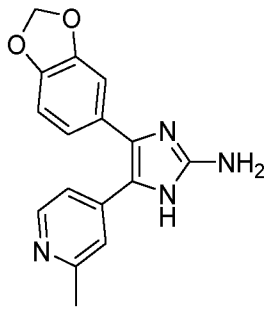
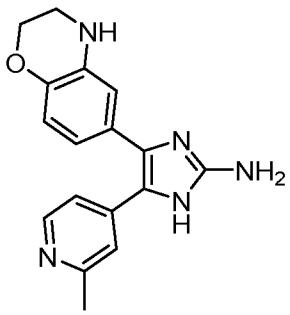
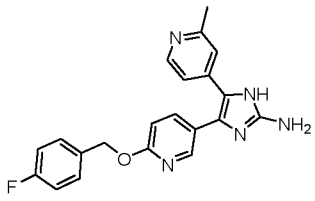
				6H), 2.36 (s, 3H)
5-(3-Fluoro-4-methoxyphenyl)-4-(2-methylpyridin-4-yl)-1H-imidazol-2-amine	11		21%	MS (ESI+) for CHNOS *m/z* 299.00 $[M+H]^+$; LC purity 97.4% (Ret. Time- 4.02 min); ^{1}H NMR (400 MHz, DMSO-d_6): *δ* 11.31 (bs, 1H), 8.23 (d, *J* = 5.2Hz, 1H), 7.11-7.29 (m, 4H), 7.08 (d, *J* = 4.6 Hz, 1H), 5.62 (bs, 2H), 3.86 (s, 3H), 2.37 (s, 3H)
4-(3-Chloro-4-methoxyphenyl)-5-(2-methylpyridin-4-yl)-1H-imidazol-2-amine	12		19%	MS (ESI+) for CHNOS *m/z* 315.00 $[M+H]^+$; LC purity 98.4% (Ret. Time- 4.34 min); ^{1}H NMR (400 MHz, DMSO-d_6): *δ* 11.07 (bs, 1H), 8.22 (d, *J* = 5.2 Hz, 1H) , 7.44 (d, *J* = 1.5 Hz, 1H), 7.05-7.40 (m, 4H), 5.48 (bs, 2H), 3.87 (s, 3H), 2.37 (s, 3H)
5-(4-(Cyclopropylmethoxy)-3-fluorophenyl)-4-(2-methylpyridin-4-yl)-1H-imidazol-2-amine	13		26%	MS (ESI+) for CHNOS *m/z* 339.03 $[M+H]^+$; LC purity 96.7% (Ret. Time- 4.87min); ^{1}H NMR (400 MHz, DMSO-d_6): *δ* 11.04 (bs, 1H), 8.21 (d, *J* = 5.2Hz, 1H), 7.02-7.40 (m, 5H), 5.46 (bs, 2H), 3.90 (d, *J* = 7.0Hz, 2H), 2.36 (s, 3H), 1.21-1.25 (m, 1H), 0.56-0.60 (m, 2H), 0.32-0.35 (m, 2H)

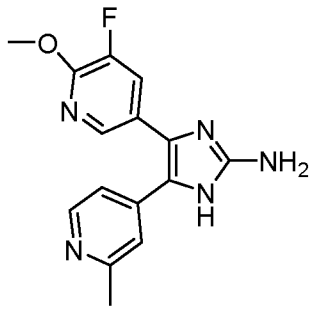
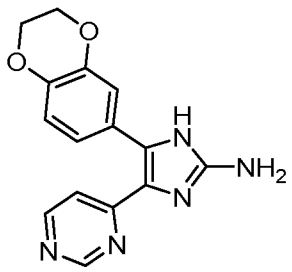
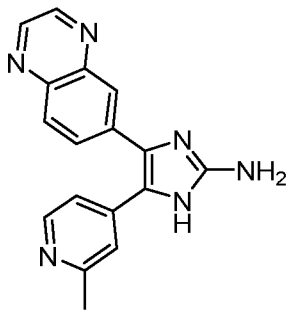
5-(4-Cyclopropoxy-3-fluorophenyl)-4-(2-methylpyridin-4-yl)-1H-imidazol-2-amine	14		22%	MS (ESI+) for CHNOS *m/z* 325.02 $[M+H]^+$; LC purity 97.2% (Ret. Time- 4.54 min); ^{1}H NMR (400 MHz, DMSO-d_6): δ 11.00 (bs, 1H), 8.22 (s, 1H), 6.91-7.51 (m, 5H), 5.36-5.60(m, 2H), 3.96 (bs, 1H), 2.37 (s, 3H), 0.59-0.90 (m, 4H)
4-(2-Amino-4-(2-methylpyridin-4-yl)-1H-imidazol-5-yl)-2-fluorophenol	15		28%	MS (ESI+) for CHNOS *m/z* 285.02 $[M+H]^+$; LC purity 98.3% (Ret. Time- 3.50 min); ^{1}H NMR (400 MHz, DMSO-d_6 + d-TFA): δ 8.64 (d, J = 6.5Hz, 1H), 7.77 (s, 1H), 7.56 (d, J = 5.8Hz, 1H), 7.32-7.38 (m, 1H), 7.05-7.19 (m, 2H), 2.61 (s, 3H)
5-(3-Fluoro-4-((4-fluorobenzyl)oxy)phenyl)-4-(2-methylpyridin-4-yl)-1H-imidazol-2-amine	16		55%	MS (ESI+) for CHNOS *m/z* 393.03 $[M+H]^+$; LC purity 90% (Ret. Time- 5.27 min); ^{1}H NMR (400 MHz, DMSO-d_6): δ 11.01 (bs, 1H), 8.16-8.29 (m, 1H), 7.49-7.58 (m, 2H), 7.01-7.36 (m, 7H), 5.51 (bs, 1H), 5.38 (bs, 1H), 5.14-5.20 (m, 2H), 2.36 (s, 3H)

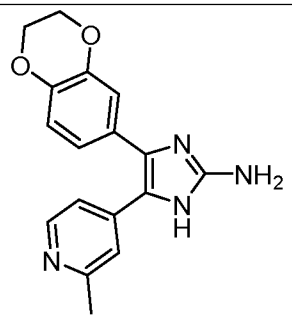
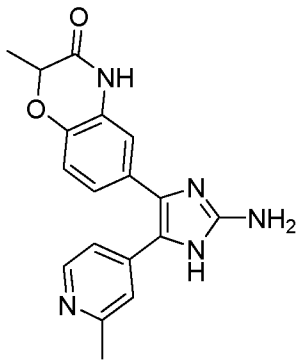
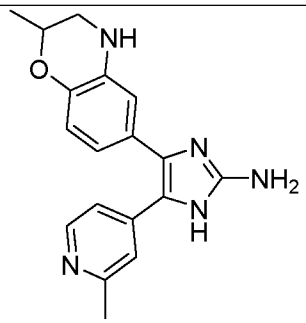
5-(4-Ethoxy-3-fluorophenyl)-4-(2-methylpyridin-4-yl)-1H-imidazol-2-amine	17		62%	MS (ESI+) for CHNOS *m/z* 313.03 $[M+H]^+$; LC purity 92.7% (Ret.Time- 4.53 min); ^{1}H NMR (400 MHz, DMSO-d_6): δ 10.99 (bs, 1H), 9.19-8.30 (m, 1H), 7.01-7.39 (m, 5H), 5.35-550 (m, 2H), 4.11 (q, *J* = 6.3 Hz, 2H), 2.36 (s, 3H), 1.35 (t, *J* = 6.3Hz, 3H)
4-(2-Amino-4-(2,3-dihydrobenzo[b][1,4]dioxin-6-yl)-1H-imidazol-5-yl)pyridin-2(1H)-one	18		16%	MS (ESI+) for CHNOS *m/z* 310.97 $[M+H]^+$; LC purity 96.0% (Ret.Time- 4.65 min); ^{1}H NMR (400 MHz, DMSO-d_6 + d-TFA): δ 7.76 (bs, 1H), 6.78-7.08 (m, 4H), 6.71 (bs, 1H), 4.22 (s, 4H)
4-(4-((4-Fluorobenzyl)oxy)phenyl)-5-(2-methylpyridin-4-yl)-1H-imidazol-2-amine	19		82%	MS (ESI+) for CHNOS *m/z* 375.03 $[M+H]^+$; LC purity 96.9% (Ret.Time- 5.14 min); ^{1}H NMR (400 MHz, DMSO-d_6): δ 10.93 (bs, 1H), 8.12-8.23 (m, 1H), 7.48-7.58 (m, 2H), 7.19-7.42 (m, 5H), 6.94-7.16 (m, 3H), 5.29-5.56 (m, 2H), 5.07-5.15 (m, 2H), 2.33 (s, 3H)

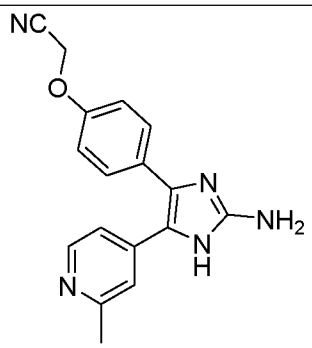
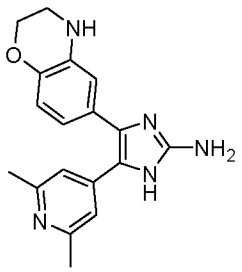
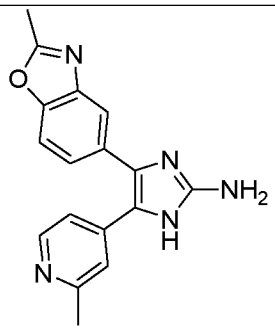
5-(2-Methylpyridin-4-yl)-4-(4-(trifluoromethoxy)phenyl)-1H-imidazol-2-amine	20		37%	MS (ESI+) for CHNOS *m/z* 334.94 $[M+H]^+$; LC purity 99.3% (Ret.Time- 4.09min); ^{1}H NMR (400 MHz, DMSO-d_6): δ 11.09 (bs, 1H), 8.24 (s, 1H), 7.0-7.65 (m, 6H), 5.50 (bs, 2H), 2.36 (s, 3H)
5-(4-Methoxyphenyl)-4-(2-methylpyridin-4-yl)-1H-imidazol-2-amine	21		26%	MS (ESI+) for CHNOS *m/z* 281.16 $[M+H]^+$; LC purity 97.4% (Ret.Time- 3.95min); ^{1}H NMR (400 MHz, DMSO-d_6 at 369.2K): δ 11.09 (bs, 1H), 8.19 (d, *J* = 5.2 Hz, 1H), 7.35 (d, *J* = 8.4Hz, 2H), 7.24 (s, 1H), 7.08 (bs, 1H), 6.94 (d, *J* = 8.4Hz, 2H), 5.06 (bs, 2H), 3.81 (s, 3H), 2.36 (s, 3H)
4-(2,3-Dihydrobenzo[b][1,4]dioxin-6-yl)-5-(pyridin-3-yl)-1H-imidazol-2-amine	22		28%	MS (ESI+) for CHNOS *m/z* 295.03 $[M+H]^+$; LC purity 98.4% (Ret.Time- 3.90 min); ^{1}H NMR (400 MHz, DMSO-d_6): δ 11.37 (bs, 1H), 8.57 (s, 1H), 8.35 (d, *J* = 3.6Hz, 1H), 7.74 (d, *J* = 7.9 Hz, 1H), 7.390 (dd, *J* = 4.8, 7.6 Hz, 1H), 6.80-6.90 (m, 3H), 5.69 (bs, 2H), 4.23 (s, 3H)

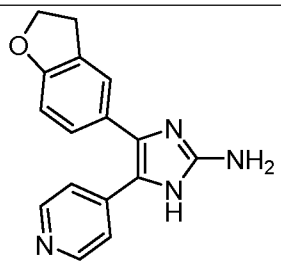
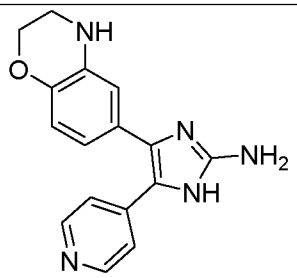
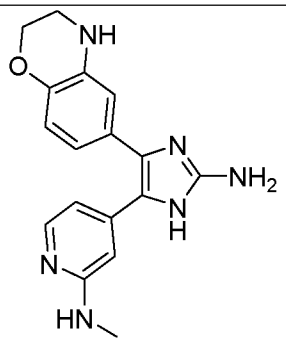
4-(2,3-Dihydrobenzo[b][1,4]dioxin-6-yl)-5-(2-methylpyridin-4-yl)-1H-imidazol-2-amine	23		11%	MS (ESI+) for CHNOS *m/z* 309.16 $[M+H]^+$; LC purity 99.7% (Ret.Time-3.57 min); ^{1}H NMR (400 MHz, DMSO-d_6): δ 10.92 (bs, 1H), 8.19 (d, J = 5.2 Hz, 1H), 7.01-7.91 (m, 2H), 6.82-6.99 (m, 3H), 5.34 (bs, 2H), 4.26 (s, 4H), 2.36 (s, 3H)
4-(2-Amino-4-(2,3-dihydrobenzo[b][1,4]dioxin-6-yl)-1H-imidazol-5-yl)pyridin-2-amine	24		19%	MS (ESI+) for CHNOS *m/z* 310.03 $[M+H]^+$; LC purity 91.8% (Ret.Time-3.53 min); ^{1}H NMR (400 MHz, DMSO-d_6): δ 10.79 (bs, 1H), 7.70 (d, J = 4.9Hz, 1H), 6.74-6.94 (m, 3H), 5.38-6.62 (m, 2H), 5.70 (bs, 2H), 5.26 (bs, 2H), 4.24 (s, 4H)
4-(3-Methoxyphenyl)-5-(2-methylpyridin-4-yl)-1H-imidazol-2-amine	25		18%	MS (ESI+) for CHNOS *m/z* 281.16 $[M+H]^+$; LC purity 96.4% (Ret. Time- 4.03 min); ^{1}H NMR (400 MHz, DMSO-d_6): δ 11.07 (bs, 1H), 8.22 (d, J = 4.9 Hz, 1H), 7.20-7.31 (m, 2H), 7.12 (bs, 1H), 6.98 (bs, 2H), 6.84 (d, J = 8.6 Hz, 1H), 5.47 (s, 2H), 3.72 (s, 3H), 2.25 (s, 3H)

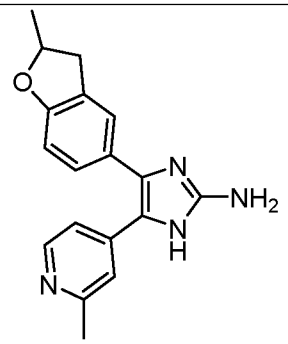
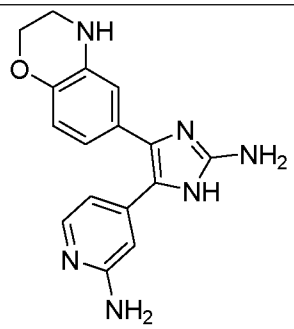
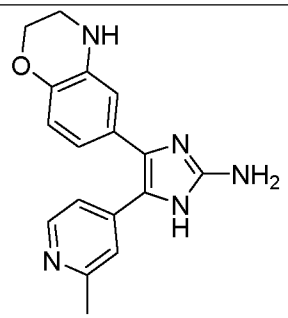
4-(Benzo[d][1,3]dioxol-5-yl)-5-(2-methylpyridin-4-yl)-1H-imidazol-2-amine	26		56%	MS (ESI+) for CHNOS *m/z* 295.03 $[M+H]^+$; LC purity 95.3% (Ret. Time- 3.94 min); ^{1}H NMR (400 MHz, DMSO-d_6): δ 11.16 (bs, 1H), 8.21 (d, *J* = 5.2 Hz, 1H), 7.25 (s, 1H), 7.08 (d, *J* = 4.9 Hz, 1H), 6.86-6.95 (m, 3H), 6.08 (s, 2H), 5.51 (bs, 2H), 2.36 (s, 3H)
4-(3,4-Dihydro-2H-benzo[b][1,4]oxazin-6-yl)-5-(2-methylpyridin-4-yl)-1H-imidazol-2-amine	27		36%	MS (ESI+) for CHNOS *m/z* 308.05 $[M+H]^+$; LC purity 93.8% (Ret. Time- 3.85min); ^{1}H NMR (400 MHz, DMSO-d_6): δ 10.81 (bs, 1H), 8.15 (d, *J* = 5.2Hz, 1H), 7.29 (s, 1H), 7.12 (bs, 1H), 6.63 (bs, 2H), 6.50 (d, *J* = 7.7 Hz, 1H), 5.81 (bs, 1H), 5.28 (bs, 2H), 4.12-4.15 (m, 2H), 3.23-3.38 (m, 2H), 2.35 (s, 3H)
4-(6-((4-Fluorobenzyl)oxy)pyridin-3-yl)-5-(2-methylpyridin-4-yl)-1H-imidazol-2-amine	28		22%	MS (ESI+) for CHNOS *m/z* 376.02 $[M+H]^+$; LC purity 91.8% (Ret. Time- 4.94 min); ^{1}H NMR (400 MHz, DMSO-d_6): δ 11.17 (bs, 1H), 8.19-8.29 (m, 2H), 7.71 (d, *J* = 8.0 Hz, 1H), 7.46-7.59 (m, 2H), 7.16-7.29 (m, 3H), 7.05 (d, *J* = 4.2 Hz, 1H), 6.89 (d, *J* = 8.4 Hz, 1H), 5.58 (bs, 2H), 5.35 (s, 2H), 2.36 (s, 3H)

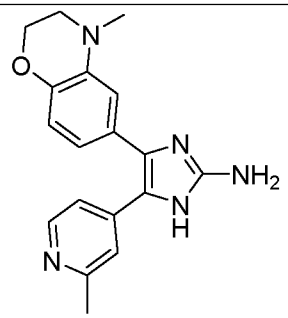
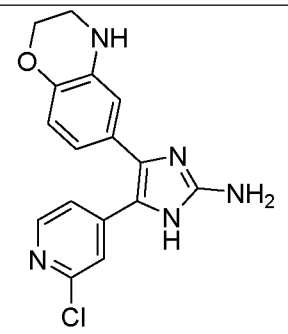
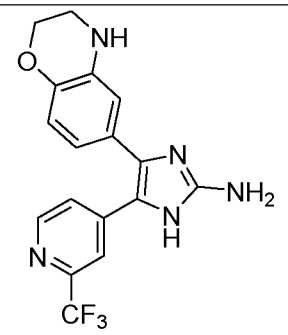
4-(5-Fluoro-6-methoxypyridin-3-yl)-5-(2-methylpyridin-4-yl)-1H-imidazol-2-amine	29		21%	MS (ESI+) for CHNOS *m/z* 300.0 $[M+H]^+$; LC purity 98.2% (Ret. Time- 3.97 min); ^{1}H NMR (400 MHz, DMSO-d_6): δ 11.33 (bs, 1H), 8.26 (d, *J* = 5.3 Hz, 1H), 8.01 (s, 1H), 7.60-7.66 (m, 1H), 7.23 (s, 1H), 7.07 (d, *J* = 4.6 Hz, 1H), 5.64 (bs, 2H), 3.96 (s, 3H), 2.38 (s, 3H)
2-(2,3-Dihydrobenzo[b][1,4]dioxin-6-yl)-3-(pyrimidin-4-yl)imidazo[1,2-a]pyrimidine	30		5%	MS (ESI+) for CHNOS *m/z* 295.97 $[M+H]^+$; LC purity 92.6% (Ret. Time- 3.96 min); ^{1}H NMR (400 MHz, DMSO-d_6): δ 11.21 (bs, 1H), 8.91 (s, 1H), 8.44 (d, *J* = 5.3Hz, 1H), 7.34 (bs, 1H), 7.02-7.15 (m, 2H), 6.88 (d, *J* = 8.3Hz, 1H), 5.76 (bs, 2H), 4.28 (s, 4H)
5-(2-Methylpyridin-4-yl)-4-(quinoxalin-6-yl)-1H-imidazol-2-amine	31		5%	MS (ESI+) for CHNOS *m/z* 300.00 $[M+H]^+$; LC purity 98.9% (Ret. Time- 4.72min); ^{1}H NMR (400 MHz, DMSO-d_6): δ11.49 (bs, 1H), 8.90 (d, *J* = 10Hz, 2H), 8.30 (d, *J* = 5.0 Hz, 1H), 8.09 (s, 1H), 8.02 (d, *J* = 8.8 Hz, 1H), 7.88 (d, *J* = 8.6 Hz, 1H), 7.31 (s,1H), 7.17 (d, *J* = 4.4 Hz, 1H), 5.72 (bs, 2H), 2.40(s, 3H)

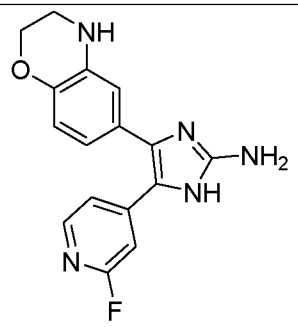
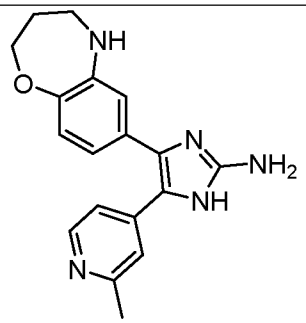
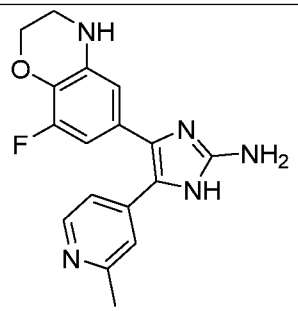
4-(2,3-Dihydrobenzo[b][1,4]dioxin-6-yl)-5-(2-methylpyridin-4-yl)-1H-imidazol-2-amine	32		11%	Purified using 100 to 200 mesh silica gel in 5% MeOH /DCM. MS (ESI+) for CHNOS *m/z* 309.16 $[M+H]^+$; LC purity 99.7% (Ret.Time-3.57 min); ^{1}H NMR (400 MHz, DMSO-d_6): δ 10.92 (bs, 1H), 8.19 (d, *J* = 5.2 Hz, 1H), 7.01-7.91 (m, 2H), 6.82-6.99 (m, 3H), 5.34 (bs, 2H), 4.26 (s, 4H), 2.36 (s, 3H)
6-(2-Amino-5-(2-methylpyridin-4-yl)-1H-imidazol-4-yl)-2-methyl-2H-benzo[b][1,4]oxazin-3(4H)-one	33		6%	Purified by prep HPLC. MS (ESI+) for CHNOS m/z 336.04 $[M+H]^+$; LC purity 98.7% (Ret. Time- 3.88min); 1H NMR (400 MHz, DMSO-d_6): δ 11.28 (bs, 1H), 10.67 (s, 1H), 8.23 (d, *J* = 5.4 Hz, 1H), 7.24 (s, 1H), 7.09 (d, *J* = 4.8 Hz, 1H), 6.93- 7.02 (m, 3H), 5.59 (bs, 2H), 4.69 (q, *J* = 6.6 Hz, 1H), 2.37 (s, 3H), 1.43 (d, *J* = 5.4 Hz,3H)
4-(2-Methyl-3,4-dihydro-2H-benzo[b][1,4]oxazin-6-yl)-5-(2-methylpyridin-4-yl)-1H-	34		45%	MS(ESI+) for CHNOS *m/z* 322.10 $[M+H]^+$; LC purity 97.1% (Ret. Time- 4.04min); ^{1}H NMR (400 MHz, DMSO-d_6): δ 11.06 (bs, 1H), 8.17 (d, *J* = 5.2 Hz, 1H), 7.28 (s, 1H), 7.12 (d, *J* = 4.5 Hz, 1H), 6.60-6.64 (m, 2H), 6.50 (d, *J* = 6.9

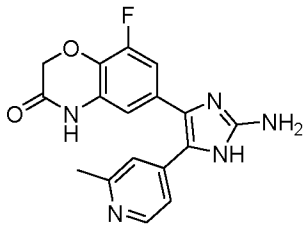
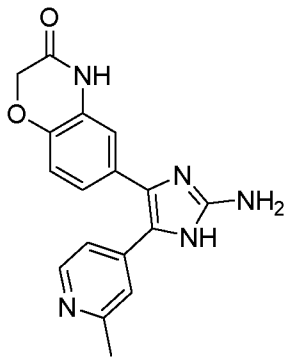
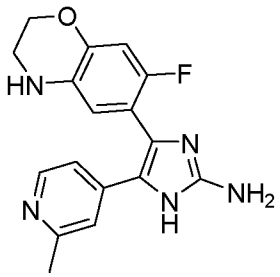
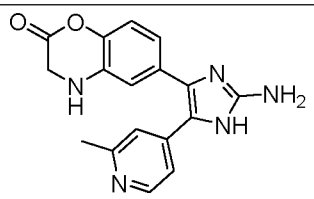
imidazol-2-amine				Hz, 1H), 5.84 (bs, 1H), 5.41 (bs, 2H), 4.09-4.14 (m, 1H), 3.33 (bs, 1H), 2.89-2.96 (m, 1H), 2.35 (s, 3H), 1.28 (d, *J* = 6.1 Hz, 3H)
2-(4-(2-Amino-5-(2-methylpyridin-4-yl)-1H-imidazol-4-yl)phenoxy)acetonitrile	35		29%	MS (ESI+) for CHNOS *m/z* 306.06 $[M+H]^+$; LC purity 98.5% (Ret. Time- 3.96 min); ^{1}H NMR (400 MHz, DMSO-d_6): δ 11.04 (bs , 1H), 8.19 (d, *J* = 5.2 Hz, 1H), 7.40 (d, *J* = 8.3 Hz, 2H), 7.22 (bs, 1H), 6.99-7.13 (m, 3H), 5.44 (bs, 2H), 5.20 (s, 2H), 2.34 (s, 3H).
4-(3,4-Dihydro-2H-benzo[b][1,4]oxazin-6-yl)-5-(2,6-dimethylpyridin-4-yl)-1H-imidazol-2-amine	36		14%	MS (ESI+) for CHNOS *m/z* 322.10 $[M+1]^+$; LC purity 99.4% (Ret. Time- 3.75min); ^{1}H NMR(400 MHz, DMSO-d_6 + *d*-TFA): 7.53 (s, 2H), 6.70-6.82 (m, 2H), 6.65 (d, *J* = 7.5 Hz, 1H), 4.20 (bs, 2H), 3.34 (bs, 2H), 2.56 (s, 6H)
4-(2-Methylbenzo[d]oxazol-5-yl)-5-(2-methylpyridin-4-yl)-1H-imidazol-2-amine	37		9%	MS (ESI+) for CHNOS *m/z* 306.06 $[M+1]^+$; LC purity 90.0% (Ret. Time- 4.70min); ^{1}H NMR (400 MHz, DMSO-d_6): δ 11.46 (bs, 1H), 8.20 (d, *J* = 5.3 Hz, 1H), 7.62-7.67 (m, 2H), 7.37 (d, *J* = 8.5 Hz, 1H), 7.24 (s, 1H), 7.04 (d, *J* = 5.3 Hz, 1H), 5.69 (bs, 2H),

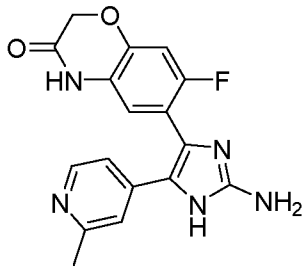
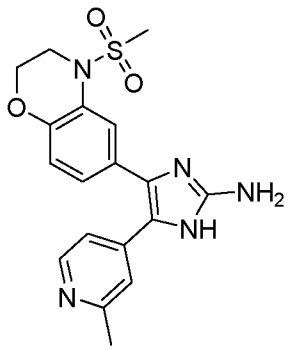
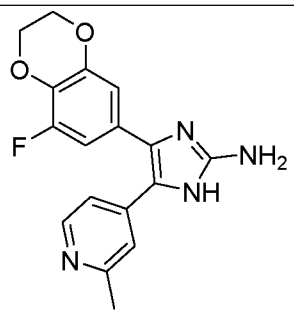
				2.61 (s, 3H), 2.35 (s, 3H)
4-(2,3-Dihydrobenzofuran-5-yl)-5-(pyridin-4-yl)-1H-imidazol-2-amine	38		8%	MS (ESI+) for CHNOS *m/z* 279.04 $[M+H]^+$; LC purity 99.6% (Ret. Time- 3.48 min); ^{1}H NMR (400 MHz, DMSO-d_6 + *d*-TFA): δ 8.79 (d, *J* = 6.8 Hz, 2H), 7.81 (d, *J* = 6.8 Hz, 2H), 7.42 (s, 1H), 7.28 (d, *J* = 7.2 Hz, 1H), 6.92 (d, *J* = 8.2 Hz, 1H), 4.62 (t, *J* = 8.8 Hz, 2H), 3,23 (t, *J* = 8.8 Hz, 2H)
4-(3,4-Dihydro-2H-benzo[b][1,4]oxazin-6-yl)-5-(pyridin-4-yl)-1H-imidazol-2-amine	39		2%	MS (ESI+) for CHNOS *m/z* 294.08 $[M+H]^+$; LC purity 99.7% (Ret. Time- 4.62 min); ^{1}H NMR (400 MHz, DMSO-d_6 + D_2O): δ 8.64 (d, *J* = 6.4 Hz, 2H), 7.65 (d, *J* = 6.4 Hz, 2H), 6.77 (d, *J* = 8.1 Hz, 1H), 6.65 (d, *J* = 1.7 Hz, 1H), 6.60 (dd, *J* = 1.7, 8.1 Hz, 1H), 4.16 (bs, 2H), 3.28 (bs, 2H)
4-(2-Amino-4-(3,4-dihydro-2H-benzo[b][1,4]oxazin-6-yl)-1H-imidazol-5-yl)-*N*-methylpyridin-2-amine	40		18%	MS (ESI+) for CHNOS *m/z* 323 $[M+H]^+$; LC purity 92.5% (Ret. Time- 4.79 min); ^{1}H NMR (400 MHz, DMSO-d_6 + d-TFA): δ 7.80 (d, *J* = 6.5 Hz, 1H), 6.74-6.98 (m, 4H), 6.60 (d, *J* = 6.5 Hz, 1H), 4.22 (bs, 2H), 3.39 (bs, 2H), 2.87 (s, 3H)

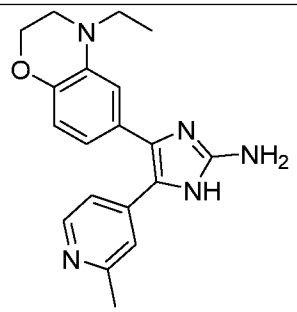
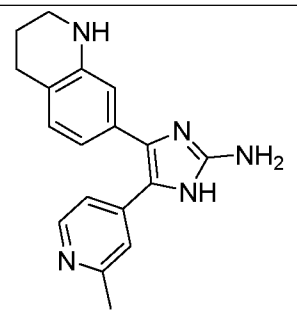
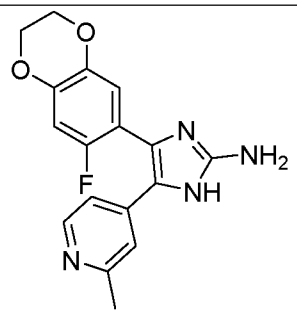
4-(2-Methyl-2,3-dihydrobenzofuran-5-yl)-5-(2-methylpyridin-4-yl)-1H-imidazol-2-amine	41 Racemic		19%	MS (ESI+) for CHNOS *m/z* 307.06 $[M+H]^+$; LC purity 93.6% (Ret. Time- 4.09min); ^{1}H NMR (400 MHz, DMSO-d_6): δ 10.91 (bs, 1H), 8.16 (s, 1H), 6.98-7.38 (m, 4H), 6.65-6.69 (m, 1H), 5.28-5.46 (m, 2H), 4.94 (bs, 1H), 3.26-3.29 (m, 1H), 2.74-2.79 (m, 1H), 2.34 (s, 3H), 1.40 (d, J = 6.0 Hz, 3H)
4-(2-Amino-4-(3,4-dihydro-2H-benzo[b][1,4]oxazin-6-yl)-1H-imidazol-5-yl)pyridin-2-amine	42		12%	MS (ESI+) for CHNOS *m/z* 309.2 $[M+H]^+$; LC purity 98.1% (Ret. Time- 3.27 min); ^{1}H NMR (400 MHz, DMSO-d_6): δ 10.68 (bs, 1H), 7.66 (d, J = 4.7 Hz, 1H), 6.41-6.69 (m, 5H), 5.77 (bs, 1H), 5.64 (bs, 2H), 5.20 (bs, 2H), 41.2 (bs, 2H), 3.28 (bs, 2H)
4-(3,4-Dihydro-2H-benzo[b][1,4]oxazin-6-yl)-5-(2-methylpyridin-4-yl)-1H-imidazol-2-amine	43		36%	CHNOS *m/z* 308.17 $[M+H]^+$; LC purity 99.3% (Ret. Time-3.79min); ^{1}H NMR (400 MHz, DMSO-d_6): δ 11.13 (bs, 1H), 8.18 (d, J = 5.3 Hz, 1H), 7.29 (s, 1H), 7.13 (d, J = 4.7 Hz, 1H), 6.63 (bs, 2H), 6.50 (dd, J = 1.6, 8.1 Hz, 1H), 5.83 (bs, 1H), 5.47 (bs, 2H), 4.13 (bs, 2H), 3.32 (bs, 2H), 2.35 (s, 3H)

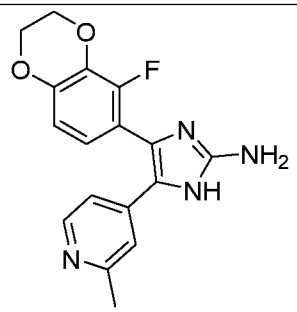
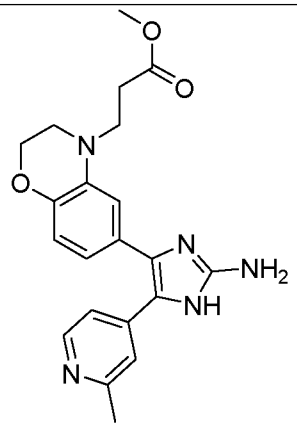
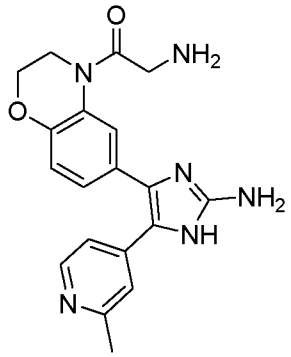
4-(4-Methyl-3,4-dihydro-2H-benzo[b][1,4]oxazin-6-yl)-5-(2-methylpyridin-4-yl)-1H-imidazol-2-amine	44		6%	CHNOS *m/z* 322.09 $[M+H]^+$; LC purity 97.3% (Ret. Time- 4.05min); ^{1}H NMR (400 MHz, DMSO-d_6 + D_2O): δ 8.17 (d, J = 5.9 Hz, 1H), 7.28 (s, 1H), 7.14 (d, J = 4.2 Hz, 1H), 6.56-6.70 (m, 3H), 4.22 (bs, 2H), 3.21 (bs, 2H), 2.71 (s, 3H), 2.34 (s, 3H)
5-(2-Chloropyridin-4-yl)-4-(3,4-dihydro-2H-benzo[b][1,4]oxazin-6-yl)-1H-imidazol-2-amine	45		11%	MS (ESI+) for CHNOS m/z 328.10 $[M+H]^+$; LC purity 98.3% (Ret. Time- 4.41 min); 1H NMR (400 MHz, DMSO-d_6): δ 11.14 (bs, 1H), 8.11 (d, J = 5.3 Hz, 1H), 7.42 (s, 1H), 7.32 (bs, 1H), 6.60-6.70 (m, 2H), 6.51 (d, J = 8.0 Hz, 1H), 5.90 (bs, 1H), 5.52 (bs, 2H), 4.15 (bs, 2H), 3.29 (bs, 2H)
4-(3,4-Dihydro-2H-benzo[b][1,4]oxazin-6-yl)-5-(2-(trifluoromethyl)pyridin-4-yl)-1H-imidazol-2-amine	46		25%	MS (ESI+) for CHNOS *m/z* 362.12 $[M+H]^+$; LC purity 99.1% (Ret. Time- 4.71 min); ^{1}H NMR (400 MHz, DMSO-d_6 + d-TFA): δ 8.65 (d, J = 5.1 Hz, 1H), 7.83 (s, 1H), 7.52 (d, J = 4.6 Hz, 1H), 6.81-6.89 (m, 2H), 6.76 (d, J = 8.1 Hz, 1H), 4.22 (bs, 2H), 3.34 (bs, 2H)

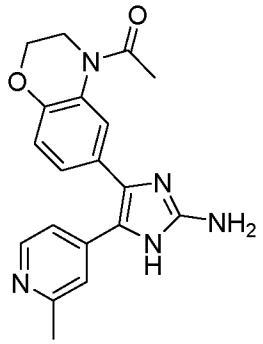
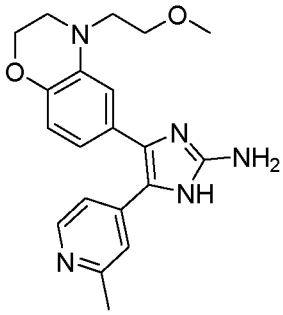
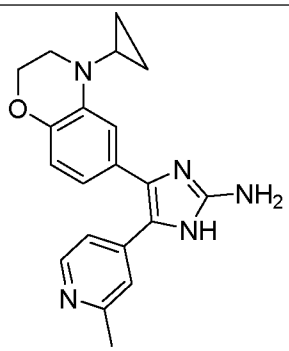
4-(3,4-Dihydro-2H-benzo[b][1,4]oxazin-6-yl)-5-(2-fluoropyridin-4-yl)-1H-imidazol-2-amine	47		19%	MS (ESI+) for CHNOS *m/z* 312.06 $[M+H]^+$; LC purity 99.4% (Ret. Time- 4.14 min); ^{1}H NMR (400 MHz, DMSO-d_6 + d-TFA): δ 8.16 (d, J = 5.3 Hz, 1H), 7.22 (d, J = 5.1 Hz, 1H), 7.09 (s, 1H), 6.80-6.89 (m, 2H), 6.78 (d, J = 8.0 Hz, 1H), 4.23 (bs, 2H), 3.38 (bs, 2H)
5-(2-Methylpyridin-4-yl)-4-(2,3,4,5-tetrahydrobenzo[b][1,4]oxazepin-7-yl)-1H-imidazol-2-amine	48		16%	MS (ESI+) for CHNOS *m/z* 322.17 $[M+H]^+$; LC purity 99.7% (Ret. Time- 3.84min); ^{1}H NMR (400 MHz, DMSO-d_6 + d-TFA): δ 8.68 (d, J = 6.4 Hz, 1H), 7.77 (s, 1H), 7.63 (d, J = 6.2 Hz, 1H), 7.46 (s, 1H), 7.37 (d, J = 8.3 Hz, 1H), 7.26 (d, J = 8.3 Hz, 1H), 4.17 (bs, 2H), 3.36 (bs, 2H), 2.61 (s, 3H), 2.16 (bs, 2H)
4-(8-Fluoro-3,4-dihydro-2H-benzo[b][1,4]oxazin-6-yl)-5-(2-methylpyridin-4-yl)-1H-imidazol-2-amine	49		15%	MS (ESI+) for CHNOS *m/z* 326.15 $[M+H]^+$; LC purity 98.2% (Ret. Time- 3.92 min); ^{1}H NMR (400 MHz, DMSO-d_6 + d-TFA): δ 8.65 (d, J = 6.4 Hz, 1H), 7.80 (s, 1H), 7.60 (d, J = 5.1 Hz, 1H), 6.52-6.58 (m, 2H), 4.22 (bs, 2H), 3.35 (bs, 2H), 2.63 (s, 3H)

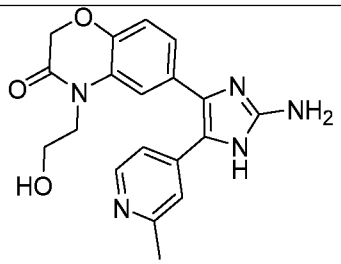
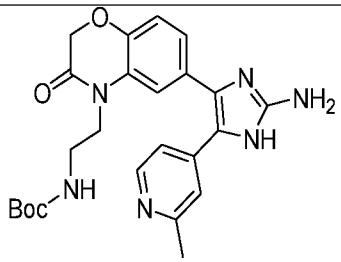
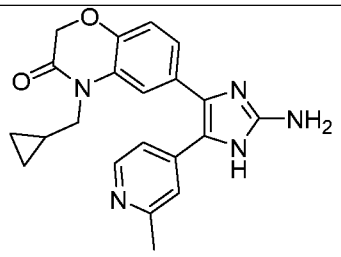
6-(2-Amino-5-(2-methylpyridin-4-yl)-1H-imidazol-4-yl)-8-fluoro-2H-benzo[b][1,4]oxazin-3(4H)-one	50		12%	MS (ESI+) for CHNOS *m/z* 340.14 $[M+H]^+$; LC purity 98.6% (Ret. Time- 3.83 min); ^{1}H NMR (400 MHz, DMSO-d_6 + D_2O): δ 8.21 (d, J = 5.3 Hz, 1H), 7.20 (s, 1H), 7.07 (d, J = 4.6 Hz, 1H), 6.76-6.88 (m, 2H), 4.64 (s, 2H), 2.36 (s, 3H)
6-(2-Amino-5-(2-methylpyridin-4-yl)-1H-imidazol-4-yl)-2H-benzo[b][1,4]oxazin-3(4H)-one	51		9%	MS (ESI+) for CHNOS *m/z* 322.24 $[M+H]^+$; LC purity 99.8% (Ret. Time- 3.50 min); ^{1}H NMR (400 MHz, DMSO-d_6 + d-TFA): δ 8.65 (d, J = 6.5 Hz, 1H), 7.78 (s, 1H), 7.58 (d, J = 6.2 Hz, 1H), 6.68-7.10 (m, 3H), 4.65 (s, 2H), 2.62 (s, 3H)
4-(7-Fluoro-3,4-dihydro-2H-benzo[b][1,4]oxazin-6-yl)-5-(2-methylpyridin-4-yl)-1H-imidazol-2-amine	52		9%	MS (ESI+) for CHNOS *m/z* 326.21 $[M+H]^+$; LC purity 92.9% (Ret. Time- 3.54 min); ^{1}H NMR (400 MHz, DMSO-d_6 + D_2O): δ 8.12 (d, J = 5.3 Hz, 1H), 7.15 (bs, 1H), 6.97 (bs, 1H), 6.50-6.70 (m, 2H), 4.15 (bs, 2H), 3.35 (bs, 2H), 2.31 (s, 3H)
6-(2-Amino-5-(2-methylpyridin-4-yl)-1H-imidazol-4-yl)-3,4-dihydro-	53		11%	MS (ESI+) for CHNOS *m/z* 322.14 $[M+H]^+$; LC purity 98.6% (Ret. Time- 3.57min); ^{1}H NMR (400 MHz, DMSO-d_6 + d-TFA): δ 8.62 (d, J = 6.5 Hz, 1H), 7.77 (s, 1H), 7.57 (d,

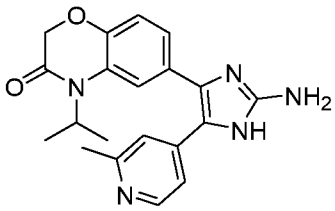
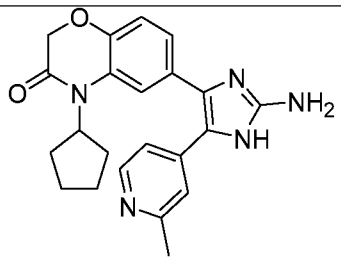
2H-benzo[b][1,4]oxazin-2-one				*J* = 6.4 Hz, 1H), 6.67-7.09 (m, 3H), 4.63 (s, 2H), 2.61 (s, 3H)
6-(2-Amino-5-(2-methylpyridin-4-yl)-1H-imidazol-4-yl)-7-fluoro-2H-benzo[b][1,4]oxazin-3(4H)-one	54		9%	MS (ESI+) for CHNOS *m/z* 340.14 $[M+H]^+$; LC purity 99.3% (Ret. Time- 3.55 min); ^{1}H NMR (400 MHz, DMSO-d_6 + D_2O): δ 8.43 (d, *J* = 6.1 Hz, 1H), 7.51 (s, 1H), 7.32 (d, *J* = 5.5 Hz, 1H), 7.05-7.10 (m, 1H), 6.95 (d, *J* = 7.1 Hz, 1H), 4.67 (s, 2H), 2.54 (s, 3H)
5-(2-Methylpyridin-4-yl)-4-(4-(methylsulfonyl)-3,4-dihydro-2H-benzo[b][1,4]oxazin-6-yl)-1H-imidazol-2-amine	55		18%	MS (ESI+) for CHNOS *m/z* 386.17 $[M+H]^+$; LC purity 96.3% (Ret. Time-3.71min);^{1}H NMR (400 MHz, DMSO-d_6 + D_2O): δ 8.17 (d, *J* = 5.2 Hz, 1H), 7.59 (s, 1H), 7.21 (s, 1H), 7.03-7.16 (m, 2H), 6.96 (d, *J* = 8.4 Hz, 1H), 4.27 (s, 2H), 3.78 (bs, 2H), 3.04 (s, 3H), 2.34 (s, 3H)
4-(8-fluoro-2,3-dihydrobenzo[b][1,4]dioxin-6-yl)-5-(2-methylpyridin-4-yl)-1H-imidazol-2-amine	56		13%	MS (ESI+) for CHNOS *m/z* 327.12 $[M+H]^+$; LC purity 97.6% (Ret. Time- 3.68 min); ^{1}H NMR (400 MHz, DMSO-d_6 + D_2O): δ 8.21 (d, *J* = 5.2 Hz, 1H), 7.21 (s, 1H), 7.08 (d, *J* = 4.6 Hz, 1H), 6.70-6.79 (m, 1H), 6.69 (s, 1H), 4.26 (bs, 4H), 2.37 (s, 3H)

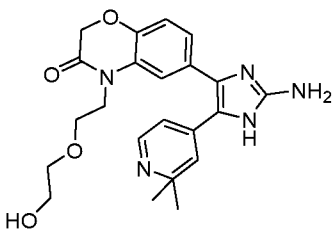
4-(4-Ethyl-3,4-dihydro-2H-benzo[b][1,4]oxazin-6-yl)-5-(2-methylpyridin-4-yl)-1H-imidazol-2-amine	57		30%	MS (ESI+) for CHNOS *m/z* 336.24 $[M+H]^+$; LC purity 91.8% (Ret. Time- 4.01 min); ^{1}H NMR (400 MHz, DMSO-d_6): δ 10.92 (bs, 1H), 8.17 (d, J = 5.3 Hz, 1H), 7.29 (bs, 1H), 7.15 (bs, 1H), 6.62-6.78 (m, 2H), 6.56 (d, J = 7.8 Hz, 1H), 5.32(bs, 2H), 4.18 (bs, 2H), 3.30 (bs, 2H), 3.23 (q, J = 7.0 Hz, 2H), 2.34 (s, 3H), 0.99 (t, J = 7.0 Hz, 3H)
5-(2-Methylpyridin-4-yl)-4-(1,2,3,4-tetrahydroquinolin-7-yl)-1H-imidazol-2-amine	58		22%	MS (ESI+) for CHNOS *m/z* 306.28 $[M+H]^+$; LC purity 98.2% (Ret. Time- 4.55 min); ^{1}H NMR (400 MHz, DMSO-d_6 + d-TFA): δ 8.66 (d, J = 6.4 Hz, 1H), 7.77 (s, 1H), 7.58 (d, J = 6.1 Hz, 1H), 7.28 (d, J = 7.8 Hz, 1H), 7.02 (d, J = 7.8 Hz, 1H), 6.98 (s, 1H), 3.30-3.35 (m, 2H), 2.78-2.85 (m, 2H), 2.63 (s, 3H), 1.90-1.95 (m, 2H)
4-(7-Fluoro-2,3-dihydrobenzo[b][1,4]dioxin-6-yl)-5-(2-methylpyridin-4-yl)-1H-imidazol-2-amine	59		21%	MS (ESI+) for CHNOS *m/z* 327.19 $[M+H]^+$; LC purity 99.8% (Ret. Time- 3.68 min); ^{1}H NMR (400 MHz, DMSO-d_6 + *d*-TFA): δ 8.63 (d, J = 6.4 Hz, 1H), 7.75 (s, 1H), 7.53 (d, J = 6.1 Hz, 1H), 6.89--7.15 (m, 2H), 4.24-4.34 (m, 4H), 2.62 (s, 3H)

4-(5-Fluoro-2,3-dihydrobenzo[b][1,4]dioxin-6-yl)-5-(2-methylpyridin-4-yl)-1H-imidazol-2-amine	60		38%	MS (ESI+) for CHNOS *m/z* 327.20 $[M+H]^+$; LC purity 95.1% (Ret. Time- 4.03 min); ^{1}H NMR (400 MHz, DMSO-d_6): δ 11.19 (bs, 1H), 8.18 (d, J = 5.3 Hz, 1H), 7.19 (s, 1H), 6.95 (d, J = 4.8 Hz, 1H), 6.73-6.88 (m, 2H), 5.57 (bs, 2H), 4.34 (s, 4H), 2.35 (s, 3H)
Methyl 3-(6-(2-amino-5-(2-methylpyridin-4-yl)-1H-imidazol-4-yl)-2,3-dihydro-4H-benzo[b][1,4]oxazin-4-yl)propanoate	61		3%	MS (ESI+) for CHNOS *m/z* 394.30 $[M+H]^+$; LC purity 99.4% (Ret. Time- 4.72min); ^{1}H NMR (400 MHz, DMSO-d_6 + D_2O): δ 8.13 (d, J = 5.3 Hz, 1H), 7.26 (s, 1H), 7.13 (d, J = 4.6 Hz, 1H), 6.60-6.74 (m, 2H), 6.53 (d, J = 7.9 Hz, 1H), 4.12 (bs, 2H), 3.82 (s, 3H), 3.40 (t, J = 6.5 Hz, 2H), 3.26 (bs, 2H), 2.33 (s, 3H), 2.23 (t, J = 6.5 Hz, 2H)
2-Amino-1-(6-(2-amino-5-(2-methylpyridin-4-yl)-1H-imidazol-4-yl)-2,3-dihydro-4H-benzo[b][1,4]oxazin-4-yl)ethan-1-one	62		16%	MS (ESI+) for CHNOS *m/z* 365.21 $[M+H]^+$; LC purity 98.4% (Ret. Time- 2.95 min); ^{1}H NMR (400 MHz, DMSO-d_6 + *d*-TFA): δ 8.67 (d, J = 6.1 Hz, 1H), 8.16 (bs, 1H), 7.81 (s, 1H), 7.65 (d, J = 4.4 Hz, 1H), 7.29 (d, J = 8.4 Hz, 1H), 7.14 (d, J = 5.3 Hz, 1H), 4.39 (s, 2H), 4.14 (s, 2H), 3.88 (bs, 2H), 2.63 (s, 3H)

1-(6-(2-Amino-5-(2-methylpyridin-4-yl)-1H-imidazol-4-yl)-2,3-dihydro-4H-benzo[b][1,4]oxazin-4-yl)ethan-1-one	63		43%	MS (ESI+) for CHNOS *m/z* 350.16 $[M+H]^+$; LC purity 97% (Ret. Time- 1.32 min); ^{1}H NMR (400 MHz, DMSO-d_6): δ 11.09 (bs, 1H), 8.19 (d, *J* = 6.1 Hz, 1H), 7.30 (s, 1H), 7.05-7.18 (m, 3H), 6.89 (d, *J* = 8.0 Hz, 1H), 5.52 (bs, 2H), 4.29 (bs, 2H), 3.86 (bs, 2H), 2.35 (s, 3H), 2.18 (s, 3H)
4-(4-(2-Methoxyethyl)-3,4-dihydro-2H-benzo[b][1,4]oxazin-6-yl)-5-(2-methylpyridin-4-yl)-1H-imidazol-2-amine	64		13%	MS (ESI+) for CHNOS *m/z* 366.26 $[M+H]^+$; LC purity 96.1% (Ret. Time- 4.59 min); ^{1}H NMR (400 MHz, DMSO-d_6): δ 11.12 (bs, 1H), 8.19 (d, *J* = 5.3 Hz, 1H), 7.29 (s, 1H), 7.14 (d, *J* = 4.5 Hz, 1H), 6.64-6.74 (m, 2H), 6.56 (dd, *J* = 1.2, 8.0 Hz, 1H), 5.50 (bs, 2H), 4.15 (bs, 2H), 3.30-3.46 (m, 6H), 3.19 (s, 3H), 2.36 (s, 3H)
4-(4-Cyclopropyl-3,4-dihydro-2H-benzo[b][1,4]oxazin-6-yl)-5-(2-methylpyridin-4-yl)-1H-imidazol-2-amine	65		15%	MS (ESI+) for CHNOS *m/z* 348.25 $[M+H]^+$; LC purity 98.5% (Ret. Time- 4.16 min); ^{1}H NMR (400 MHz, DMSO-d_6): δ 10.95 (bs, 1H), 8.20 (d, *J* = 5.2 Hz, 1H), 7.30 (s, 1H), 7.17 (bs, 2H), 6.62-6.78 (m, 2H), 5.39 (bs, 2H), 4.21 (bs, 2H), 3.25 (bs, 2H), 2.35 (s, 3H), 2.12 (bs, 1H), 0.35-0.60 (m, 4H)

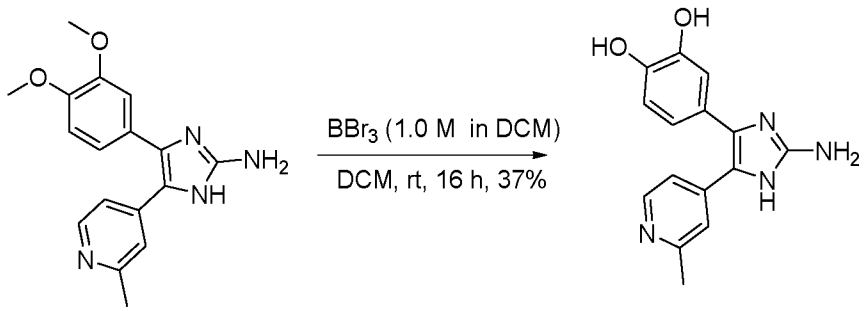
6-(2-Amino-4-(2-methylpyridin-4-yl)-1H-imidazol-5-yl)-4-(2-hydroxyethyl)-2H-benzo[b][1,4]oxazin-3(4H)-one	66		27%	Purified by combi flash (4g column), eluting with 0-15% MeOH in DCM followed by trituration with Et_2O MS (ESI+) for CHNOS *m/z* 366.21 $[M+H]^+$; LC purity 98.6% (Ret. Time- 3.38 min); ^1H NMR (400 MHz, DMSO-d_6 + *d*-TFA): δ 8.64 (d, J = 6.2 Hz, 1H), 7.78 (s, 1H), 7.60 (d, J = 6.2 Hz, 1H), 7.45 (s, 1H), 7.11-7.19 (m, 2H), 4.73 (s, 2H), 3.92 (bs, 2H), 3.52-3.56 (m, 2H), 2.62 (s, 3H)
tert-butyl (2-(6-(2-amino-4-(2-methylpyridin-4-yl)-1H-imidazol-5-yl)-3-oxo-2,3-dihydro-4H-benzo[b][1,4]oxazin-4-yl)ethyl)carbamate	Int 132		23%	Purified by combi flash (4g column), eluting with 0-10% MeOH in DCM followed by trituration with Et_2O MS (ESI+) for CHNOS *m/z* 465.13 $[M+H]^+$
6-(2-Amino-4-(2-methylpyridin-4-yl)-1H-imidazol-5-yl)-4-(cyclopropylmethyl)-2H-	67		23%	Enriched upto 92% by combi flash (12mg column), eluting with 0-10% MeOH in DCM followed by trituration with Et_2O MS (ESI+) for CHNOS *m/z* 376.21 $[M+H]^+$; LC purity

benzo[b][1,4]oxazin-3(4H)-one				96.9% (Ret. Time- 4.31min); ^{1}H NMR (400 MHz, DMSO-d_6 + *d*-TFA): δ 8.64 (d, J = 6.5 Hz, 1H), 7.79 (s, 1H), 7.59 (d, J = 6.5 Hz, 1H), 7.45 (s, 1H), 7.11-7.20 (m, 2H), 4.75 (s, 2H), 3.79 (d, J = 6.8 Hz, 2H), 2.62 (s, 3H), 1.13 (bs, 1H), 0.37-0.42 (m, 2H), 0.29-0.33 (m, 2H)
6-(2-Amino-4-(2-methylpyridin-4-yl)-1H-imidazol-5-yl)-4-isopropyl-2H-benzo[b][1,4]oxazin-3(4H)-one	68		22%	Enriched upto 70 % by combi flash (12g column), eluting with 0-10% MeOH in DCM followed by trituration with Et_2O MS (ESI+) for CHNOS *m/z* 364.20 $[M+H]^+$; LC purity 98.9% (Ret. Time- 3.89 min); ^{1}H NMR (400 MHz, DMSO-d_6): δ 11.08 (bs, 1H), 8.24 (d, J = 5.2 Hz, 1H), 7.24 (bs, 2H), 7.05-7.18 (m, 2H), 7.01 (d, J = 8.2 Hz, 1H), 5.50 (bs, 2H), 4.55 (s, 2H), 4.46-4.53 (m, 1H), 2.36 (s, 3H), 1.36 (d, J = 6.9 Hz, 6H)
6-(2-Amino-4-(2-methylpyridin-4-yl)-1H-imidazol-5-yl)-4-cyclopentyl-2H-	69		39%	Purified by combi flash (4g column), eluting with 0-10% MeOH in DCM followed by trituration with Et_2O MS (ESI+) for CHNOS *m/z* 390.27 $[M+H]^+$; LC purity

benzo[b][1,4]oxazin-3(4H)-one				93.6% (Ret. Time- 4.47 min); ^{1}H NMR (400 MHz, DMSO-d_6): δ 11.12 (bs, 1H), 8.25 (d, J = 5.2 Hz, 1H), 7.23 (s, 1H), 7.07-7.20 (m, 3H), 7.02 (d, J = 8.2 Hz, 1H), 5.51 (bs, 2H), 4.69-4.50 (m, 1H), 4.58 (s, 2H), 2.36 (s, 3H), 1.86-1.93 (m, 2H), 1.70-1.80 (m 2H), 1.59 (bs, , 2H), 1.39-1.50 (m, 2H)
6-(2-Amino-4-(2-methylpyridin-4-yl)-1H-imidazol-5-yl)-4-(2-(2-hydroxyethoxy)ethyl)-2H-benzo[b][1,4]oxazin-3(4H)-one	70		16%	Enriched upto 90 % by combi flash (12mg column), eluting with 0-10% MeOH in DCM followed by trituration with Et_2O MS (ESI+) for CHNOS m/z 410.25 $[M+H]^+$; LC purity 97.5% (Ret. Time- 4.72 min); ^{1}H NMR (400 MHz, DMSO-d_6 + d-TFA): δ 8.64 (d, J = 6.4 Hz, 1H), 7.79 (s, 1H), 7.58 (d, J = 5.2 Hz, 1H), 7.47 (s, 1H), 7.11-7.19 (m, 2H), 4.73 (s, 2H), 4.03 (t, J = 5.6 Hz, 2H), 3.57 (t, J = 5.6 Hz, 2H), 3.32-3.85 (m, 4H), 2.63 (s, 3H)

Synthetic route 2

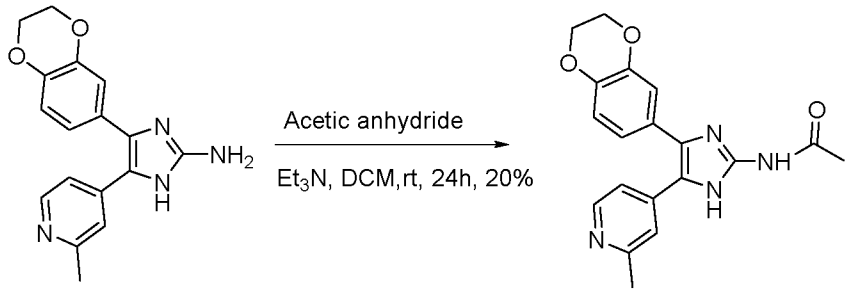
4-(2-Amino-5-(2-methylpyridin-4-yl)-1H-imidazol-4-yl)benzene-1,2-diol (Example 71)



To a solution of 4-(3,4-dimethoxyphenyl)-5-(2-methylpyridin-4-yl)-1H-imidazol-2-amine (300mg, 0.96mmol) in DCM (20mL) was added boron BBr_3 (1M in DCM, 3mL, 0.29mmol) slowly at 0°C. The reaction mixture was warmed to rt and further stirred for 16h. The TLC showed the reaction to be complete. The reaction was quenched with MeOH and concentrated under reduced pressure. The crude residue was enriched by trituration with Et_2O (20mL). The enriched residue was further purified by prep HPLC to afford 4-(2-Amino-5-(2-methylpyridin-4-yl)-1H-imidazol-4-yl)benzene-1,2-diol as a grey solid. Yield: 100mg (37%); MS (ESI+) for CHNOS *m/z* 282.99 $[M+H]^+$; LC purity 95.6%; ^1H NMR (400 MHz, DMSO-d_6 + d-TFA): δ 8.60 (d, J = 6.4Hz, 1H), 7.77 (d, J = 1.2Hz, 1H), 7.56 (dd J = 1.6, 6.4Hz, 1H), 6.85-6.91 (m, 2H), 6.78 (dd, J = 2.0, 8.1Hz, 1H), 2.49 (s, 3H).

Synthetic route 3

***N*-(4-(2,3-Dihydrobenzo[b][1,4]dioxin-6-yl)-5-(2-methylpyridin-4-yl)-1H-imidazol-2-yl)acetamide (Example 72)**

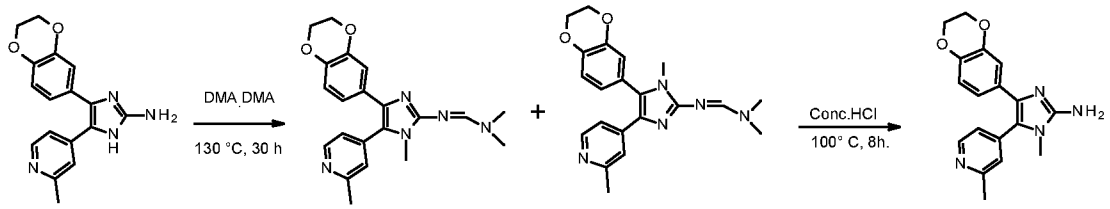


To a solution of 4-(2,3-dihydrobenzo[b][1,4]dioxin-6-yl)-5-(2-methylpyridin-4-yl)-1H-imidazol-2-amine (300mg, 0.97mmol) in DCM (20mL) were added triethylamine (197mg, 1.95mmol) and acetic anhydride (149mg, 1.46mmol) at rt. The reaction mixture was stirred at rt for 24h. The TLC showed the reaction to be complete. The reaction mixture was diluted with water (25mL) and extracted with DCM (3x20mL).

The organic layer was washed with brine (50mL), dried (Na_2SO_4), filtered and concentrated under reduced pressure. The crude residue was purified by column chromatography using silica gel (100-200 mesh), eluting with 0-100% EtOAc in hexane to afford *N*-(4-(2,3-dihydrobenzo[b][1,4]dioxin-6-yl)-5-(2-methylpyridin-4-yl)-1H-imidazol-2-yl)acetamide as a yellow solid. Yield: 70mg (20%); MS (ESI+) for CHNOS *m/z* 351.00 $[M+H]^+$; LC purity 96.2%; ^1H NMR (400 MHz, DMSO-d_6): δ 11.71 (bs, 1H), 11.13 (bs, 1H), 8.22-8.38 (m, 1H), 7.27-7.37 (m, 1H), 7.10-7.20 (m, 1H), 6.77-6.98 (m, 3H), 4.24-4.28 (m, 4H), 2.42 (s, 3H), 2.09 (s, 3H).

Synthetic Route 4

4-(2,3-dihydrobenzo[b][1,4]dioxin-6-yl)-1-methyl-5-(2-methylpyridin-4-yl)-1H-imidazol-2-amine (Example 73)



N'-(4-(2,3-dihydrobenzo[b][1,4]dioxin-6-yl)-1-methyl-5-(2-methylpyridin-4-yl)-1H-imidazol-2-yl)-N,N-dimethylformimidamide and N'-(5-(2,3-dihydrobenzo[b][1,4]dioxin-6-yl)-1-methyl-4-(2-methylpyridin-4-yl)-1H-imidazol-2-yl)-N,N-dimethylformimidamide

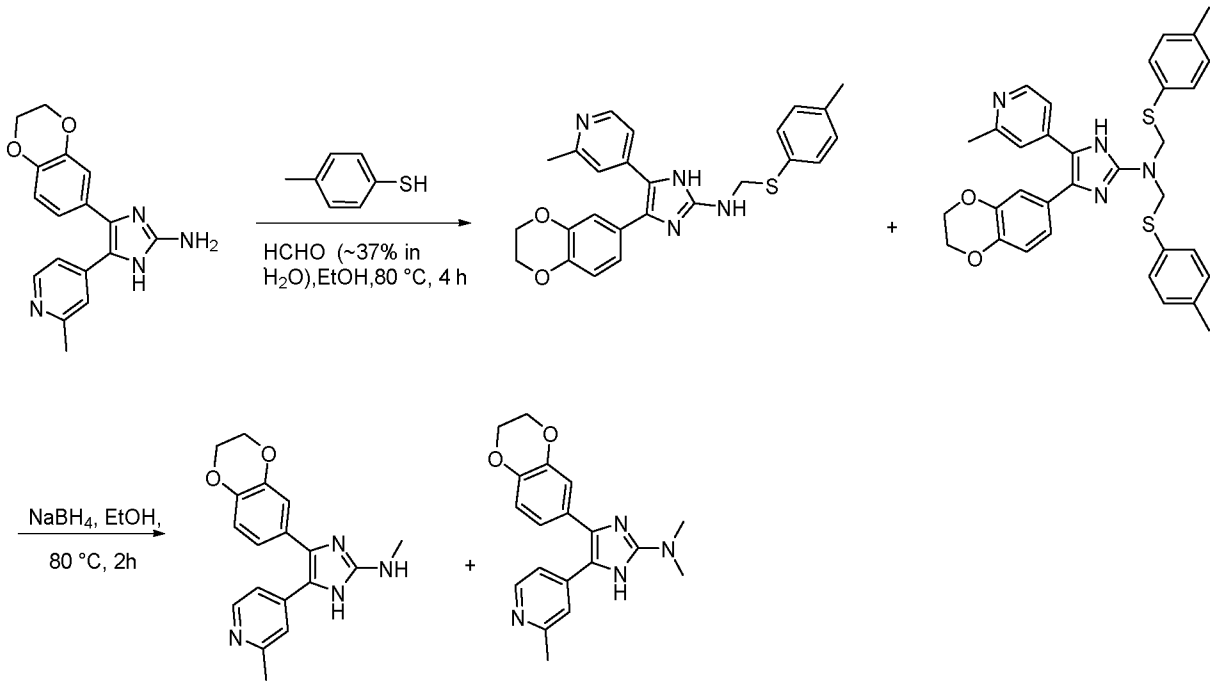
A solution 4-(2,3-dihydrobenzo[b][1,4]dioxin-6-yl)-5-(2-methylpyridin-4-yl)-1H-imidazol-2-amine (700mg, 0.22mmol) in DMF-DMA (3mL) was stirred at 130°C for 30h. The TLC showed the reaction to be complete. The reaction mixture was concentrated under reduced pressure to afford mixture of N'-(4-(2,3-dihydrobenzo[b][1,4]dioxin-6-yl)-1-methyl-5-(2-methylpyridin-4-yl)-1H-imidazol-2-yl)-N,N-dimethylformimidamide and N'-(5-(2,3-dihydrobenzo[b][1,4]dioxin-6-yl)-1-methyl-4-(2-methylpyridin-4-yl)-1H-imidazol-2-yl)-N,N-dimethylformimidamide as a brown solid. Yield: 840mg (crude). MS (ESI+) for CHNOS *m/z* 253.17 $[M+H]^+$. The crude product was used in the next step without further purification.

4-(2,3-dihydrobenzo[b][1,4]dioxin-6-yl)-1-methyl-5-(2-methylpyridin-4-yl)-1H-imidazol-2-amine

A crude mixture of N'-(4-(2,3-dihydrobenzo[b][1,4]dioxin-6-yl)-1-methyl-5-(2-methylpyridin-4-yl)-1H-imidazol-2-yl)-N,N-dimethylformimidamide and N'-(5-(2,3-dihydrobenzo[b][1,4]dioxin-6-yl)-1-methyl-4-(2-methylpyridin-4-yl)-1H-imidazol-2-yl)-N,N-dimethylformimidamide (68mg, 0.18mmol) was added to concentrated hydrochloride solution (2mL) and stirred at 100°C for 8h. The TLC showed the reaction to be complete. The reaction mixture was concentrated under reduced pressure to afford a mixture of two regioisomers. Both regioisomers were isolated by prep HPLC to afford 4-(2,3-dihydrobenzo[b][1,4]dioxin-6-yl)-1-methyl-5-(2-methylpyridin-4-yl)-1H-imidazol-2-amine as a yellow solid, yield = 5mg; MS (ESI+) for CHNOS *m/z* 323.06 $[M+H]^+$; LC purity 97%; ^{1}H NMR (400 MHz, DMSO-d_6): δ 8.10 (d, *J* = 5.2Hz,1H), 7.21 (s, 1H), 6.98 (d, *J* = 8.2Hz,1H), 6.92 (d, *J* = 4.9Hz,1H), 6.84 (d, *J* = 1.6 Hz,1H), 6.78 (dd, *J* = 1.6, 8.2Hz,1H), 5.66 (bs, 2H), 4.28-4.31 (m, 4H), 3.10(s, 3H), 2.31 (s, 3H).

Synthetic Route 5

4-(2,3-Dihydrobenzo[b][1,4]dioxin-6-yl)-*N*-methyl-5-(2-methylpyridin-4-yl)-1H-imidazol-2-amine (Example 74) & 4-(2,3-Dihydrobenzo[b][1,4]dioxin-6-yl)-*N*,*N*-dimethyl-5-(2-methylpyridin-4-yl)-1H-imidazol-2-amine (Example 75)



4-(2,3-Dihydrobenzo[b][1,4]dioxin-6-yl)-5-(2-methylpyridin-4-yl)-*N*-((p-tolylthio)methyl)-1H-imidazol-2-amine & 4-(2,3-Dihydrobenzo[b][1,4]dioxin-6-yl)-5-(2-methylpyridin-4-yl)-*N,N*-bis(p-tolylthio)methyl-1H-imidazol-2-amine

To a solution of 4-(2,3-dihydrobenzo[*b*][1,4]dioxin-6-yl)-5-(2-methylpyridin-4-yl)-1H-imidazol-2-amine (600 mg, 1.94mmol), 4-methylbenzenethiol (484mg, 3.89mmol) in EtOH (20 mL) was added formaldehyde (37% in H_2O, 0.6 mL) at rt. The reaction mixture was stirred at 90 °C for 4 h. The TLC showed reaction to be complete. The solvent was concentrated under reduced pressure. The residue was diluted with H_2O (20mL) and extracted with EtOAc (3X20mL). The organics were dried (Na_2SO_4), filtered and concentrated under reduced pressure to give ~1:1 mixture of two compounds as a brown waxy solid which was used in the next step without further purification. Yield: 1.3g (crude mixture).

4-(2,3-Dihydrobenzo[b][1,4]dioxin-6-yl)-5-(2-methylpyridin-4-yl)-*N*-((p-tolylthio)methyl)-1H-imidazol-2-amine

MS (ESI+) for CHNOS *m/z* 445.03 $[M+H]^+$ (20% by crude LCMS).

4-(2,3-Dihydrobenzo[b][1,4]dioxin-6-yl)-5-(2-methylpyridin-4-yl)-*N,N*-bis((p-tolylthio)methyl)-1H-imidazol-2-amine

MS (ESI+) for CHNOS *m/z* 581.04 $[M+H]^+$ (18% by crude LCMS).

4-(2,3-Dihydrobenzo[b][1,4]dioxin-6-yl)-*N*-methyl-5-(2-methylpyridin-4-yl)-1H-imidazol-2-amine & 4-(2,3-Dihydrobenzo[b][1,4]dioxin-6-yl)-*N,N*-dimethyl-5-(2-methylpyridin-4-yl)-1H-imidazol-2-amine

To a crude mixture of 4-(2,3-dihydrobenzo[b][1,4]dioxin-6-yl)-5-(2-methylpyridin-4-yl)-*N*-((p-tolylthio)methyl)-1H-imidazol-2-amine & 4-(2,3-dihydrobenzo[*b*][1,4]dioxin-6-yl)-5-(2-methylpyridin-4-yl)-*N,N*-bis((p-tolylthio)methyl)-1H-imidazol-2-amine (1.2g) in EtOH (50mL) was added $NaBH_4$ (770 mg, 20.3mmol) at rt. The reaction mixture was stirred at 80 °C for 2h. The TLC showed reaction to be complete. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure. The residue was diluted with ice-water (30mL), stirred for 15min and extracted with EtOAc (3X30mL). The organics were dried (Na_2SO_4), filtered and concentrated under reduced pressure. The crude residue was purified by prep HPLC.

4-(2,3-dihydrobenzo[b][1,4]dioxin-6-yl)-*N*-methyl-5-(2-methylpyridin-4-yl)-1H-imidazol-2-amine

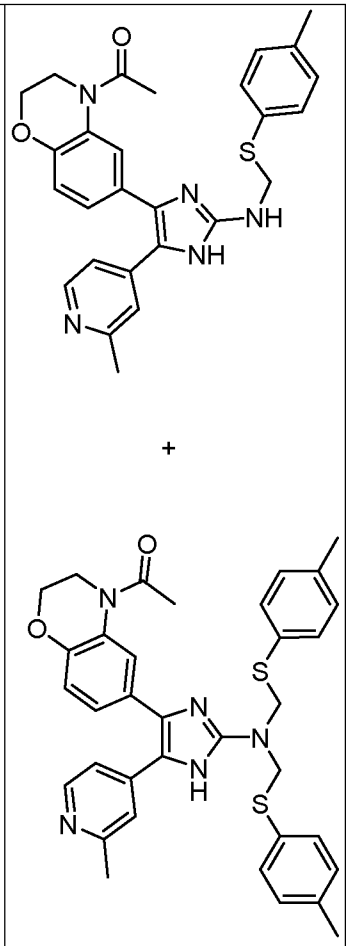
yellow solid. Yield: 35mg (4%). MS (ESI+) for CHNOS m/z 323.18 $[M+H]^+$; LC purity 99.7% (Ret. Time- 4.11 min); 1H NMR (400 MHz, DMSO-d_6 + *d*-TFA): δ 8.60 (d, J = 6.5 Hz, 1 H), 7.80 (s, 1H), 7.58 (d, J = 6.5 Hz, 1 H), 7.04 (d, J = 1.4 Hz, 1 H), 6.90-7.01 (m, 2H), 4.27 (bs, 4H), 2.97 (s, 3H), 2.61 (s, 3H).

4-(2,3-Dihydrobenzo[b][1,4]dioxin-6-yl)-*N,N*-dimethyl-5-(2-methylpyridin-4-yl)-1H-imidazol-2-amine

Yellow solid. Yield: 70 mg (8%). MS (ESI+) for CHNOS m/z 337.22 $[M+H]^+$; LC purity 93.7% (Ret. Time- 4.22 min); 1H NMR (400 MHz, DMSO-d_6 + *d*-TFA): δ 8.65 (d, J = 6.5 Hz, 1 H), 7.87 (s, 1H), 7.60 (d, J = 5.7 Hz, 1 H), 7.05 (d, J = 1.5 Hz, 1 H), 6.89-7.01 (m, 2H), 4.28 (bs, 4 H), 3.18 (s, 6H), 2.62 (s, 3H).

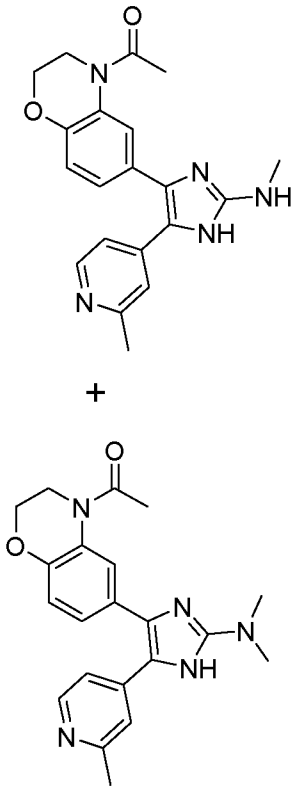
The following intermediates were prepared in a similar manner to 4-(2,3-dihydrobenzo[b][1,4]dioxin-6-yl)-5-(2-methylpyridin-4-yl)-N-((p-tolylthio)methyl)-1H-imidazol-2-amine & 4-(2,3-dihydrobenzo[b][1,4]dioxin-6-yl)-5-(2-methylpyridin-4-yl)-N,N-bis((p-tolylthio)methyl)-1H-imidazol-2-amine.

Name	Int	Structure	Yield	Spectral Data 1H NMR & LCMS

1-(6-(5-(2-Methylpyridin-4-yl)-2-(((p-tolylthio)methyl)amino)-1H-imidazol-4-yl)-2,3-dihydro-4H-benzo[b][1,4]oxazin-4-yl)ethan-1-one & 1-(6-(2-(bis((p-Tolylthio)methyl)amino)-5-(2-methylpyridin-4-yl)-1H-imidazol-4-yl)-2,3-dihydro-4H-benzo[b][1,4]oxazin-4-yl)ethan-1-one	133 & 134		Crude ~1:1 mixture	MS (ESI+) for CHNOS m/z 486.12$[M+H]^+$ MS (ESI+) for CHNOS m/z 622.23 $[M+H]^+$.

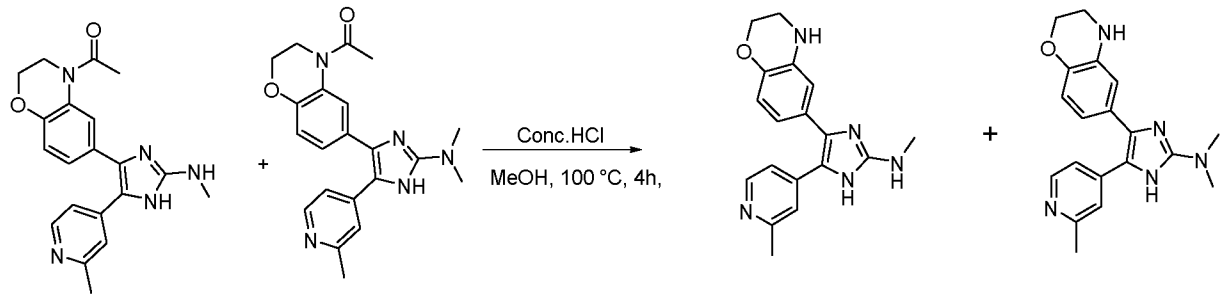
The following compounds were prepared in a similar manner to 4-(2,3-dihydrobenzo[b][1,4]dioxin-6-yl)-N-methyl-5-(2-methylpyridin-4-yl)-1H-imidazol-2-amine & 4-(2,3-Dihydrobenzo[b][1,4]dioxin-6-yl)-N,N-dimethyl-5-(2-methylpyridin-4-yl)-1H-imidazol-2-amine.

Name	Ex	Structure	Yield	Spectral Data 1H NMR & LCMS

1-(6-(5-(2-Methylpyridin-4-yl)-2-(((p-tolylthio)methyl)amino)-1H-imidazol-4-yl)-2,3-dihydro-4H-benzo[b][1,4]oxazin-4-yl)ethan-1-one & 1-(6-(2-(bis((p-Tolylthio)methyl)amino)-5-(2-methylpyridin-4-yl)-1H-imidazol-4-yl)-2,3-dihydro-4H-benzo[b][1,4]oxazin-4-yl)ethan-1-one	76 & 77		Crude ~1:1 mixture	MS (ESI-) for CHNOS *m/z* 362.17 $[M-H]^+$; MS (ESI+) for CHNOS *m/z* 378.20 $[M+H]^+$

Synthetic route 6

4-(3,4-Dihydro-2H-benzo[b][1,4]oxazin-6-yl)-N-methyl-5-(2-methylpyridin-4-yl)-1H-imidazol-2-amine (Example 78) & 4-(3,4-Dihydro-2H-benzo[b][1,4]oxazin-6-yl)-N,N-dimethyl-5-(2-methylpyridin-4-yl)-1H-imidazol-2-amine (Example 79)



To a solution of 1-(6-(2-(methylamino)-5-(2-methylpyridin-4-yl)-1H-imidazol-4-yl)-2,3-dihydro-4H-benzo[b][1,4]oxazin-4-yl)ethan-1-one and 1-(6-(2-(dimethylamino)-5-(2-methylpyridin-4-yl)-1H-imidazol-4-yl)-2,3-dihydro-4H-benzo[b][1,4]oxazin-4-yl)ethan-1-one (500 mg, 1.34mmol) in MeOH (15mL) was added conc. HCl (5.0mL) at rt. The reaction mixture was stirred at 100 °C for 4h. The TLC showed reaction to be complete. The reaction mixture was allowed to cool to rt, neutralized with saturated aq $NaHCO_3$ solution and extracted with 10% MeOH in DCM (3X10mL). The organics were washed with brine (20mL), dried (Na_2SO_4), filtered and concentrated under reduced pressure. The crude residue was purified by column chromatography using silica gel (100-200 mesh), eluting with 0-10% MeOH in DCM followed by trituration with Et_2O and drying under vacuum to afford 4-(3,4-dihydro-2H-benzo[b][1,4]oxazin-6-yl)-*N*-methyl-5-(2-methylpyridin-4-yl)-1H-imidazol-2-amine & 4-(3,4-dihydro-2H-benzo[b][1,4]oxazin-6-yl)-*N*,*N*-dimethyl-5-(2-methylpyridin-4-yl)-1H-imidazol-2-amine.

4-(3,4-dihydro-2H-benzo[b][1,4]oxazin-6-yl)-N-methyl-5-(2-methylpyridin-4-yl)-1H-imidazol-2-amine

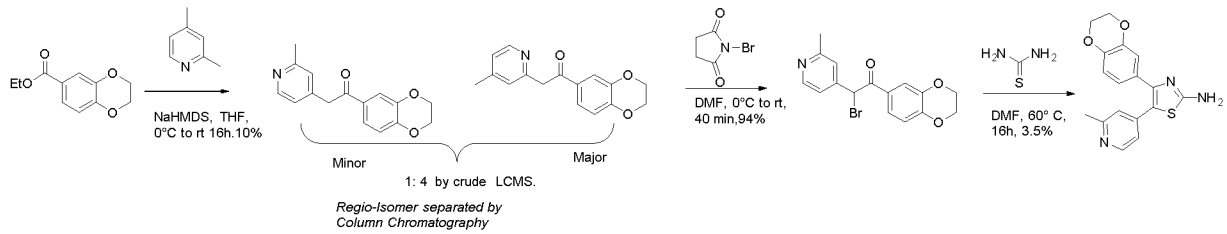
Yellow solid. Yield: 40mg (15%). MS (ESI+) for CHNOS m/z 322.06 $[M+H]^+$; LC purity 92.8% (Ret. Time- 3.81min); 1H NMR (400 MHz, DMSO-d_6): δ 11.44 (bs, 1H), 8.20 (d, J = 5.3 Hz, 1H), 7.33 (s, 1H), 7.14 (d, J = 5.2 Hz, 1H), 6.59-6.72 (m, 2H), 6.51 (d, J = 8.1 Hz, 1H), 5.97 (bs, 1H), 5.86 (bs, 1H), 4.14 (bs, 2H), 3.26 (bs, 2H), 2.80 (d, J = 4.9 Hz, 3H), 2.37 (s, 3H).

4-(3,4-Dihydro-2H-benzo[b][1,4]oxazin-6-yl)-N,N-dimethyl-5-(2-methylpyridin-4-yl)-1H-imidazol-2-amine

Yellow solid. Yield: 30mg (17%). MS (ESI+) for CHNOS m/z 336.06 $[M+H]^+$; LC purity 96.2% (Ret. Time- 4.14min); 1H NMR (400 MHz, DMSO-d_6): δ 11.19 (bs, 1H), 8.18 (d, J = 5.1 Hz, 1H), 7.35 (s, 1H), 7.14 (d, J = 5.0 Hz, 1H), 6.59-6.74 (m, 2H), 6.50 (d, J = 8.1 Hz, 1H), 5.85 (bs, 1H), 4.14 (bs, 2H), 3.26 (bs, 2H), 2.93 (s, 6H), 2.37 (s, 3H).

Synthetic Route 7

4-(2,3-Dihydrobenzo[b][1,4]dioxin-6-yl)-5-(2-methylpyridin-4-yl)thiazol-2-amine (Example 80)



1-(2,3-Dihydrobenzo[b][1,4]dioxin-6-yl)-2-(4-methylpyridin-2-yl)ethan-1-one

To a solution of 2,4-dimethylpyridine (1.7g, 15.85mmol) in THF (10mL) was added NaHMDS (1M in THF, 36mL, 36.2mmol) at rt slowly. The reaction mixture was stirred at rt for 1h and ethyl 2,3-dihydrobenzo[b][1,4]dioxine-6-carboxylate (3g, 14.41mmol) was added to it slowly at rt. The reaction mixture was further stirred at rt for 2 h. The TLC showed the reaction to be complete. The reaction mixture was poured into aq NH_4Cl (50mL) and extracted with EtOAc (3x50mL). The organics were dried (Na_2SO_4), filtered and concentrated under reduced pressure. The crude LCMS showed formation of two regioisomers as minor and major in 1:4 ratio. The crude residue was purified by column chromatography using silica gel (100-200 mesh), eluting with 0-50% EtOAc in hexane to isolate the both regioisomers.

1-(2,3-Dihydrobenzo[b][1,4]dioxin-6-yl)-2-(2-methylpyridin-4-yl)ethan-1-one

Yellow solid. 400mg (18%); MS (ESI+) for CHNOS *m/z* 270.20 $[M]^+$; LC purity 81.6%; ^1H NMR (400 MHz, DMSO-d_6) δ 8.34 (d, J = 5.0 Hz, 1H), 7.56 (dd, J = 2.0, 8.4 Hz, 1H), 7.52 (d, J = 2.0 Hz, 1H), 7.11 (s, 1H), 7.05 (d, J = 4.9 Hz, 1H), 6.99 (d, J = 8.4 Hz, 1H), 4.27-4.35 (m, 6 H), 2.42 (s, 3H). The exact structure was further established by nOe experiment.

1-(2,3-Dihydrobenzo[b][1,4]dioxin-6-yl)-2-(4-methylpyridin-2-yl)ethan-1-one

Yellow solid. Yield: 1.4 g (63%).MS (ESI+) for CHNOS *m/z* 270.20 $[M]^+$

2-Bromo-1-(2,3-dihydrobenzo[b][1,4]dioxin-6-yl)-2-(2-methylpyridin-4-yl)ethan-1-one

To a solution of 1-(2,3-dihydrobenzo[b][1,4]dioxin-6-yl)-2-(2-methylpyridin-4-yl)ethan-1-one (400mg, 51.5mmol) in DMF (20mL) was added NBS (278mg, 1.56mmol) at rt. The reaction mixture was stirred at rt for 40 min. The TLC showed

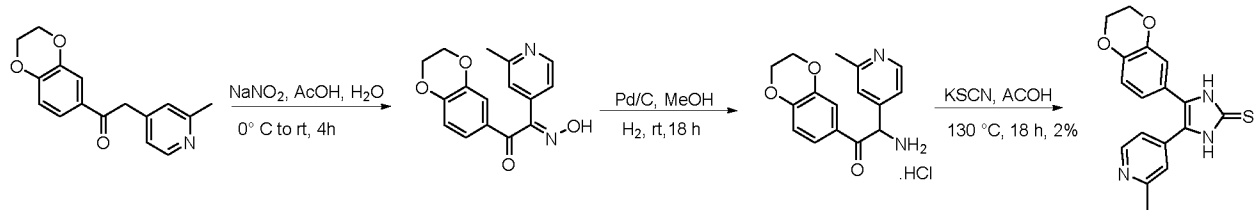
the reaction to be complete. The reaction mixture was diluted with water (20mL) and extracted with DCM (3x20mL). The combined organic layers were dried (Na_2SO_4), filtered and concentrated under reduced pressure. The crude residue was triturated with diethyl ether to afford 2-Bromo-1-(2,3-dihydrobenzo[b][1,4]dioxin-6-yl)-2-(2-methylpyridin-4-yl)ethan-1-one as a yellow solid. Yield: 605mg (95%); (MS (ESI+) for CHNOS *m/z* 347.98 $[M+H]^+$

4-(2,3-Dihydrobenzo[b][1,4]dioxin-6-yl)-5-(2-methylpyridin-4-yl)thiazol-2-amine

To a solution of 2-bromo-1-(2,3-dihydrobenzo[b][1,4]dioxin-6-yl)-2-(2-methylpyridin-4-yl)ethan-1-one (500mg, 1.44mmol) in DMF (20mL) was added thiourea (131mg, 1.72mmol) at rt. The reaction mixture was stirred at 60°C for 16h. The TLC showed the reaction to be complete. The reaction mixture was diluted with water (20mL) and extracted with DCM (3x20mL). The organic layer was washed with brine (50mL), dried (Na_2SO_4), filtered and concentrated under reduced pressure. The crude residue was purified by column chromatography using silica gel (100-200 mesh), eluting with 0-50% EtOAc in hexane to afford 4-(2,3-dihydrobenzo[b][1,4]dioxin-6-yl)-5-(2-methylpyridin-4-yl)thiazol-2-amine as a yellow solid. Yield: 16mg (3.5%); CHNOS *m/z* 325.93 $[M+H]^+$; LC purity 89.8%; ^1H NMR (400 MHz, DMSO-d_6): δ 8.24 (d, J = 5.2Hz, 1H), 7.33 (s, 2H), 7.02 (s, 1H), 6.88 (bs, 2H), 6.76-6.84 (m, 2H), 4.22-4.24 (m, 4H), 2.37 (s, 3H). The exact structure was confirmed by nOe experiment.

Synthetic Route 8

4-(2,3-Dihydrobenzo[b][1,4]dioxin-6-yl)-5-(2-methylpyridin-4-yl)-1,3-dihydro-2H-imidazole-2-thione (Example 81)



(*E*)-3-(dimethylamino)-1-(4-(4-fluorophenoxy)phenyl)-2-(pyridin-3-yl)prop-2-en-1-one

To a solution of 1-(2,3-dihydrobenzo[b][1,4]dioxin-6-yl)-2-(2-methylpyridin-4-yl)ethan-1-one (2g, 7.4mmol) in glacial acetic acid (15mL) was added a solution of $NaNO_2$ (1.6g, 22.2mmol) in H_2O (15mL) drop wise at 0°C. The reaction mixture was

stirred at rt for 4 h. The TLC showed the reaction to be complete. The reaction mixture was diluted with water (25mL), extracted with EtOAc (3x25mL). The organics were dried (Na_2SO_4), filtered and concentrated under reduced pressure. The crude residue was purified by column chromatography using silica gel (100-200 mesh), eluting with hexane to 40% EtOAc in hexane to afford (E)-1-(2,3-dihydrobenzo[b][1,4]dioxin-6-yl)-2-(hydroxyimino)-2-(2-methylpyridin-4-yl)ethan-1-one as a yellow solid. Yield: 560 mg (60% by LCMS). MS (ESI+) for CHNOS *m/z* 299.05 $[M+H]^+$. The compound was used in the next step without purification.

2-Amino-1-(2,3-dihydrobenzo[b][1,4]dioxin-6-yl)-2-(2-methylpyridin-4-yl)ethan-1-one.HCl

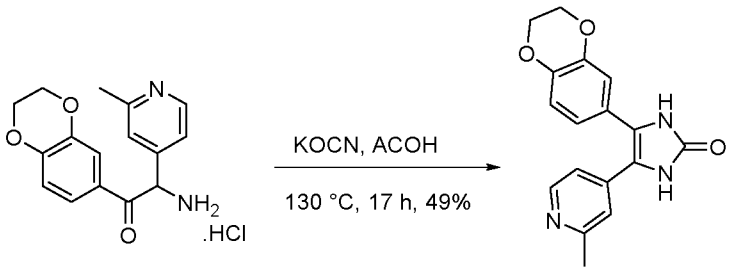
To a solution of (*E*)-1-(2,3-dihydrobenzo[b][1,4]dioxin-6-yl)-2-(hydroxyimino)-2-(2-methylpyridin-4-yl)ethan-1-one (225mg, 0.76mmol) in IPA (100mL) were added 6N HCl in IPA (3mL) Pd/C (200mg) at rt. The reaction mixture was stirred at rt under H_2 balloon pressure for 18h. The TLC showed the reaction to be complete. The reaction mixture was filtered through celite bed. The celite bed was further washed with IPA (25mL) and concentrated under reduced pressure to give 2-amino-1-(2,3-dihydrobenzo[b][1,4]dioxin-6-yl)-2-(2-methylpyridin-4-yl)ethan-1-one.HCl as a yellow solid. Yield: 300 mg (crude). MS (ESI+) for CHNOS *m/z* 285.0 $[M+H]^+$.

4-(2,3-Dihydrobenzo[b][1,4]dioxin-6-yl)-5-(2-methylpyridin-4-yl)-1,3-dihydro-2H-imidazole-2-thione

To a solution of 2-amino-1-(2,3-dihydrobenzo[b][1,4]dioxin-6-yl)-2-(2-methylpyridin-4-yl)ethan-1-one HCl (300mg, 1.06mmol) in glacial acetic acid (5mL) was added potassium thiocyanate (308 mg, 3.16mmol) at rt. The reaction mixture was stirred at 130°C for 18 h. The TLC showed the reaction to be complete. The reaction mixture was diluted with water (25mL) and extracted with EtOAC (3x25mL). The organics were dried (Na_2SO_4), filtered and concentrated under reduced pressure. The crude residue was purified by prep HPLC to afford 4-(2,3-dihydrobenzo[b][1,4]dioxin-6-yl)-5-(2-methylpyridin-4-yl)-1,3-dihydro-2H-imidazole-2-thione as an off white solid. Yield: 8mg (2%).^{1}H NMR (400 MHz, DMSO): δ 12.56 (bs, 2H), 8.33 (d, J = 5.2 Hz, 1 H) ,7.26 (s, 1H), 7.06 (d, J = 4.4 Hz, 1 H), 6.80- 6.92 (m, 3 H), 4.27 (bs, 4 H), 2.39 (s, 3H); MS (ESI+) for CHNOS *m/z* 325.93 $[M+H]^+$

Synthetic Route 9

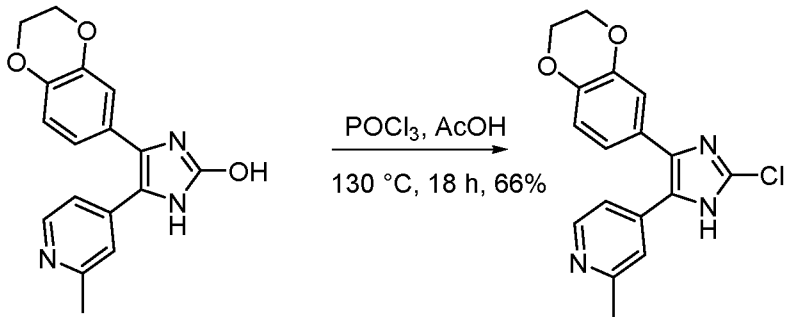
4-(2,3-Dihydrobenzo[b][1,4]dioxin-6-yl)-5-(2-methylpyridin-4-yl)-1,3-dihydro-2H-imidazol-2-one (Example 82)



To a solution of 2-amino-1-(2,3-dihydrobenzo[b][1,4]dioxin-6-yl)-2-(2-methylpyridin-4-yl)ethan-1-one.HCl (600mg, 37% by LCMS, 2.11mmol) in glacial acetic acid (5mL) was added potassium cyanate (514mg, 6.33mmol) at rt. The reaction mixture was stirred at 130°C for 17h. The TLC showed the reaction to be complete. The reaction mixture was diluted with water (25mL) and extracted with EtOAC (3x25mL). The organics were dried (Na_2SO_4), filtered and concentrated under reduced pressure. The crude residue was purified by column chromatography using silica gel (100-200 mesh), eluting with 0-5% MeOH in DCM to afford 4-(2,3-Dihydrobenzo[b][1,4]dioxin-6-yl)-5-(2-methylpyridin-4-yl)-1,3-dihydro-2H-imidazol-2-one as a yellow solid. Yield: 120 mg (49%). MS (ESI+) for CHNOS *m/z* 309.96 $[M + 1]^+$; LC purity 98.9%; ^1H NMR (400 MHz, DMSO-d_6): δ 10.56 (bs, 2H), 8.26 (d, *J* = 5.2 Hz, 1H), 7.16 (s, 1H), 7.01 (d, *J* = 5.0 Hz, 1H), 6.79-7.01 (m, 3H), 4.26 (s, 4H), 2.36 (s, 3H).

Synthetic Route 10

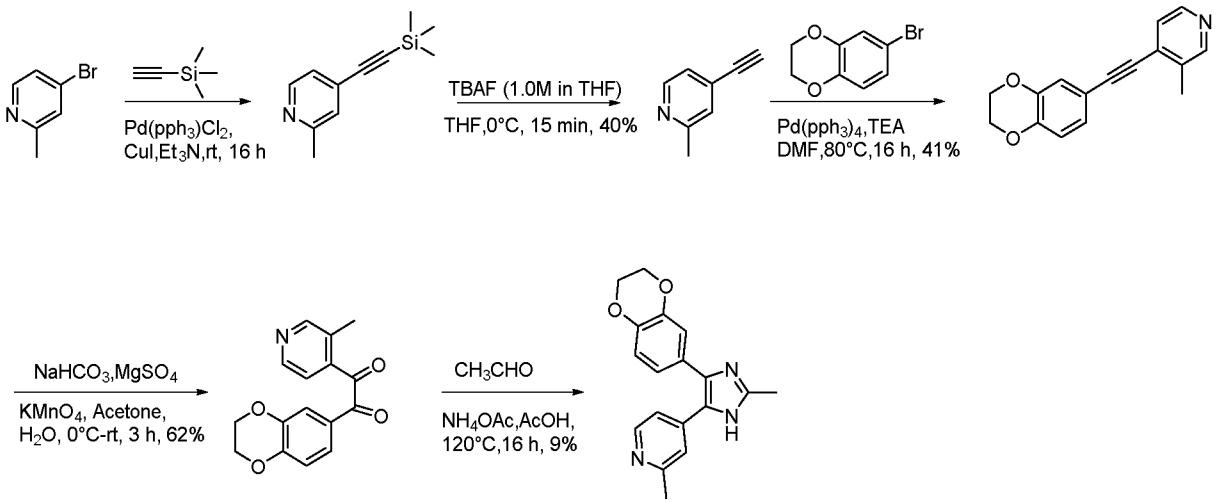
4-(2-Chloro-4-(2,3-dihydrobenzo[b][1,4]dioxin-6-yl)-1H-imidazol-5-yl)-2-methylpyridine (Example 83)



A solution of 4-(2,3-dihydrobenzo[*b*][1,4]dioxin-6-yl)-5-(2-methylpyridin-4-yl)-1H-imidazol-2-ol (300 mg, 0.970 mmol) in $POCl_3$ (5.0mL) was stirred at 130 °C for 18 h. The TLC showed reaction to be complete. The solvent was evaporated under

reduced pressure. The residue was basified to pH 8 using saturated aq $NaHCO_3$ solution (20mL) and extracted with EtOAC (3X20mL). The organics were washed with brine (50mL), dried (Na_2SO_4), filtered and concentrated under reduced pressure. The crude residue was purified by column chromatography using silica gel (100-200 mesh), eluting with 0-10% MeOH in DCM to give 4-(2-chloro-4-(2,3-dihydrobenzo[b][1,4]dioxin-6-yl)-1H-imidazol-5-yl)-2-methylpyridine as an off white solid. Yield: 210 mg (66%). MS (ESI+) for CHNOS m/z 328.13 $[M+H]^+$; LC purity 99.2% (Ret. Time- 4.77 min); 1H NMR (400 MHz, DMSO-d_6 at 353.2 K): δ 12.98 (bs, 1H), 8.30 (bs, 1H), 7.34 (s, 1H), 7.15 (d, J = 5.1 Hz, 1 H), 6.83-6.98 (m, 3H), 4.28 (s, 4H), 2.41 (s, 3H).

Synthetic Route 11
4-(4-(2,3-Dihydrobenzo[b][1,4]dioxin-6-yl)-2-methyl-1H-imidazol-5-yl)-2-methylpyridine (Example 84)



2-Methyl-4-((trimethylsilyl)ethynyl)pyridine

To a solution of 4-bromo-2-methylpyridine (5g, 29.2mmol) in trimethylamine (41mL, 29.2mmol) were added TMS-acetylene (6.2mL, 43.8mmol) and Pd (PPh_3)Cl_2 under N_2 atmosphere at rt. The reaction mixture was stirred at rt for 16h. The TLC showed the reaction to be complete. The reaction mixture was passed through a celite bed which was washed with EtOAc (150mL). The filtrate was washed with ice-cold water (2x200mL). The organic layer was washed with brine (100mL), dried (Na_2SO_4), filtered and concentrated under reduced pressure to afford 2-methyl-4-((trimethylsilyl)ethynyl)pyridine as a black liquid. Yield: 6.01g (crude); MS (ESI+) for

CHNOS *m/z* 190.11 $[M+H]^+$. The crude product was used in the next step without further purification.

4-Ethynyl-2-methylpyridine

To a solution of crude 2-methyl-4-((trimethylsilyl)ethynyl)pyridine (6.0g, 31.7mmol) in THF (50mL) was added TBAF (1M in THF, 35mL, 34.4mmol) at 0°C slowly. The reaction mixture was stirred at 0°C for 15 min. The TLC showed the reaction to be complete. The reaction mixture was quenched with brine solution (50mL) and extracted with EtOAc (3 x 50mL). The organic layer was dried (Na_2SO_4), filtered and concentrated under reduced pressure. The crude residue was purified by column chromatography using silica gel (100-200 mesh), eluting with 10% EtOAc in hexane. The solvent was removed at 35°C under reduced pressure to afford 4-ethynyl-2-methylpyridine as a yellow semi solid. Yield: 1.51g (40%); MS (ESI+) for CHNOS *m/z* 117.98 $[M+H]^+$. ^1H NMR (400 MHz, DMSO-d_6): δ 8.45 (d, J = 5.0 Hz, 1H), 7.33 (s, 1H), 7.24 (d, J = 5.0Hz, 1H), 4.55 (s, 1H), 2.46 (s, 3H).

4-((2,3-Dihydrobenzo[b][1,4]dioxin-6-yl)ethynyl)-3-methylpyridine

To a solution of 4-ethynyl-2-methylpyridine (1g, 8.5mmol) in DMF were added 6-bromo-2,3-dihydrobenzo[b][1,4]dioxine (1.82g, 8.5mmol) and triethylamine (7.2mL, 51.2mmol) at rt. The reaction mixture was purged with N_2 gas for 10 min and $Pd(PPh_3)_4$ was added to it. The reaction mixture was again purged with N_2 gas for 5 min. The reaction vessel was sealed and stirred at 80°C for 16h. The TLC showed the reaction to be complete. The reaction mixture was diluted with ice-cold water (50mL) and extracted with EtOAc (3x25mL). The organic layer was dried (Na_2SO_4), filtered and concentrated under reduced pressure. The crude residue was purified by column chromatography using silica gel (100-200 mesh), eluting with 22% EtOAc in hexane to afford 4-((2,3-dihydrobenzo[b][1,4]dioxin-6-yl)ethynyl)-3-methylpyridine as a yellow solid. Yield: 880mg (41%); MS (ESI^+) for CHNOS *m/z* 252.09 $[M+H]^+$. ^1H NMR (400 MHz, DMSO-d_6): δ 8.45 (d, J = 4.9Hz, 1H), 7.23-7.53 (m, 2H), 7.05-7.10 (m, 2H), 6.92 d, J = 8.2Hz, 1H), 4.28 (bs, 4H), 2.47 (s, 3H).

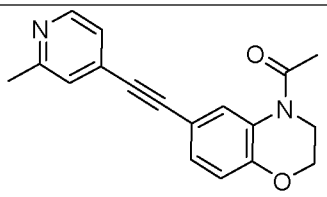
1-(2,3-Dihydrobenzo[b][1,4]dioxin-6-yl)-2-(3-methylpyridin-4-yl)ethane-1,2-dione

To a solution of 4-((2,3-dihydrobenzo[b][1,4]dioxin-6-yl)ethynyl)-3-methylpyridine (870mg, 3.5mmol) in acetone and water mixture (1:1, 20mL) were added $NaHCO_3$ (174mg, 2.07mmol) and $MgSO_4.7H_2O$ (1.34g, 5.19mmol) at rt. The reaction mixture was cooled to 0°C and $KMnO_4$ was added portion wise. The reaction mixture was stirred at 0°C for 3h. The TLC showed the reaction to be complete. The reaction mixture was quenched with aqueous saturated sodium bisulphite solution (25mL) and extracted with EtOAc (3x25mL). The organic layer was dried (Na_2SO_4), filtered and concentrated under reduced pressure to afford 1-(2,3-dihydrobenzo[b][1,4]dioxin-6-yl)-2-(3-methylpyridin-4-yl)ethane-1,2-dione as a yellow solid. Yield: 610mg (62%); MS (ESI+) for CHNOS *m/z* 284.14 $[M+H]^+$. ^1H NMR (400 MHz, DMSO-d_6): δ 8.72-8.79 (m, 1H), 7.54-7.69 (m, 2H), 7.48 (s, 2H), 7.07 (d, *J* = 8.8Hz, 1H), 4.38 (bs, 2H), 4.27 (bs, 2H), 2.57 (s, 3H).

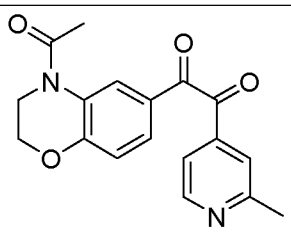
4-(4-(2,3-Dihydrobenzo[b][1,4]dioxin-6-yl)-2-methyl-1H-imidazol-5-yl)-2-methylpyridine

To a solution of 1-(2,3-dihydrobenzo[b][1,4]dioxin-6-yl)-2-(3-methylpyridin-4-yl)ethane-1,2-dione (300mg, 1.06mmol) in acetic acid (5mL) were added ammonium acetate (816mg, 10.6mmol) and acetaldehyde (55mg, 1.27mmol) at rt. The reaction mixture was stirred at 120°C for 16h. The TLC showed the reaction to be complete. The reaction mixture was allowed to cool to rt, diluted with ice-cold water (25mL), neutralized to pH 5-6 with aqueous ammonia solution and extracted with EtOAc (2x25mL). The organic layer was dried (Na_2SO_4), filtered and concentrated under reduced pressure. The crude residue was purified by prep HPLC to afford 4-(4-(2,3-dihydrobenzo[b][1,4]dioxin-6-yl)-2-methyl-1H-imidazol-5-yl)-2-methylpyridine as an off white solid. Yield: 30mg (9%); MS (ESI+) for CHNOS *m/z* 308.02 $[M+H]^+$; LC purity 99.8%; ^1H NMR (400 MHz, DMSO-d_6 + d-TFA): δ 8.77 (d, *J* = 6.4Hz, 1H), 7.95 (s, 1H), 7.72 (dd *J* = 1.5, 6.4Hz, 1H), 7.09 (d, *J* = 1.8Hz, 1H), 6.96-7.04 (m, 2H), 4.28-4.34 (m, 4H), 2.68 (s, 3H), 2.66 (s, 3H).

The following intermediate was prepared in a similar manner to 4-((2,3-dihydrobenzo[b][1,4]dioxin-6-yl)ethynyl)-3-methylpyridine.

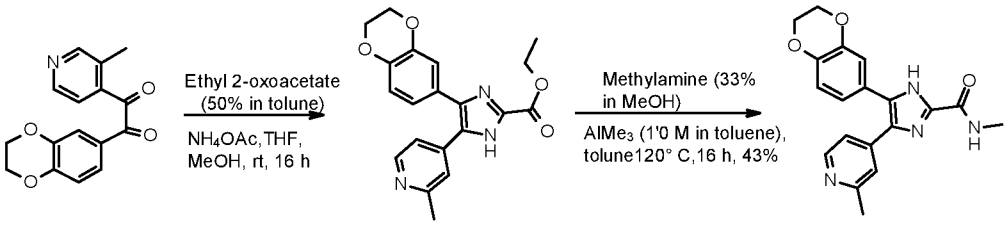
Name	Int	Structure	Yield	Spectral Data 1H NMR & LCMS
1-(6-((2-Methylpyridin-4-yl)ethynyl)-2,3-dihydro-4H-benzo[b][1,4]oxazin-4-yl)ethan-1-one	135		59%	MS (ESI+) for CHNOS *m/z* 293.11 $[M+H]^+$; ^{1}H NMR (400 MHz, DMSO-d_6): 8.46 (d, *J* = 5.1 Hz 1H), 7.95 (s, 1H), 7.39 (s, 1H), 7.26-7.31 (m, 2H), 6.94 (d, *J* = 8.3 Hz 1H), 4.30-4.38 (m, 2H), 3.85-3.90 (m, 2H), 2.90 (s, 3H), 2.72 (s, 3H)

The following intermediate was prepared in a similar manner 1-(2,3-dihydrobenzo[b][1,4]dioxin-6-yl)-2-(3-methylpyridin-4-yl)ethane-1,2-dione.

Name	Int	Structure	Yield	Spectral Data 1H NMR & LCMS
1-(4-Acetyl-3,4-dihydro-2H-benzo[b][1,4]oxazin-6-yl)-2-(2-methylpyridin-4-yl)ethane-1,2-dione	136		Crude	MS(ESI+) for CHNOS *m/z* 325.12 $[M+H]^+$

Synthetic Route 12

5-(2,3-Dihydrobenzo[b][1,4]dioxin-6-yl)-N-methyl-4-(2-methylpyridin-4-yl)-1H-imidazole-2-carboxamide (Example 85)



Ethyl 4-(2,3-dihydrobenzo[b][1,4]dioxin-6-yl)-5-(2-methylpyridin-4-yl)-1H-imidazole-2-carboxylate

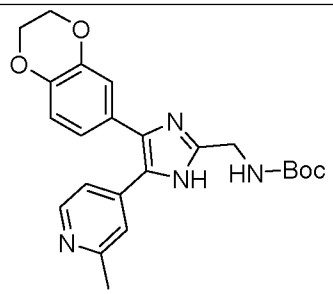
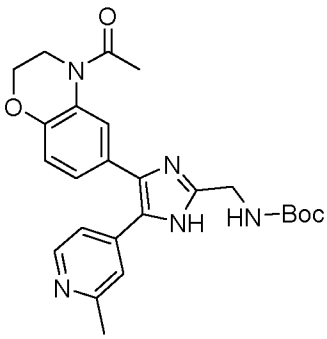
To a solution of 1-(2,3-dihydrobenzo[b][1,4]dioxin-6-yl)-2-(3-methylpyridin-4-yl)ethane-1,2-dione (500mg, 1.76mmol) in THF (5mL) were added NH_4OAc (1.36g, 17.6mmol), MeOH (2mL) and ethyl 2-oxoacetate (50% in toluene, 0.54mL, 2.64mmol) at rt. The reaction mixture was stirred at rt for 16h. The TLC showed the reaction to be complete. The reaction mixture was diluted with EtOAc (25mL) and washed with saturated aqueous $NaHCO_3$ solution (25mL). The organic layer was dried (Na_2SO_4), filtered and concentrated under reduced pressure. The crude LCMS showed ~12% conversion to desired compound. The crude residue was purified by prep HPLC to afford ethyl 4-(2,3-dihydrobenzo[b][1,4]dioxin-6-yl)-5-(2-methylpyridin-4-yl)-1H-imidazole-2-carboxylate as an off white solid. MS (ESI+) for CHNOS *m/z* 366.04 $[M+H]^+$; LC purity 99.7%; ^1H NMR (400 MHz, DMSO-d_6 + *d*-TFA): δ 8.53 (d, J = 6.4 Hz, 1H), 8.03 (s, 1H), 7.69 (d, J = 5.4Hz, 1H), 7.06 (s, 1H), 6.95 (s, 2H), 4.34 (q, J = 7.0 Hz, 2H), 4.27 (bs, 4H), 2.64 (s, 3H), 1.32 (t, J = 7.0 Hz, 3H).

5-(2,3-dihydrobenzo[b][1,4]dioxin-6-yl)-N-methyl-4-(2-methylpyridin-4-yl)-1H-imidazole-2-carboxamide

To a solution of ethyl 4-(2,3-dihydrobenzo[b][1,4]dioxin-6-yl)-5-(2-methylpyridin-4-yl)-1H-imidazole-2-carboxylate (180mg, 60% by LCMS, 0.49mmol) in toluene (3mL) were added methylamine (33% in MeOH, 0.1mL, 0.98mmol) and trimethylaluminium (2M in toluene, 0.74mL, 1.47mmol) at rt. The reaction mixture was stirred at 120°C for 16h. The TLC showed the reaction to be complete. The reaction mixture was allowed to cool to rt and evaporated under reduced pressure. The crude residue was purified by column chromatography using silica gel (100-200 mesh), eluting with 3-5% MeOH in DCM to afford a yellow solid. The yellow solid was further triturated with Et_2O (5mL) to afford 5-(2,3-dihydrobenzo[b][1,4]dioxin-6-yl)-N-methyl-4-(2-methylpyridin-4-yl)-1H-imidazole-2-carboxamide as a white solid. Yield: 45 mg (43%); MS (ESI+) for CHNOS *m/z* 351.00 $[M+H]^+$; LC purity 99.7%; ^1H NMR (400

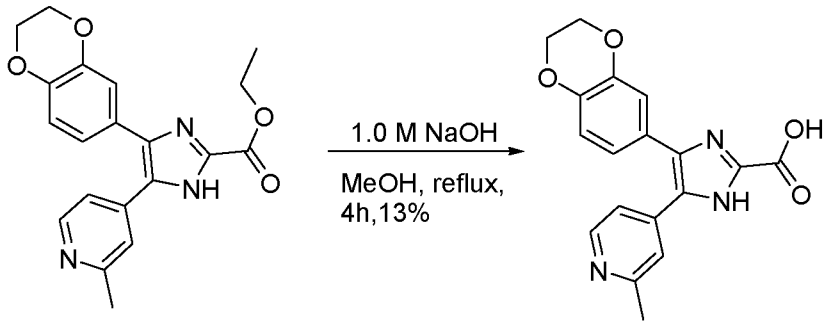
MHz, DMSO-d_6, + *d*-TFA): δ 8.57 (d, *J* = 6.4 Hz, 1H), 8.01 (s, 1H), 7.72 (d, *J* = 5.6Hz, 1H), 6.92-7.09 (m, 3H), 4.28 (bs, 4H), 2.82 (s, 3H), 2.62 (s, 3H).

The following intermediates were prepared in a similar manner to ethyl 4-(2,3-dihydrobenzo[b][1,4]dioxin-6-yl)-5-(2-methylpyridin-4-yl)-1H-imidazole-2-carboxylate.

Name	Int	Structure	Yield	Spectral Data 1H NMR & LCMS
tert-Butyl ((4-(2,3-dihydrobenzo[b][1,4]dioxin-6-yl)-5-(2-methylpyridin-4-yl)-1H-imidazol-2-yl)methyl)carbamate	137		Crude	MS (ESI+) for CHNOS *m/z* 423.38 $[M+H]^+$
tert-Butyl ((4-(4-acetyl-3,4-dihydro-2H-benzo[b][1,4]oxazin-6-yl)-5-(2-methylpyridin-4-yl)-1H-imidazol-2-yl)methyl)carbamate	138		Crude	MS (ESI-) for CHNOS *m/z* 462.34 $[M-H]^+$

Synthetic Route 13

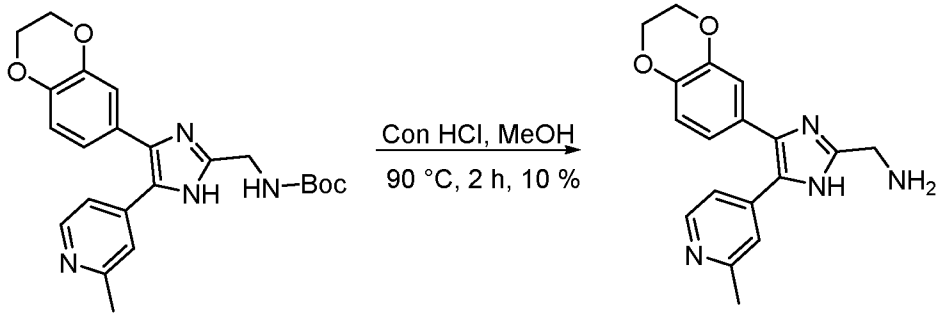
4-(2,3-dihydrobenzo[b][1,4]dioxin-6-yl)-5-(2-methylpyridin-4-yl)-1H-imidazole-2-carboxylate (Example 86)



To a solution of ethyl 4-(2,3-dihydrobenzo[b][1,4]dioxin-6-yl)-5-(2-methylpyridin-4-yl)-1H-imidazole-2-carboxylate (160mg, 0.43mmol) in MeOH (10mL) were added 1M NaOH (1.3mL, 1.31mmol) at rt. The reaction mixture was stirred at 80°C for 4 h. The TLC showed the reaction to be complete. The reaction mixture was allowed to cool to rt and evaporated under reduced pressure. The crude residue was enriched by trituration Et_2O (5mL). The product was further purified by prep HPLC purification to afford 4-(2,3-dihydrobenzo[b][1,4]dioxin-6-yl)-5-(2-methylpyridin-4-yl)-1H-imidazole-2-carboxylate as an off white solid. Yield: 20mg (13%); MS (ESI+) for CHNOS *m/z* 337.99 $[M+H]^+$; LC purity 96.6%; ^1H NMR (400 MHz, DMSO-d_6): δ 8.27 (d, J = 5.2 Hz, 1H), 7.39 (s, 1H), 7.14 (d, J = 4.7 Hz, 1H), 6.94 (s, 1H), 6.83-6.89 (m, 2H), 4.26 (s, 4H), 2.40 (s, 3H).

Synthetic Route 14

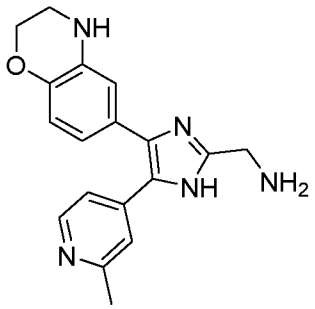
(4-(2,3-Dihydrobenzo[b][1,4]dioxin-6-yl)-5-(2-methylpyridin-4-yl)-1H-imidazol-2-yl)methanamine (Example 87)



To a solution of *tert*-butyl ((4-(2,3-dihydrobenzo[b][1,4]dioxin-6-yl)-5-(2-methylpyridin-4-yl)-1H-imidazol-2-yl)methyl)carbamate (370mg, 0.87mmol) in MeOH (5.0mL) was added conc. HCl (2.0mL) at rt. The resulted mixture was stirred at 90 °C for 2h. The TLC showed reaction to be complete. The reaction mixture was concentrated under reduced pressure. The residue was neutralised by aq. saturated $NaHCO_3$ solution (20mL) and extracted with EtOAc (3X20mL). The organics were

dried (Na_2SO_4), filtered and concentrated under reduced pressure. The crude residue was purified by combiflash, using 12 g silica column, eluting with 0-12% MeOH in DCM followed by trituration of obtained solid with Et_2O (5mL) and drying under reduced pressure to afford 4(4-(2,3-dihydrobenzo[b][1,4]dioxin-6-yl)-5-(2-methylpyridin-4-yl)-1H-imidazol-2-yl)methanamine as a yellow solid. Yield: 30mg (10%); MS (ESI+) for CHNOS *m/z* 323.21 $[M+H]^+$; LC purity 95.2% (Ret. Time-3.83min); ^1H NMR (400 MHz, DMSO-d_6 + d-TFA): δ 8.58 (d, J = 6.4 Hz, 1 H), 7.94 (s, 1H), 7.75 (d, J = 6.0 Hz, 1 H), 6.93-7.09 (m, 3H), 4.30 (bs, 4H), 4.16 (s, 2H), 2.63 (s, 3H).

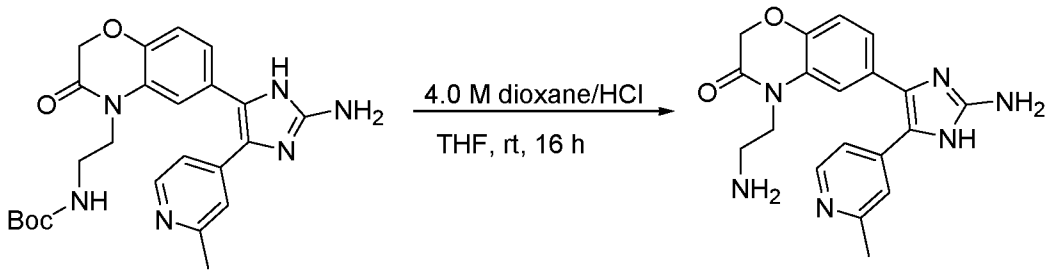
The following compound was prepared in a similar manner to (4-(2,3-dihydrobenzo[b][1,4]dioxin-6-yl)-5-(2-methylpyridin-4-yl)-1H-imidazol-2-yl)methanamine.

Name	Ex	Structure	Yield	Spectral Data 1H NMR & LCMS
4(4-(3,4-Dihydro-2H-benzo[b][1,4]oxazin-6-yl)-5-(2-methylpyridin-4-yl)-1H-imidazol-2-yl)methanamine (methylthio)pyrimidine	88		32%	MS (ESI+) for CHNOS *m/z* 322.20 $[M+H]^+$; LC purity 97.0% (Ret. Time- 4.81 min); ^1H NMR (400 MHz, DMSO-d_6 + D_2O): δ 8.41 (d, J = 6.3 Hz, 1 H),7.94 (s, 1H), 7.77 (d, J = 6.1 Hz, 1 H), 6.79 (d, J = 8.0 Hz, 1 H), 6.68 (s, 1H), 6.61 (d, J = 8.0 Hz, 1 H), 4.16 (bs, 2H), 4.12 (s, 2H), 3.29 (bs, 2H), 2.59 (s, 3H)

Synthetic Route 15

6-(2-Amino-4-(2-methylpyridin-4-yl)-1H-imidazol-5-yl)-4-(2-aminoethyl)-2H-benzo[b][1,4]oxazin-3(4H)-one (Example 89)

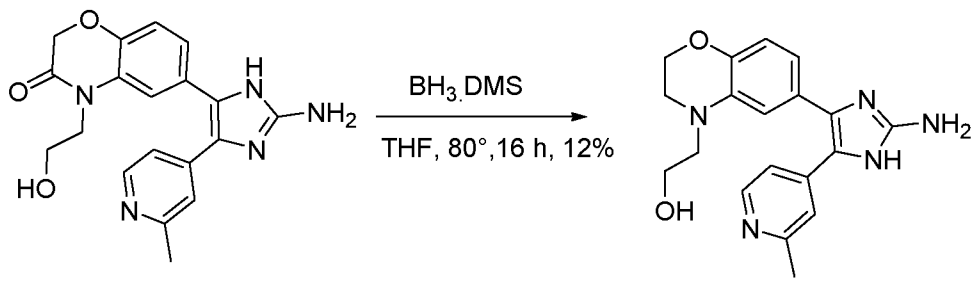
1



To a solution of *tert*-butyl (2-(6-(2-amino-4-(2-methylpyridin-4-yl)-1H-imidazol-5-yl)-3-oxo-2,3-dihydro-4H-benzo[b][1,4]oxazin-4-yl)ethyl)carbamate (200mg, 0.43mmol) in THF (5.0mL) was added HCL solution (1.0mL, 4.0M in dioxane) at rt. The resulted mixture was stirred at rt for 16h. The TLC showed reaction to be complete. The reaction mixture was concentrated under reduced pressure and triturated with Et_2O to afford 6-(2-amino-4-(2-methylpyridin-4-yl)-1H-imidazol-5-yl)-4-(2-aminoethyl)-2H-benzo[b][1,4]oxazin-3(4H)-one as an orange solid. Yield (150mg, 89% by LCMS and 1H NMR). MS (ESI+) for CHNOS m/z 365.24 $[M+H]^+$; LC purity 98.1% (Ret. Time- 4.47min); 1H NMR (400 MHz, DMSO-d_6 + *d*-TFA): δ 8.64 (d, J = 6.4 Hz, 1H), 7.77 (s, 1H), 7.60 (d, J = 5.4 Hz, 1H), 7.41 (s, 1H), 7.11-7.20 (m, 2H), 4.78 (s, 2H), 4.15 (bs, 2H), 3.02 (bs, 2H), 2.63 (s, 3H),

Synthetic Route 16

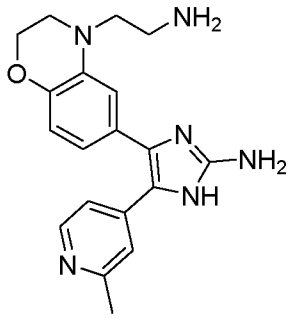
2-(6-(2-Amino-4-(2-methylpyridin-4-yl)-1H-imidazol-5-yl)-2,3-dihydro-4H-benzo[b][1,4]oxazin-4-yl)ethan-1-ol (Example 90)

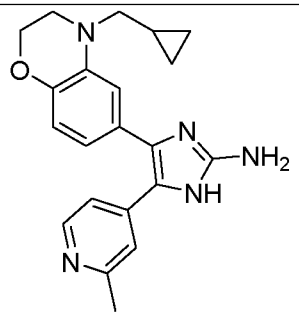
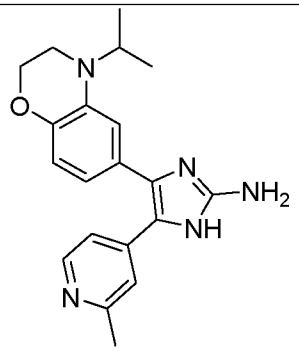


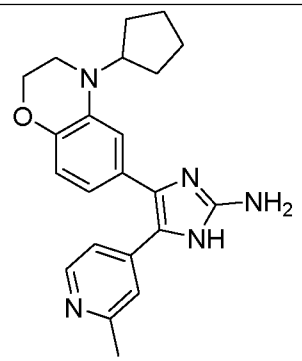
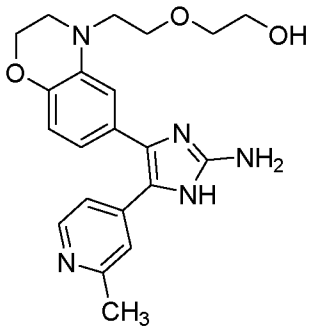
To a solution of 6-(2-amino-4-(2-methylpyridin-4-yl)-1H-imidazol-5-yl)-4-(2-hydroxyethyl)-2H-benzo[b][1,4]oxazin-3(4H)-one (247mg, 0.676mmol) in dry THF (5.0mL) was added BH_3.DMS (0.3mL, 3.38mmol) at rt. The resulted mixture was

stirred at 80 °C for 16 h. The TLC showed reaction to be completed. The reaction was allowed to cool to rt and quenched slowly with MeOH (1.0mL). The resulted mixture was evaporated under reduced pressure, triturated with Et_2O, dried and further purified by Preparative HPLC to afford 2-(6-(2-amino-4-(2-methylpyridin-4-yl)-1H-imidazol-5-yl)-2,3-dihydro-4H-benzo[b][1,4]oxazin-4-yl)ethan-1-ol as a yellow solid. 28mg (12%). MS (ESI+) for CHNOS m/z 352.22 $[M+H]^+$; LC purity 97.7% (Ret. Time- 3.67min); 1H NMR (400 MHz, DMSO-d_6 + *d*-TFA): δ 8.62 (d, J = 6.5 Hz, 1H), 7.80 (s, 1H), 7.62 (d, J = 6.4 Hz, 1H), 6.78-6.83 (m, 2H), 6.62 (dd, J = 1.5, 8.0 Hz, 1H), 4.16-4.21 (m, 2H), 3.48-3.55 (m, 2H), 3.41-3.46 (m, 2H), 3.27-3.32 (m, 2H), 2.61 (s, 3H).

The following compounds were prepared in a similar manner to 2-(6-(2-amino-4-(2-methylpyridin-4-yl)-1H-imidazol-5-yl)-2,3-dihydro-4H-benzo[b][1,4]oxazin-4-yl)ethan-1-ol..

Name	Ex	Structure	Yield	Spectral Data 1H NMR & LCMS
4-(4-(2-Aminoethyl)-3,4-dihydro-2H-benzo[b][1,4]oxazin-6-yl)-5-(2-methylpyridin-4-yl)-1H-imidazol-2-amine	91		8%	Purified by Prep HPLC MS (ESI+) for CHNOS m/z 351.21 $[M+H]^+$; LC purity 99.3% (Ret. Time- 4.65min); 1H NMR (400 MHz, DMSO-d6 + *d*-TFA): δ 8.62 (d, J = 6.5 Hz, 1H), 7.80 (s, 1H), 7.61 (d, J = 6.4 Hz, 1H), 6.92 (s, 1H), 6.84 (d, J = 8.1 Hz, 1H), 6.72 (dd, J = 1.4, 8.1 Hz, 1H), 4.28 (bs, 2H), 3.43-3.51 (m, 2H), 3.39 (bs, 2H), 2.97-3.02 (m, 2H), 2.62 (s, 3H)

4-(4-(Cyclopropylmethyl)-3,4-dihydro-2H-benzo[b][1,4]oxazin-6-yl)-5-(2-methylpyridin-4-yl)-1H-imidazol-2-amine	92		11%	Purified by Prep HPLC MS (ESI+) for CHNOS m/z 362.25 $[M+H]^+$; LC purity 94.1% (Ret. Time- 5.56min); 1H NMR (400 MHz, DMSO-d6): δ 11. 15 (bs, 1H), 8.27 (d, J = 5.8 Hz, 1H), 7.15-7.69 (m, 2H), 6.58-6.88 (m, 3H), 5.47 (bs, 2H), 4.22 (bs, 2H), 3.40 (bs, 2H), 3.06 (d, J = 6.0 Hz, 2H), 2.46 (s, 3H), 0.94 (bs, 1H), 0.40-0.52 (m, 2H), 0.14-0.22 (m, 2H)
4-(4-Isopropyl-3,4-dihydro-2H-benzo[b][1,4]oxazin-6-yl)-5-(2-methylpyridin-4-yl)-1H-imidazol-2-amine	93		8%	Purified by Prep HPLC MS (ESI+) for CHNOS m/z 350.23 $[M+H]^+$; LC purity 95.5% (Ret. Time- 5.52min); 1H NMR (400 MHz, DMSO-d6 + d-TFA): δ 8.53 (d, J = 6.4 Hz, 1H), 7.58 (s, 1H), 7.34 (d, J = 5.8 Hz, 1H), 6.84 (s, 1H), 6.78 (d, J =8.13 Hz, 1H), 6.62 (dd, J =1.4, 8.1 Hz, 1H), 4.19 (bs, 2H), 3.90-4.01 (m, 1H), 3.22 (bs, 2H), 2.61 (s, 3H), 1.05 (d, J = 6.5 Hz, 6H)

4-(4-Cyclopentyl-3,4-dihydro-2H-benzo[b][1,4]oxazin-6-yl)-5-(2-methylpyridin-4-yl)-1H-imidazol-2-amine	94		10%	Purified by Prep HPLC MS (ESI+) for CHNOS m/z 376.27 $[M+H]^+$; LC purity 95.8% (Ret. Time- 5.71min); 1H NMR (400 MHz, DMSO-d6 + *d*-TFA): δ 8.55 (d, J = 6.3 Hz, 1H), 7.58 (s, 1H), 7.34 (d, J = 5.2 Hz, 1H), 6.84 (s, 1H), 6.78 (d, J = 8.2 Hz, 1H), 6.61-6.66 (m, 1H), 4.21 (bs, 2H), 3.99-4.05 (m, 1H), 3.24 (bs, 2H), 2.61 (s, 3H), 1.47-1.80 (m, 8H)
2-(2-(6-(2-Amino-5-(2-methylpyridin-4-yl)-1H-imidazol-4-yl)-2,3-dihydro-4H-benzo[b][1,4]oxazin-4-yl)ethoxy)ethan-1-ol	95		14%	Purified by Prep HPLC MS (ESI+) for CHNOS m/z 396.32 $[M+H]^+$; LC purity 96.4% (Ret. Time- 4.81min); 1H NMR (400 MHz, DMSO-d_6 + D_2O): δ 8.27 (d, J = 6.3 Hz, 1H), 7.49 (bs, 1H), 7.32 (bs, 1H), 6.61-6.79 (m, 2H), 6.56 (d, J = 8.1 Hz, 1H), 4.14 (bs, 2H), 3.31-3.52 (m, 10H), 2.46 (s, 3H)

Example A: Antibacterial susceptibility

Minimum Inhibitory Concentrations (MICs) versus planktonic bacteria are determined by the broth microdilution procedure according to the guidelines of the Clinical and Laboratory Standards Institute (Clinical and Laboratory Standards Institute. Methods for Dilution Antimicrobial Susceptibility Tests for Bacteria That Grow Aerobically; Approved Standard–tenth Edition. CLSI document M07-A10,

2015). The broth dilution method involves a two-fold serial dilution of compounds in 96-well microtitre plates, giving a final concentration range of 0.39-200 μM and a maximum final concentration of 2% DMSO. The bacterial strains tested include *Escherichia coli* K12 (EC), *E. coli* NCTC 13441 (UPEC), *Staphylococcus aureus* ATCC 35556 (SA), *Acinetobacter baumannii* ATCC 17978 (AB), *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* ATCC 33359 (PA), *Enterobacter cloacae* DSM 30054 (Ecl), *Serratia marcescens* SL1344 (Sm), *Salmonella typhimurium* XNAA5 (St), *Klebsiella pneumoniae* ATCC 10031 (KP2), *K. pneumoniae* NCTC 13438 (KP1), *K. pneumoniae* ATCC 700603 (KP3), *Klebsiella pneumoniae* ATCC 51504 (KP4), *K. pneumoniae* H154680676 (KP5), *K. pneumoniae* H154020667 (KP6), *K. pneumoniae* H154640784 (KP7), *K. pneumoniae* H154600588 (KP8), *K. pneumoniae* H154300688 (KP9), *K. pneumoniae* H151440671 (KP10). Strains are grown in cation-adjusted Müller-Hinton broth or on Luria Bertoni agar at 37°C in an ambient atmosphere. The MIC is determined as the lowest concentration of compound that inhibits growth following a 20-24 hour incubation period. The results are set out in Table 1. In Table 1 an MIC (μM) of less or equal to 1 is assigned the letter A; a MIC of from 1 to 10 is assigned the letter B; a MIC of from 10 to 100 is assigned the letter C; and a MIC of over 100 is assigned the letter D.

Table 1: MIC values against Gram-negative and Gram-positive bacterial strains including *Enterobacteriaceae* bacteria strains

Compound	AB	PA	EC	SA	KP1	KP2	KP3	KP4	KP5	KP6	KP7	KP8	KP9	KP10	UPEC	EcI	St	Sm
CIP	A	B	A	B	D	A	A		D	D	C	D	D	C	D	A	A	A
CST	B	B	A	D	B	A	B		D	B	A	B	A	A	A	A	A	D
DOX	A	C	B	A	C	A	C		C	C	C	C	C	B	C	B	B	B
IPM	A	B	A	A	C	B	B		B	B	C	D	D	C	A	B	B	B
TZP	C	B	B	B	D	B	C		C	C	C	D	D	D	C	B	C	B
TOB	B	B	B	B	C	B	D		D	D	B	D	D	B	D	C	B	A
1	D	D	C	D	D	A									C			
2	D	D	B	D	C	A									B			
3	D	D	A	D	B	A	B		B	B	B	B	B	B	A	A	A	B
4	D	D	A	D	C	A									B	B	B	C
5	D	D	B	D	C	A									B			
6	D	D	B	D	C	A									B			
7	D	D	A	C	B	A	B		A	A	B	B	A	A	A	A	A	A
8	D	D	A	D	C	A									A			
9	D	D	A	D	B	A	B		B	A	B	B	B	A	A	A	A	C
10	D	D	D	D	D	B									D			
11	D	D	B	D	C	A									B			
12	D	D	B	D	C	A	C		B	B	C	C	B	B	B			
13	D	D	B	D	C	A									B			
14	D	D	A	D	B	A									A			
15	D	D	C	D	C	A									B			
16	D	D	A	D	A	A	A		A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A
17	D	D	B	D	C	A									B			
18	D	D	C	D	D	B									C			
19	C	D	A	C	A	A	A		A	A	B	B	A	A	A	A	A	A

20	D	D	B	D	C	A																									
21	D	D	B	D	C	A																									
22	D	D	D	D	D	B																									
23	D	D	A	D	B	A	B	A	B	B	B	B	A	A	B	B	A	A	B	B	A	A	B	B	A	A	B	B	A	A	B
24	D	D	B	D	C	A	C	B	B	C	C	C	B	B	C	C	B	B	C	C	B	B	C	C	B	B	C	C	B	B	C
25	D	D	C	D	C	A																									
26	D	D	A	D	C	A	C	B	B	C	C	C	B	B	C	C	B	B	C	C	B	B	C	C	B	B	C	C	B	B	C
27	D	D	A	D	B	A	B	A	A	B	B	B	A	A	B	B	A	A	B	B	A	A	B	B	A	A	B	B	A	A	B
28	D	D	A	D	B	A	B	A	A	B	B	B	A	A	B	B	A	A	B	B	A	A	B	B	A	A	B	B	A	A	B
29	D	D	A	D	C	A	C	B	B	C	C	C	B	B	C	C	B	B	C	C	B	B	C	C	B	B	C	C	B	B	C
30	D	D	C	D	D	B	D	C	C	D	D	D	C	C	D	D	C	C	D	D	C	C	D	D	C	C	D	D	C	C	D
31	D	D	B	D	C	A	C	B	B	C	C	C	B	B	C	C	B	B	C	C	B	B	C	C	B	B	C	C	B	B	C
32	D	D	A	D	B	A	B	A	B	B	B	B	A	A	B	B	A	A	B	B	A	A	B	B	A	A	B	B	A	A	B
33	D	D	B	D	C	A	C	B	B	C	C	C	B	B	C	C	B	B	C	C	B	B	C	C	B	B	C	C	B	B	C
34	D	D	B	D	B	A	B	A	B	B	B	B	A	A	B	B	A	A	B	B	A	A	B	B	A	A	B	B	A	A	B
35	D	D	B	D	C	A	C	B	B	C	C	C	B	B	C	C	B	B	C	C	B	B	C	C	B	B	C	C	B	B	C
36	D	D	B	D	B	A	B	A	B	B	B	B	A	A	B	B	A	A	B	B	A	A	B	B	A	A	B	B	A	A	B
37	D	D	B	D	C	A	C	B	B	C	C	C	B	B	C	C	B	B	C	C	B	B	C	C	B	B	C	C	B	B	C
38	D	D	A	D	B	A	B	A	B	B	B	B	A	A	B	B	A	A	B	B	A	A	B	B	A	A	B	B	A	A	B
39	D	D	A	D	C	A	C	B	B	C	C	C	B	B	C	C	B	B	C	C	B	B	C	C	B	B	C	C	B	B	C
40	D	D	B	D	B	A	B	A	B	B	B	B	A	A	B	B	A	A	B	B	A	A	B	B	A	A	B	B	A	A	B
41	D	D	A	D	B	A	B	A	B	B	B	B	A	A	B	B	A	A	B	B	A	A	B	B	A	A	B	B	A	A	B
42	D	D	B	D	C	A	C	B	B	C	C	C	B	B	C	C	B	B	C	C	B	B	C	C	B	B	C	C	B	B	C
43	D	D	A	D	B	A	B	A	B	B	B	B	A	A	B	B	A	A	B	B	A	A	B	B	A	A	B	B	A	A	B
44	D	D	B	D	B	A	B	A	B	B	B	B	A	A	B	B	A	A	B	B	A	A	B	B	A	A	B	B	A	A	B
45	D	D	A	D	B	A	B	A	B	B	B	B	A	A	B	B	A	A	B	B	A	A	B	B	A	A	B	B	A	A	B
46	D	D	B	D	C	A	C	B	B	C	C	C	B	B	C	C	B	B	C	C	B	B	C	C	B	B	C	C	B	B	C
47	D	D	B	D	C	A	C	B	B	C	C	C	B	B	C	C	B	B	C	C	B	B	C	C	B	B	C	C	B	B	C
48	D	D	B	D	C	A	C	B	B	C	C	C	B	B	C	C	B	B	C	C	B	B	C	C	B	B	C	C	B	B	C

49	D	D	A	D	A	B	B	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	B	B
50	D	D	B	D	C	B	B	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	B	B
51	D	D	B	D	C	B	B	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	B	B
52	D	D	A	D	B	B	B	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A
53	D	D	B	D	C	B	B	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	B	B
54	D	D	B	D	C	B	B	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	B	B
55	D	D	B	D	C	B	B	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	B	B
56	D	D	B	D	B	B	B	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	B	B
57	D	D	A	D	B	B	B	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	B	B
58	D	D	B	D	B	C	C	B	B	B	B	B	B	B	B	B	B	B	B	B	B	B	B	B	B	B	B	B	B	A	A
59	D	D	A	D	C	C	C	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A
60	D	D	B	D	C	B	B	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	B	B
61	D	D	B	D	B	B	B	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	B	B
62	D	D	B	D	B	B	B	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A
63	D	D	C	D	D	B	B	B	B	B	B	B	B	B	B	B	B	B	B	B	B	B	B	B	B	B	B	B	B	C	C
64	D	D	B	D	B	B	B	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	B	B
65	D	D	A	D	B	B	B	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	B	B
66	D	D	B	D	C	B	B	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	B	B
67	D	D	B	D	C	B	B	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	B	B
68	D	D	B	D	C	B	B	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	B	B
69	D	D	B	D	C	B	B	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	B	B
70	D	D	B	D	C	B	B	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	B	B
71	D	D	C	D	D	B	B	B	B	B	B	B	B	B	B	B	B	B	B	B	B	B	B	B	B	B	B	B	B	C	C
72	D	D	D	D	D	B	B	B	B	B	B	B	B	B	B	B	B	B	B	B	B	B	B	B	B	B	B	B	B	D	D
73	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D
74	D	D	B	D	D	C	C	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	B	B
75	D	D	C	D	D	D	D	B	B	B	B	B	B	B	B	B	B	B	B	B	B	B	B	B	B	B	B	B	B	C	C
78	D	D	B	D	D	C	C	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	B	B
79	D	D	C	D	D	D	D	B	B	B	B	B	B	B	B	B	B	B	B	B	B	B	B	B	B	B	B	B	B	B	B

80	D	D	D	D	B			B	A									D	
81	D	D	C	D	A			A	A									C	
82	D	D	C	D	A			A	A									C	
83	D	D	B	D	A			A	A									B	
84	D	D	B	D	A	C		A	A	B						B		B	
85	D	D	D	D	B			B	A									D	
86	D	D	D	D	B			B	A									D	
87	D	D	B	D	A			A	A									B	
88	D	D	B	D	A			A	A									B	
89	D	D	B	D	A			A	A									B	
90	D	D	B	D	A			A	A									A	
91	D	D	A	D	A			A	A									A	
92	D	D	A	D	A	B	B	A	A	A	A	B	B	B	B	B		B	
93	D	D	A	D	A	B	A	A	A	A	A	B	B	B	A	A		A	
94	D	D	A	D	A			A	A									A	
95	D	D	B	D	A			A	A									B	

CIP: ciprofloxacin, CST: colistin, DOX: doxycycline, IPM: imipenem, TZP: piperacillin/tazobactam, TOB: tobramycin

Thus, the tested compounds show very good potency (A or B) against all strains of *Enterobacteriaceae* tested, including those which are multidrug-resistant.

Example B: Human cell viability

Compounds are assessed for potential non-specific cytotoxic effects against the human hepatocarcinoma cell line ATCC HB-8065 (HepG2). HepG2 cells are seeded at 20,000 cells/well in 96-well microtitre plates in minimal essential medium (MEM) supplemented with a final concentration of 10% FBS. After 24 h, compound dilutions are prepared in MEM supplemented with a final concentration of 1% FBS, and added to the cells. Compounds are tested in two-fold serial dilutions over a final concentration range of 0.2-100 μM in a final DMSO concentration of 1% vol/vol. Thioridazine is used as a positive control. Cells are incubated with compound at 37°C and 5% CO2 for a further 24 h, after which time the CellTiter-Glo reagent (Promega) is added. Luminescence is measured on a Perkin Elmer Envision plate reader. Data are analysed using a 4 parameter logistic regression to determine the concentration of compound that inhibits cell viability by fifty percent (IC50). The results are provided in Table 2. In Table 2, an IC50 (μM) of less than 25 is assigned the letter C; an IC50 of 25 to 100 is assigned the letter B; and an IC50 of over 100 is assigned the letter A.

Table 2: IC50 values against the HepG2 cell line

Compound	IC50
CST	A
1	A
2	A
3	A
4	A
5	A
6	A
7	B
8	A
9	A
10	A
11	A
12	A
13	B
14	A
15	A
16	B

17	A
18	A
19	B
20	B
21	A
23	A
24	A
25	A
26	A
27	A
28	B
29	A
31	A
32	A
33	A
34	A
35	A
36	A
37	A
38	A
39	A
40	A
41	A
42	A
43	A
44	A
45	A
46	A
47	A
48	A
49	A
50	A
51	A
52	A
53	A
54	A
55	A
56	A
57	A
58	A
59	A
60	A
61	A

62	**A**
63	**A**
64	**A**
65	**A**
66	**A**
71	**A**
74	**A**
75	**A**
80	**A**
81	**A**
83	**A**
84	**A**
85	**A**
86	**A**
87	**A**
88	**A**
89	**A**
90	**A**
91	**A**
92	**B**
93	**B**
94	**B**

CST: colistin

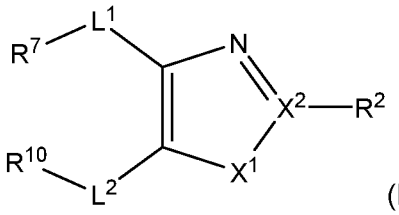
Thus, the majority of tested compounds exhibit no toxicity (A) against human hepatic cell lines as demonstrated against HepG2 cells.

Equivalents

The foregoing description details presently preferred embodiments of the present invention. Numerous modifications and variations in practice thereof are expected to occur to those skilled in the art upon consideration of these descriptions. Those modifications and variations are intended to be encompassed within the claims appended hereto.

Numbered Disclosures

1. A compound of general formula (I), or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, hydrate, solvate or ester thereof:



(I)

wherein

X^1 is selected from NR^1, O or S;

X^2 is selected from C or N;

with the proviso that when X^1 is S, X^2 is C, and when X^1 is O, X^2 is C;

L^1 and L^2 are linker groups selected from a direct bond or C_{1-3}alkylene;

R^1 is selected from hydrogen or C_{1-4}alkyl;

R^2 is selected from the group consisting of S (sulfinyl), O (oxo), NR^3R^4, cyano, methyl ($-CH_3$), ethyl ($-CH_2CH_3$), C_{3-7}cycloalkyl, C_{1-4}alkoxy, $-SC_{1-4}$alkyl, C_{1-4}alkyl-C_{1-4}alkoxy, C_{1-4}alkyl-$CO_2R^3R^4$, $-CONR^3R^4$, COOH and a 4- to 7-membered heterocyclyl, wherein the 4- to 7- membered heterocyclyl is optionally substituted with one or more C_{1-6}alkyl groups;

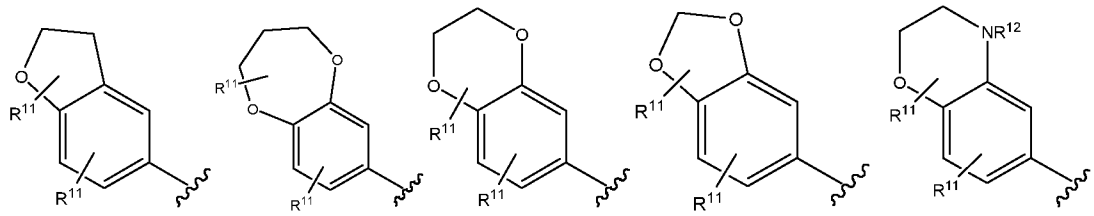
R^3 and R^4 are independently selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, C_{1-6}alkyl, COR^5, $CONR^5R^6$, CO_2R^5, C_{1-4}alkyl-NR^5R^6;

or R^3 and R^4 together with the nitrogen atom to which they are attached form a 4- to 7- membered cyclic amino group, which group is optionally substituted with one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of NR^5R^6, C_{1-4}alkoxy and oxo;

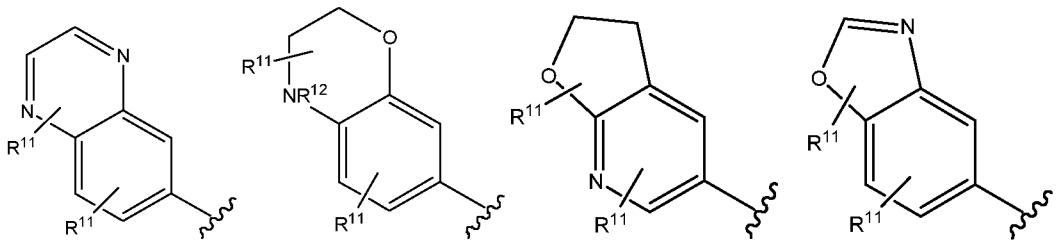
R^5 and R^6 are independently selected from the group consisting of hydrogen and C_{1-6}alkyl;

R^7 is selected from the group consisting of phenyl, monocyclic 4- to 7-membered heterocyclyl and monocyclic 5- or 6-membered heteroaryl, wherein the phenyl, 4- to 7-membered heterocyclyl and 5- or 6-membered heteroaryl rings are optionally substituted with one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of halogen, C_{1-4}alkyl, C_{1-4}alkoxy, $CONR^3R^4$, OR^8, OCF_3, hydroxyl and R^8;

or R^7 is a fused bicyclic system selected from the group consisting of any one of (Ia) to (Ii):



(Ia) (Ib) (Ic) (Id) (Ie)



(If) (Ig) (Ih) (Ii)

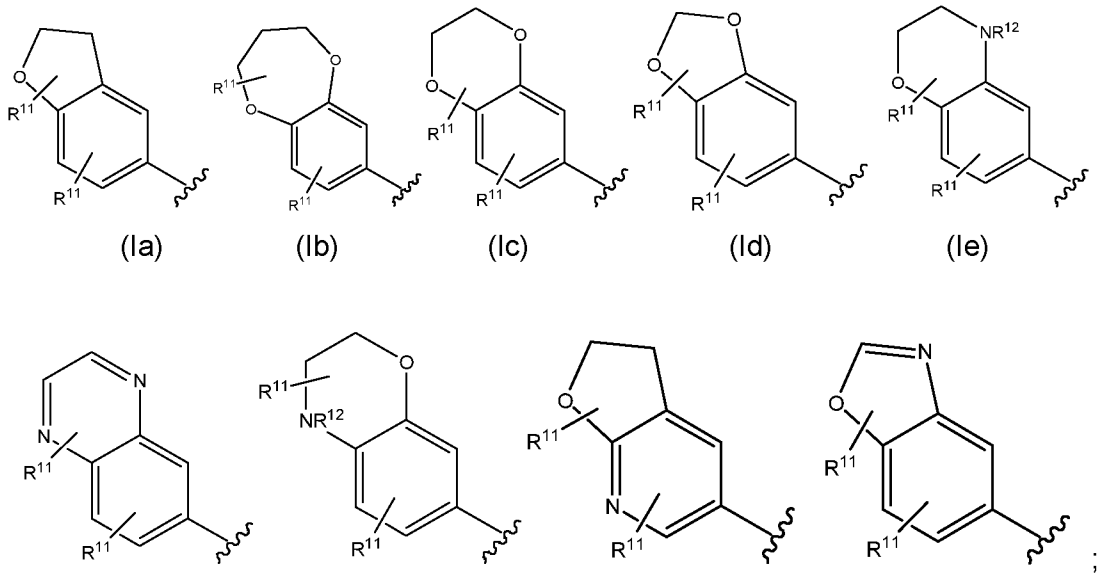
wherein R^{11} is independently selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, halogen, C_{1-4}alkyl, C_{1-4}alkoxy, NR^3R^4, COOH, hydroxyl and $CONR^3R^4$ and R^{12} is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, C_{1-4}alkyl, COR^5, $CONR^5R^6$, CO_2R^5 and C_{1-4}alkyl-NR^5R^6;

R^8 is selected from the group consisting of a monocyclic 3- to 5- membered cycloalkyl and CH_2R^9;

R^9 is selected from the group consisting of phenyl, monocyclic 5- or 6-membered heteroaryl and monocyclic C_{3-7}cycloalkyl, the phenyl or 5- or 6-membered heteroaryl being optionally substituted with one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of halogen, C_{1-4}alkyl, O (oxo), S (sulfinyl), NR^3R^4, OR^3 and SR^3;

R^{10} is selected from the group consisting of phenyl and monocyclic 5- or 6-membered heteroaryl ring, wherein the phenyl and 5- or 6-membered heteroaryl rings are optionally substituted with one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of halogen, C_{1-4}alkyl, O (oxo), S(sulfinyl), C_{1-4}alkoxy, NR^3R^4, OR^8, hydroxyl and R^8;

or R^{10} is a fused bicyclic system selected from the group consisting of any one of (Ia) to (Ii):



(Ia) (Ib) (Ic) (Id) (Ie)

(If) (Ig) (Ih) (Ii) ;

wherein R^{11} is independently selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, halogen, C_{1-4}alkyl, C_{1-4}alkoxy, NR^3R^4, COOH, hydroxyl and $CONR^3R^4$ and R^{12} is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, C_{1-4}alkyl, COR^5, $CONR^5R^6$, CO_2R^5 and C_{1-4}alkyl-NR^5R^6.

2. A compound of general formula (I), or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, hydrate, solvate or ester thereof, according to numbered disclosure 1, wherein X^1 is NH or NMe, preferably NH.

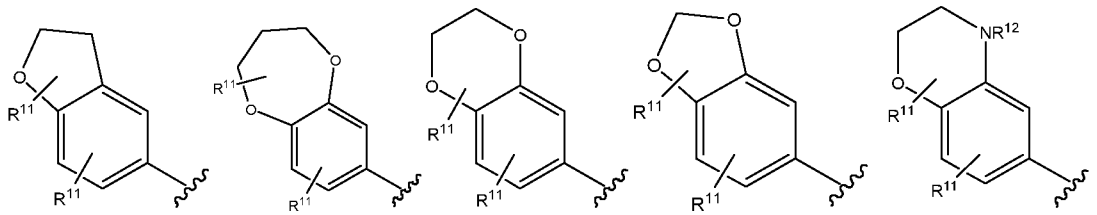
3. A compound of general formula (I), or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, hydrate, solvate or ester thereof, according to numbered disclosure 1, wherein X^1 is S.

4. A compound of general formula (I), or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, hydrate, solvate or ester thereof, according to any one of numbered disclosures 1 to 3, wherein R^2 is selected from the group consisting of NR^3R^4, $CONR^3R^4$, and COOH; wherein R^3 and R^4 are independently selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, C_{1-6}alkyl, COR^5, $CONR^5R^6$, CO_2R^5, C_{1-4}alkyl-NR^5R^6; wherein R^5 and R^6 are independently selected from the group consisting of hydrogen and C_{1-2}alkyl.

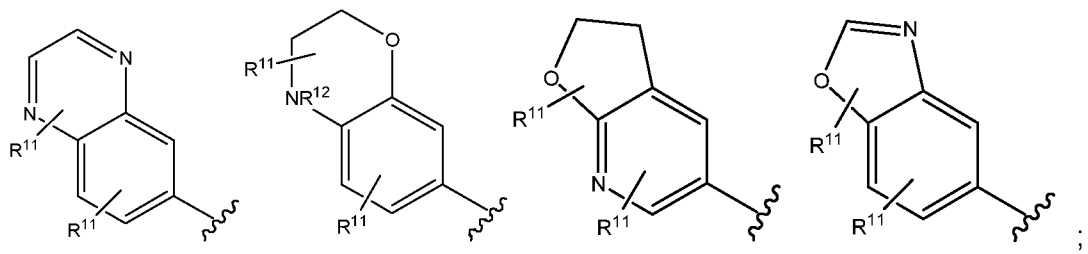
5. A compound of general formula (I), or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, hydrate, solvate or ester thereof, according to numbered disclosure 4, wherein wherein R^2 is NH_2.

6. A compound of general formula (I), or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, hydrate, solvate or ester thereof, according to any preceding numbered disclosure wherein L^1 and L^2 are preferably a direct bond or methylene, preferably a direct bond.

7. A compound of general formula (I), or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, hydrate, solvate or ester thereof, according to any preceding numbered disclosure, wherein R^7 is selected from the group consisting of phenyl and pyridyl, each of which is optionally substituted with one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of halogen, $C_{1\text{-}2}$alkyl, $C_{1\text{-}2}$alkoxy, $CONR^3R^4$, OR^8, OCF_3, and hydroxyl;
or R^7 is a fused bicyclic system selected from the group consisting of any one of (Ia) to (Ii):



(Ia) (Ib) (Ic) (Id) (Ie)

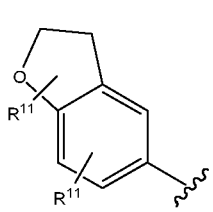


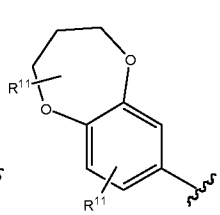
(If) (Ig) (Ih) (Ii);

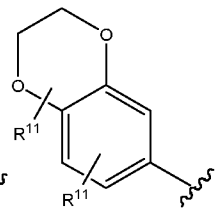
wherein R^{11} is independently selected from hydrogen, halogen, $C_{1\text{-}4}$alkyl, $C_{1\text{-}4}$alkoxy, NR^3R^4, COOH, hydroxyl and $CONR^3R^4$ and R^{12} is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, $C_{1\text{-}4}$alkyl, COR^5, $CONR^5R^6$, CO_2R^5 and $C_{1\text{-}4}$alkyl-NR^5R^6;

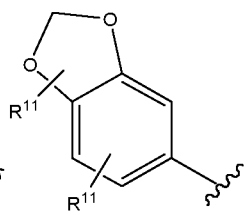
wherein R^8 is CH_2R^9, wherein R^9 is selected from the group consisting of phenyl, optionally substituted with one or more halogen substituents.

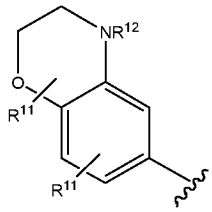
8. A compound of general formula (I), or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, hydrate, solvate or ester thereof, according to any preceding numbered disclosure, wherein R^{10} is selected from the group consisting of phenyl and pyridyl, each of which are optionally substituted with one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of halogen, C_{1-4}alkyl, C_{1-4}alkoxy, NR^3R^4, OR^8, hydroxyl and R^8;
or R^{10} is preferably a fused bicyclic system selected from the group consisting of any one of (Ia) to (Ii):

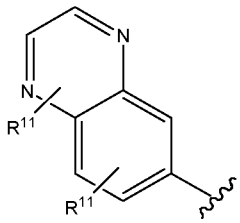

(Ia)

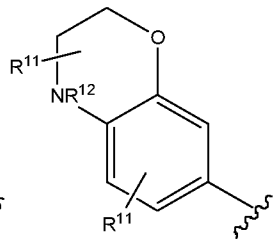

(Ib)

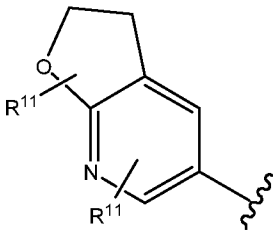

(Ic)

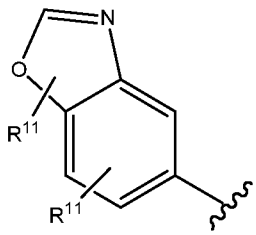

(Id)


(Ie)


(If)


(Ig)

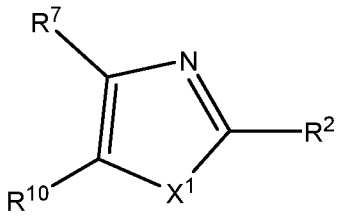

(Ih)


(Ii)

wherein R^{11} is independently selected from hydrogen, halogen, C_{1-4}alkyl, C_{1-4}alkoxy, NR^3R^4, COOH, hydroxyl and $CONR^3R^4$ and R^{12} is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, C_{1-4}alkyl, COR^5, $CONR^5R^6$, CO_2R^5 and C_{1-4}alkyl-NR^5R^6.

9. A compound of general formula (I), or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, hydrate, solvate or ester thereof, according to any preceding numbered disclosure, wherein when R^7 is a fused bicyclic system, R^{10} is a monocyclic system, and when R^7 is a monocyclic system, R^{10} is a fused bicyclic system.

10. A compound according to any preceding numbered disclosure, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, hydrate, solvate or ester thereof, having the general formula (II):



(II)

wherein

X^1 is selected from NH or S;

R^2 is selected from the group consisting of S (sulfinyl), O (oxo), NR^3R^4, cyano, methyl, $-CONR^3R^4$, COOH and monocyclic 4- to 7- membered heterocyclyl, wherein the 4- to 7- membered heterocyclyl is optionally substituted with one or more C_{1-4}alkyl groups;

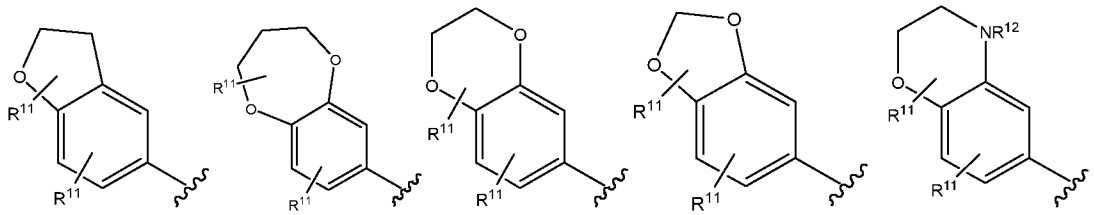
R^3 and R^4 are independently selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, C_{1-3}alkyl, COR^5, $CONR^5R^6$, CO_2R^5, C_{1-2}alkyl-NR^5R^6;

or R^3 and R^4 together with the nitrogen atom to which they are attached form a monocyclic 4- to 7- membered cyclic amine group, which group is optionally substituted with one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of NR^5R^6, C_{1-2}alkoxy and oxo;

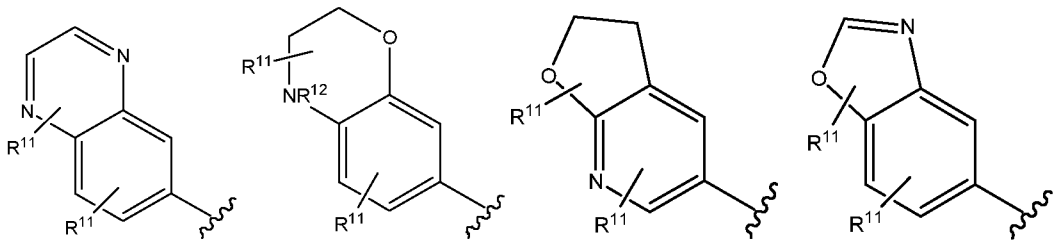
R^5 and R^6 are independently selected from the group consisting of hydrogen and C_{1-4}alkyl;

R^7 is selected from the group consisting of phenyl, monocyclic 5- to 7-membered heterocyclyl and monocyclic 5- or 6-membered heteroaryl, wherein the phenyl, 5- to 7-membered heterocyclyl and 5- or 6-membered heteroaryl rings are optionally substituted with one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of halogen, C_{1-2}alkyl, C_{1-2}alkoxy, $CONR^3R^4$, OR^8, OCF_3, and hydroxyl;

or R^7 is a fused bicyclic system selected from the group consisting of any one of (Ia) to (Ii):



(Ia) (Ib) (Ic) (Id) (Ie)



(If) (Ig) (Ih) (Ii)

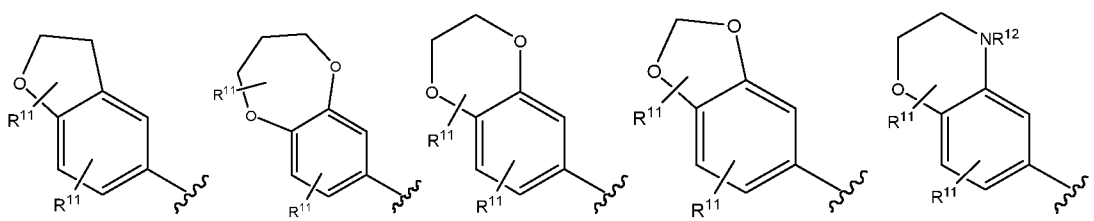
wherein R^{11} and R^{12} are independently selected from hydrogen, methyl and ethyl;

R^8 is selected from the group consisting of 4- to 5- membered cycloalkyl and CH_2R^9;

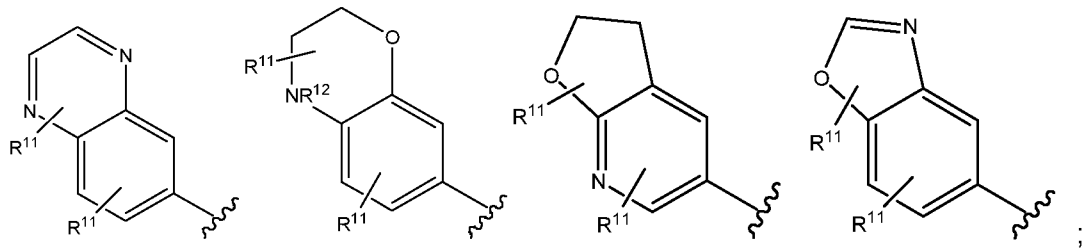
R^9 is selected from the group consisting of phenyl, monocyclic 5- or 6-membered heteroaryl and monocyclic C_{3-7}cycloalkyl, the phenyl or 5- or 6-membered heteroaryl being optionally substituted with one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of halogen, C_{1-2}alkyl, O (oxo), S (sulfinyl), NR^3R^4, OR^3 and SR^3;

R^{10} is selected from the group consisting of phenyl and monocyclic 5- or 6-membered heteroaryl ring, wherein the phenyl and 5- or 6-membered heteroaryl rings are optionally substituted with one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of halogen, C_{1-4}alkyl, O (oxo), S(sulfinyl), C_{1-4}alkoxy, NR^3R^4, OR^8, hydroxyl and R^8;

or R^{10} is a fused bicyclic system selected from the group consisting of any one of (Ia) to (Ii):



(Ia) (Ib) (Ic) (Id) (Ie)

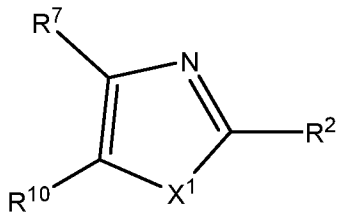


(If) (Ig) (Ih) (Ii)

;

wherein each of R^{11} and R^{12} are hydrogen.

11. A compound according to any preceding numbered dislcosure, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, hydrate, solvate or ester thereof, having the general formula (III):



(III)

wherein

X^1 is selected from NH or S;

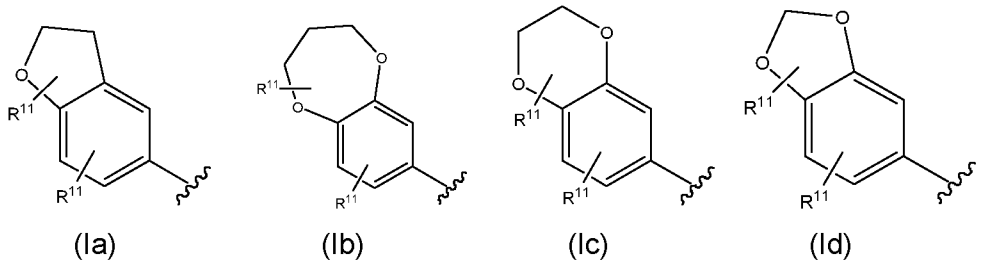
R^2 is selected from the group consisting of NHR^3, COOH and $-CONR^3R^4$;

R^3 and R^4 are independently selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, COR^5, and $CONR^5R^6$;

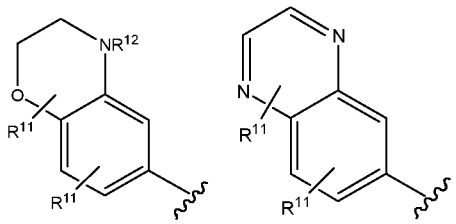
R^5 and R^6 are independently selected from the group consisting of hydrogen and $C_{1\text{-}2}$alkyl;

R^7 is selected from the group consisting of phenyl, monocyclic 6-membered nitrogen containing heterocyclyl and monocyclic 6-membered, nitrogen containing heteroaryl, wherein the phenyl, 6-membered heterocyclyl and 6-membered heteroaryl groups are optionally substituted with one or two substituents selected from the group consisting of Cl, F, NH_2, NHMe, $C_{1\text{-}2}$alkyl, $C_{1\text{-}2}$alkoxy, $CONR^3R^4$, OCH_2R^9, OCF_3, and hydroxyl;

or R^7 is a fused bicyclic system selected from the group consisting of:



(Ia) (Ib) (Ic) (Id)



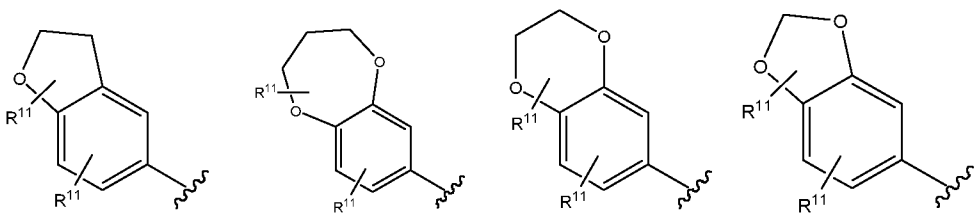
(Ie) (If)

wherein each of R^{11} and R^{12} are hydrogen;

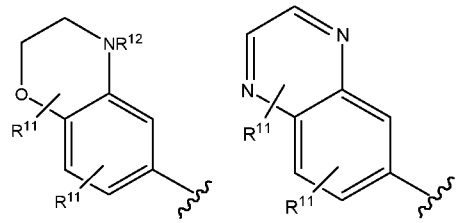
R^9 is selected from the group consisting of phenyl, optionally substituted with one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of Cl, F, methyl, NH_2, NHMe, and OH;

R^{10} is selected from the group consisting of phenyl and monocyclic 6-membered, nitrogen containing heteroaryl, monocyclic 6-membered nitrogen containing heterocyclyl, wherein the phenyl, 6-membered heteroaryl and 6-membered heterocyclyl groups are optionally substituted with one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of Cl, F, NH_2, NHMe, C_{1-2}alkyl, C_{1-2}alkoxy, $CONH_2$, CONHMe, $CONMe_2$, OCH_2C_3cycloalkyl, OC_3cycloalkyl, OCF_3 and hydroxyl;

or R^{10} is a fused bicyclic system selected from the group consisting of:



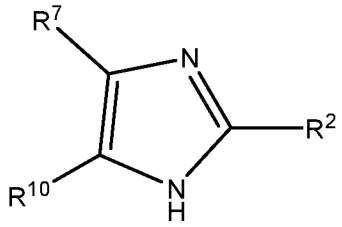
(Ia) (Ib) (Ic) (Id)



(Ie) (If)

Wherein each of R^{11} and R^{12} are hydrogen.

12. A compound according to any preceding numbered disclosure, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, hydrate, solvate or ester thereof, having the general formula (IV):



(IV)

wherein

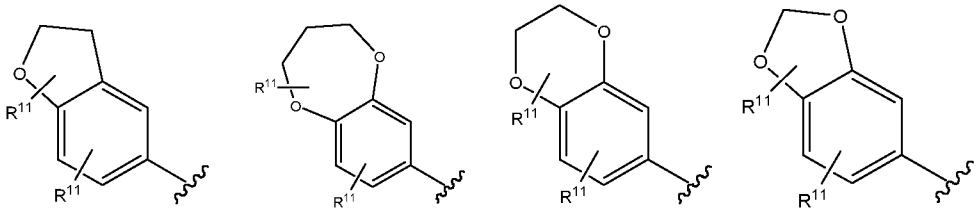
R^2 is selected from the group consisting of NHR^3;

R^3 and R^4 are independently selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, COR^5, and $CONR^5R^6$;

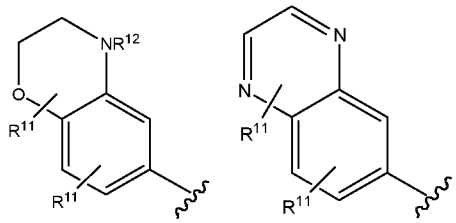
R^5 and R^6 are independently selected from the group consisting of hydrogen and $C_{1\text{-}2}$alkyl;

R^7 is selected from the group consisting of phenyl, pyridyl, and pyrimidine, wherein the phenyl and pyridyl groups are optionally substituted with one or two substituents selected from the group consisting of Cl, F, NH_2, Me, NHMe, methoxy, ethoxy, $CONH_2$, CONHMe, OCH_2R^9, OCF_3, and hydroxyl;

or R^7 is a fused bicyclic system selected from the group consisting of:



(Ia) (Ib) (Ic) (Id)



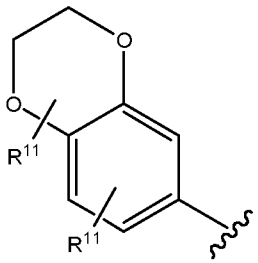
(Ie) (If)

wherein each of R^{11} and R^{12} are hydrogen;

R^9 is selected from the group consisting of phenyl, optionally substituted with F, methyl, NH_2 and OH;

R^{10} is selected from the group consisting of phenyl, pyridyl and pyridinone, wherein the phenyl and pyridyl groups are optionally substituted with one or two substituents selected from the group consisting of Cl, F, NH_2, NHMe, $C_{1\text{-}2}$alkyl, $C_{1\text{-}2}$alkoxy, $CONH_2$, CONHMe, $CONMe_2$, OCH_2cyclopropyl and OC_3cyclopropyl;

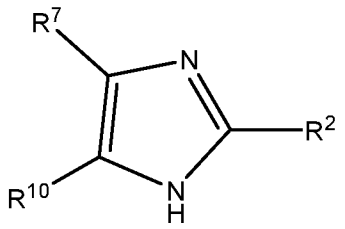
or R^{10} is a fused bicyclic system:



(If)

wherein each of R^{11} is hydrogen.

13. A compound according to any preceding numbered disclosure, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, hydrate, solvate or ester thereof, having the general formula (V):



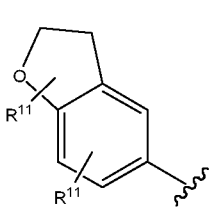
(V)

wherein

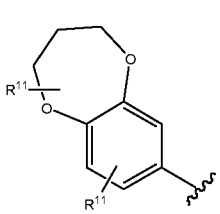
R^2 is selected from the group consisting of NH_2;

R^7 is selected from the group consisting of phenyl and pyridyl, wherein the phenyl and pyridyl groups are optionally substituted with one or two substituents selected from the group consisting of Cl, F, NH_2, Me, NHMe, methoxy, $CONH_2$, OCH_2fluorophenyl and hydroxyl;

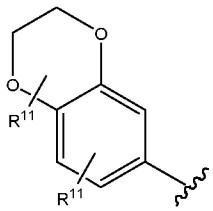
or R^7 is a fused bicyclic system selected from the group consisting of:



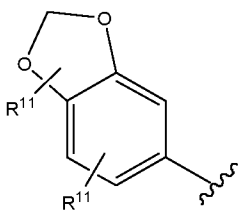
(Ia)



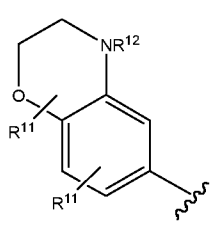
(Ib)

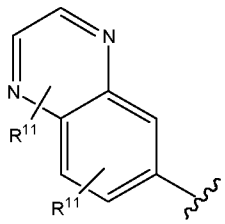


(Ic)



(Id)



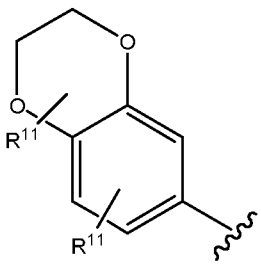


(Ie) (If)

wherein each of R^{11} and R^{12} are hydrogen;

R^{10} is selected from the group consisting of phenyl and pyridyl, wherein the phenyl and pyridyl groups are optionally substituted with one or two substituents selected from the group consisting of Cl, F, NH_2, methyl, methoxy $CONH_2$, CONHMe, $CONMe_2$, OCH_2cyclopropyl and OC_3cyclopropyl;

or R^{10} is a fused bicyclic system:



(If)

wherein each of R^{11} is hydrogen.

14. A pharmaceutical composition comprising a compound according to any preceding numbered disclosure, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, hydrate, solvate or ester thereof, and a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier.

15. A compound or pharmaceutical composition according to any preceding numbered disclosure, for use in therapy or prophylaxis.

16. A compound or pharmaceutical composition according to any of numbered disclosures 1 to 14, for use in a method of treatment of an infection with, or a disease caused by, a bacterium.

17. A compound or pharmaceutical composition according to any of numbered disclosures 1 to 14, for the manufacture of a medicament for use in the treatment of an infection with, or a disease caused by, a bacterium.

18. A compound or pharmaceutical composition according to numbered disclosure 16 or 17, wherein the bacterium is Gram-negative or Gram-positive bacterium.

19. A compound or pharmaceutical composition according to numbered disclosure 18, wherein the bacterium is a Gram-negative bacterium, preferably *Enterobacteriaceae*.

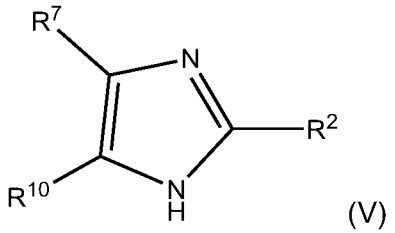
20. A method of treating an infection with, or disease caused by, a bacterium in a subject in need thereof, comprising administering to said subject an effective amount of a compound or composition according to any of numbered disclosures 1 to 14.

21. A method according to numbered disclosure 20, wherein the bacterium is a Gram-negative or Gram-positive bacterium.

22. A method according to numbered disclosure 21, wherein the bacterium is a Gram-negative bacterium, preferably *Enterobacteriaceae*.

The claims defining the invention are as follows:

1. A compound, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, hydrate, solvate, prodrug, or ester thereof, having the general formula (V):



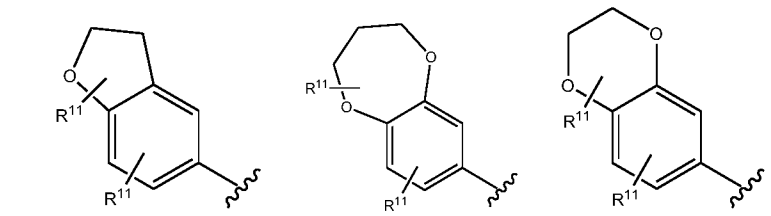
(V)

wherein

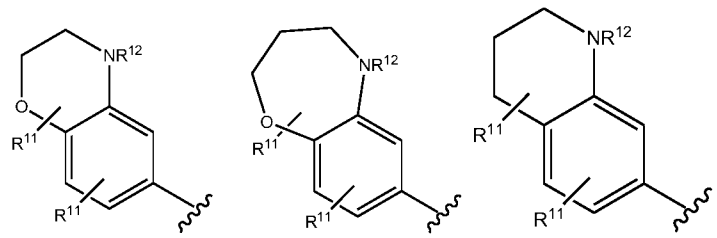
R^2 is NH_2;

R^7 is selected from the group consisting of phenyl, wherein the phenyl group is substituted with one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of NHMe, $CONH_2$ and OCH_2fluorophenyl;

or R^7 is a fused bicyclic system selected from the group consisting of:



(Ia) (Ib) (Ic)



(Ie) (Ij) (Ik)

wherein each R^{11} is independently selected from hydrogen and halogen; and R^{12} is selected from hydrogen, $C_{1\text{-}4}$alkyl, $C_{3\text{-}7}$cycloalkyl, $C_{4\text{-}7}$heterocyclyl, COR^{13}, SO_2R^{13}, $C_{1\text{-}4}$alkyl-CO_2R^{14}, $C_{1\text{-}4}$alkyl-OR^{14}, $C_{1\text{-}4}$alky-$NR^{14}R^{15}$, $C_{1\text{-}4}$alkyl-$C_{3\text{-}7}$cycloalkyl, $COC_{1\text{-}4}$alkyl-$NR^{14}R^{15}$, an amino acid, and a quaternary ammonium cation ($NR^{16}{}_4{}^+$);

R^{13} is selected from $C_{1\text{-}4}$alkyl, $C_{3\text{-}7}$cycloalkyl, phenyl, and monocyclic 5- or 6-membered heteroaryl, the phenyl or 5- or 6- membered heteroaryl being optionally substituted with one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of halogen, $C_{1\text{-}2}$alkyl, O (oxo), S (sulfinyl), NR^3R^4, OR^3 and SR^3;

R^{14} and R^{15} are independently selected from hydrogen, C_{1-4}alkyl, C_{1-4}alkyl-hydroxyl, C_{3-7}cycloalkyl, phenyl, monocyclic 5- or 6- membered heteroaryl, and SO_2R^{13}, the phenyl or 5- or 6- membered heteroaryl being optionally substituted with one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of halogen, C_{1-2}alkyl, O (oxo), S (sulfinyl), NR^3R^4, OR^3 and SR^3;

R^{16} groups are independently selected from C_{1-4}alkyl and phenyl, the phenyl being optionally substituted with one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of halogen, C_{1-2}alkyl, O (oxo), S (sulfinyl), NR^3R^4, OR^3 and SR^3;

R^3 and R^4 are independently selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, C_{1-3}alkyl, COR^5, $CONR^5R^6$, CO_2R^5, C_{1-2}alkyl-NR^5R^6;

or R^3 and R^4 together with the nitrogen atom to which they are attached form a monocyclic 4- to 7- membered cyclic amine group, which group is optionally substituted with one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of NR^5R^6, C_{1-2}alkoxy and oxo;

R^5 and R^6 are independently selected from hydrogen and C_{1-4}alkyl;

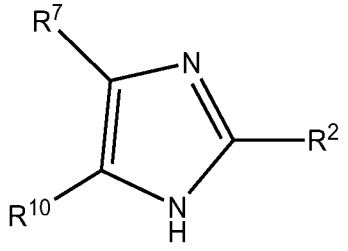
R^{10} is selected from the group consisting of phenyl and pyridyl, wherein the phenyl is optionally substituted with one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of C_{1-4}alkyl, O (oxo), S(sulfinyl), $CONR^3R^4$, NR^3R^4, OR^8, hydroxyl, OCF_3, $-CF_3$, R^8, C_{3-7}cycoalkyl, C_{4-7}heterocyclyl, COR^{13}, SO_2R^{13}, C_{1-4}alkyl-CO_2R^{14}, C_{1-4}alkyl-OR^{14}, C_{1-4}alkyl-$NR^{14}R^{15}$, C_{1-4}alkyl-C_{3-7}cycloalkyl, COC_{1-4}alkyl-$NR^{14}R^{15}$, an amino acid, and a quaternary ammonium cation ($NR^{16}{}_4^+$), and the pyridyl is optionally substituted with one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of halogen, C_{1-4}alkyl, O (oxo), S(sulfinyl), C_{1-4}alkoxy, $CONR^3R^4$, NR^3R^4, OR^8, hydroxyl, OCF_3, $-CF_3$, R^8, C_{3-7}cycoalkyl, C_{4-7}heterocyclyl, COR^{13}, SO_2R^{13}, C_{1-4}alkyl-CO_2R^{14}, C_{1-4}alkyl-OR^{14}, C_{1-4}alkyl-$NR^{14}R^{15}$, C_{1-4}alkyl-C_{3-7}cycloalkyl, COC_{1-4}alkyl-$NR^{14}R^{15}$, an amino acid, and a quaternary ammonium cation ($NR^{16}{}_4^+$); and

R^8 is selected from the group consisting of 3- to 5- membered cycloalkyl and CH_2R^9;

R^9 is selected from the group consisting of phenyl, monocyclic 5- or 6-membered heteroaryl and monocyclic C_{3-7}cycloalkyl, the phenyl or 5- or 6-membered heteroaryl being optionally substituted with one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of halogen, C_{1-2}alkyl, O (oxo), S (sulfinyl), NR^3R^4, OR^3 and SR^3.

2. A compound according to claim 1, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, hydrate, solvate, prodrug, or ester thereof, wherein each R^{11} is independently selected from hydrogen and F, preferably each R^{11} is hydrogen.

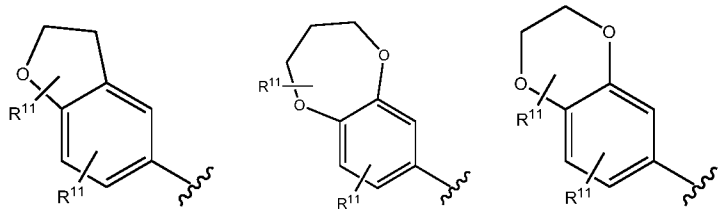
3. A compound according to claim 1 or 2, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, hydrate, solvate, prodrug, or ester thereof, having the general formula (V):



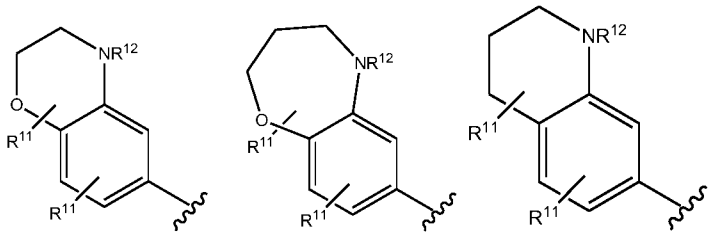
(V)

wherein R^2 is NH_2;

R^7 is a fused bicyclic system selected from the group consisting of:



(Ia) (Ib) (Ic)



(Ie) (Ij) (Ik)

wherein each R^{11} is hydrogen and R^{12} is selected from hydrogen, C_{1-4}alkyl, C_{3-7}cycloalkyl, C_{4-7}heterocyclyl, COR^{13}, SO_2R^{13}, C_{1-4}alkyl-CO_2R^{14}, C_{1-4}alkyl-OR^{14}, C_{1-4}alky-$NR^{14}R^{15}$, C_{1-4}alkyl-C_{3-7}cycloalkyl, COC_{1-4}alkyl-$NR^{14}R^{15}$, an amino acid, and a quaternary ammonium cation ($NR^{16}{}_4{}^+$);

R^{13} is selected from C_{1-4}alkyl, C_{3-7}cycloalkyl, phenyl, and monocyclic 5- or 6-membered heteroaryl, the phenyl or 5- or 6- membered heteroaryl being optionally substituted with one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of halogen, C_{1-2}alkyl, O (oxo), S (sulfinyl), NR^3R^4, OR^3 and SR^3;

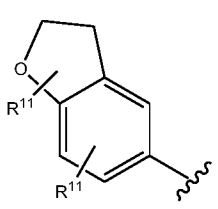
R^{14} and R^{15} are independently selected from hydrogen, C_{1-4}alkyl, C_{1-4}alkyl-hydroxyl, C_{3-7}cycloalkyl, phenyl, monocyclic 5- or 6- membered heteroaryl, and SO_2R^{13}, the phenyl or 5- or 6- membered heteroaryl being optionally substituted with one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of halogen, C_{1-2}alkyl, O (oxo), S (sulfinyl), NR^3R^4, OR^3 and SR^3;

R^{16} groups are independently selected from C_{1-4}alkyl and phenyl, the phenyl being optionally substituted with one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of halogen, C_{1-2}alkyl, O (oxo), S (sulfinyl), NR^3R^4, OR^3 and SR^3; and

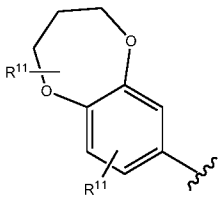
R^{10} is selected from the group consisting of phenyl and pyridyl, wherein the phenyl is optionally substituted with one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of C_{1-4}alkyl, O (oxo), S(sulfinyl), $CONR^3R^4$, NR^3R^4, OR^8, hydroxyl, OCF_3, $-CF_3$, R^8, C_{3-7}cycoalkyl, C_{4-7}heterocyclyl, COR^{13}, SO_2R^{13}, C_{1-4}alkyl-CO_2R^{14}, C_{1-4}alkyl-OR^{14}, C_{1-4}alkyl-$NR^{14}R^{15}$, C_{1-4}alkyl-C_{3-7}cycloalkyl, COC_{1-4}alkyl-$NR^{14}R^{15}$, an amino acid, and a quaternary ammonium cation ($NR^{16}{}_4^+$), and the pyridyl is optionally substituted with one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of halogen, C_{1-4}alkyl, O (oxo), S(sulfinyl), C_{1-4}alkoxy, $CONR^3R^4$, NR^3R^4, OR^8, hydroxyl, OCF_3, $-CF_3$, R^8, C_{3-7}cycoalkyl, C_{4-7}heterocyclyl, COR^{13}, SO_2R^{13}, C_{1-4}alkyl-CO_2R^{14}, C_{1-4}alkyl-OR^{14}, C_{1-4}alkyl-$NR^{14}R^{15}$, C_{1-4}alkyl-C_{3-7}cycloalkyl, COC_{1-4}alkyl-$NR^{14}R^{15}$, an amino acid, and a quaternary ammonium cation ($NR^{16}{}_4^+$).

4. A compound according to any of claims 1 to 3, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, hydrate, solvate, prodrug, or ester thereof, wherein R^{10} is selected from the group consisting of phenyl optionally substituted with one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of NH_2, NHMe, C_{1-2}alkyl, $CONH_2$, CONHMe, $CONMe_2$, OCH_2C_3cycloalkyl, OC_3cycloalkyl, OCF_3 and hydroxyl, and pyridyl optionally substituted with one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of Cl, F, NH_2, NHMe, C_{1-2}alkyl, C_{1-2}alkoxy, $CONH_2$, CONHMe, $CONMe_2$, OCH_2C_3cycloalkyl, OC_3cycloalkyl, OCF_3 and hydroxyl; preferably the phenyl group is optionally substituted with one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of NH_2, NHMe, and C_{1-2}alkyl, and the pyridyl group is optionally substituted with one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of Cl, F, NH_2, NHMe and C_{1-2}alkyl.

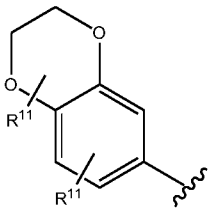
5. A compound according to any of claims 1 to 4, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, hydrate, solvate, prodrug, or ester thereof, wherein R^7 is a fused bicyclic system selected from the group consisting of:



(Ia)

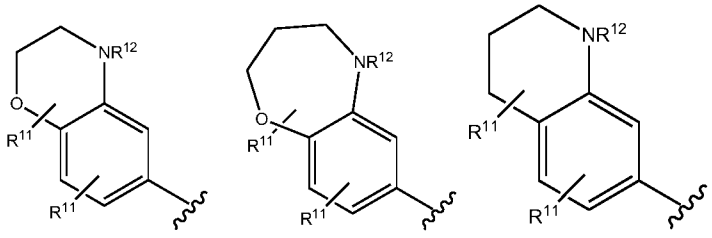


(Ib)



(Ic)

19 Apr 2023
2018361828



(Ie) (Ij) (Ik)

wherein each R^{11} is hydrogen and R^{12} is selected from hydrogen, C_{1-4}alkyl, C_{3-7}cycloalkyl, C_{4-7}heterocyclyl, COR^{13}, SO_2R^{13}, C_{1-4}alkyl-CO_2R^{14}, C_{1-4}alkyl-OR^{14}, C_{1-4}alky-$NR^{14}R^{15}$, C_{1-4}alkyl-C_{3-7}cycloalkyl, COC_{1-4}alkyl-$NR^{14}R^{15}$, an amino acid, and a quaternary ammonium cation ($NR^{16}{}_4^+$);

R^{13} is selected from C_{1-4}alkyl, C_{3-7}cycloalkyl, phenyl, and monocyclic 5- or 6-membered heteroaryl, the phenyl or 5- or 6- membered heteroaryl being optionally substituted with one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of halogen, C_{1-2}alkyl, O (oxo), S (sulfinyl), NR^3R^4, OR^3 and SR^3;

R^{14} and R^{15} are independently selected from hydrogen, C_{1-4}alkyl, C_{1-4}alkyl-hydroxyl, C_{3-7}cycloalkyl, phenyl, monocyclic 5- or 6- membered heteroaryl, and SO_2R^{13}, the phenyl or 5- or 6- membered heteroaryl being optionally substituted with one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of halogen, C_{1-2}alkyl, O (oxo), S (sulfinyl), NR^3R^4, OR^3 and SR^3;

R^{16} groups are independently selected from C_{1-4}alkyl and phenyl, the phenyl being optionally substituted with one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of halogen, C_{1-2}alkyl, O (oxo), S (sulfinyl), NR^3R^4, OR^3 and SR^3.

6. A compound according to any of claims 1 to 5, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, hydrate, solvate, prodrug, or ester thereof, wherein R^{10} is a pyridyl group optionally substituted with one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of Cl, F, NH_2, NHMe, C_{1-2}alkyl, C_{1-2}alkoxy, $CONH_2$, CONHMe, $CONMe_2$, OCH_2C_3cycloalkyl, OC_3cycloalkyl, OCF_3 and hydroxyl; preferably the pyridyl group is optionally substituted with one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of Cl, F, NH_2, NHMe and C_{1-2}alkyl.

7. A pharmaceutical composition comprising a compound according to any preceding claim, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, hydrate, solvate, prodrug, or ester thereof, and a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier.

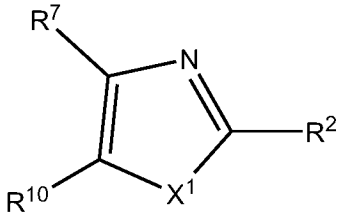
8. A compound or pharmaceutical composition according to any preceding claim, for use in therapy or prophylaxis of an infection with, or disease caused by, *Enterobacteriaceae*.

9. A compound or pharmaceutical composition according to any of claims 1 to 7, for use in a method of treatment of an infection with, or a disease caused by, *Enterobacteriaceae*.

10. A compound or pharmaceutical composition according to any of claims 1 to 7, for the manufacture of a medicament for use in the treatment of an infection with, or a disease caused by, *Enterobacteriaceae*.

11. A method of treating an infection with, or disease caused by, *Enterobacteriaceae* in a subject in need thereof, comprising administering to said subject an effective amount of a compound or composition according to any of claims 1 to 7.

12. Use of a compound, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, hydrate, solvate, prodrug, or ester thereof, in the manufacture of a medicament for the treatment of infection with, or disease caused by, the bacterium *Enterobacteriaceae*, having the general formula (II):



(II)

wherein

X^1 is selected from NR^1;

R^1 is selected from hydrogen or C_{1-2}alkyl;

R^2 is NR^3R^4;

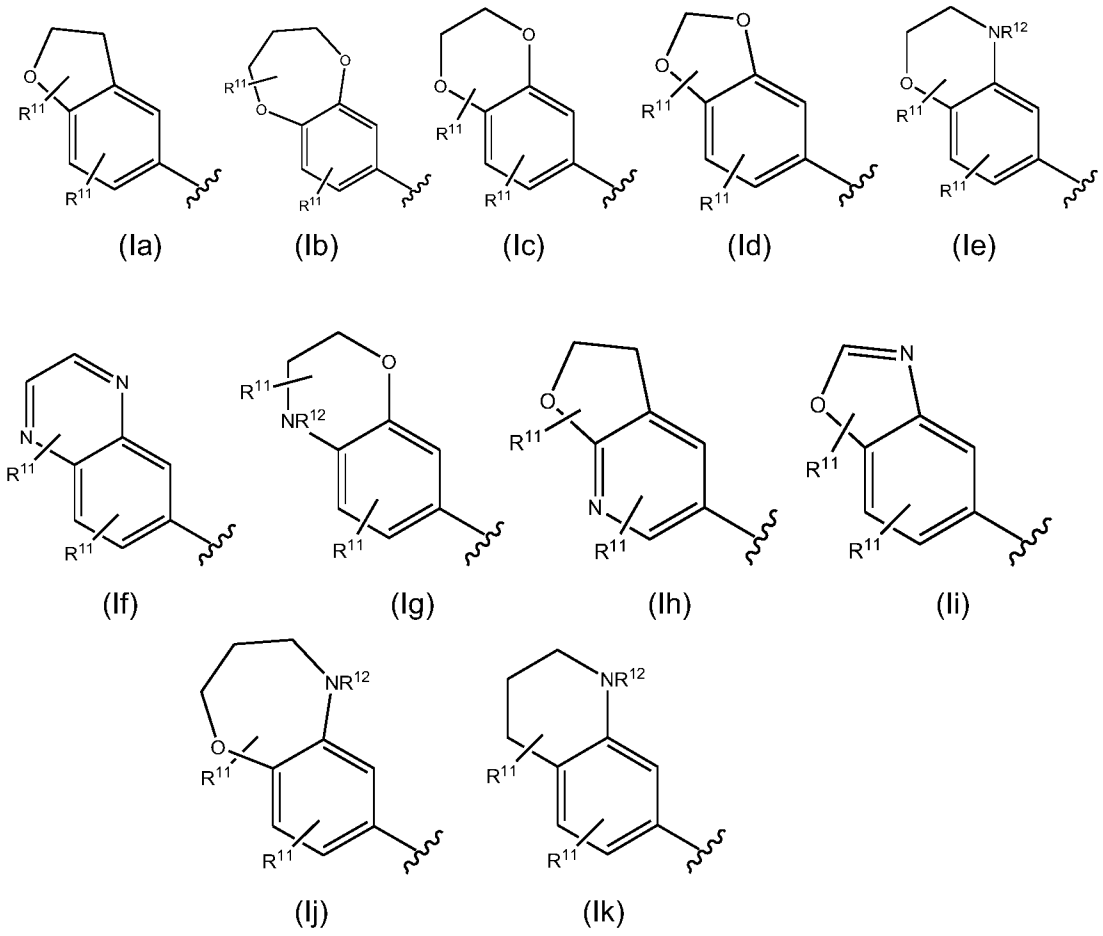
R^3 and R^4 are independently selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, C_{1-3}alkyl, COR^5, $CONR^5R^6$, CO_2R^5, C_{1-2}alkyl-NR^5R^6;

R^5 and R^6 are independently selected from the group consisting of hydrogen and C_{1-4}alkyl;

R^7 is selected from the group consisting of phenyl, monocyclic 5- to 7- membered heterocyclyl and monocyclic 5- or 6-membered heteroaryl, wherein the phenyl is

substituted with one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of NR^3R^4, $CONR^3R^4$, OR^8, OCF_3, OCH_2CN and hydroxyl, and the monocyclic 5- or to 7-membered heterocyclyl and monocyclic 5- or 6-membered heteroaryl groups are optionally substituted with one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of halogen, C_{1-2}alkyl, C_{1-2}alkoxy, NR^3R^4, $CONR^3R^4$, OR^8, OCF_3, C_{1-2}alkoxy-CN and hydroxyl;

or R^7 is a fused bicyclic system selected from the group consisting of any one of (Ia) to (Ik):



wherein each R^{11} is independently selected from hydrogen, halogen, O (oxo), and C_{1-4}alkyl; and R^{12} is selected from hydrogen, C_{1-4}alkyl, C_{3-7}cycloalkyl, C_{4-7}heterocyclyl, COR^{13}, SO_2R^{13}, C_{1-4}alkyl-CO_2R^{14}, C_{1-4}alkyl-OR^{14}, C_{1-4}alky-$NR^{14}R^{15}$, C_{1-4}alkyl-C_{3-7}cycloalkyl, COC_{1-4}alkyl-$NR^{14}R^{15}$, an amino acid, and a quaternary ammonium cation ($NR^{16}{}_4{}^+$);

R^{13} is selected from C_{1-4}alkyl, C_{3-7}cycloalkyl, phenyl, and monocyclic 5- or 6-membered heteroaryl, the phenyl or 5- or 6- membered heteroaryl being optionally substituted with one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of halogen, C_{1-2}alkyl, O (oxo), S (sulfinyl), NR^3R^4, OR^3 and SR^3;

R^{14} and R^{15} are independently selected from hydrogen, C_{1-4}alkyl, C_{1-4}alkyl-hydroxyl, C_{3-7}cycloalkyl, phenyl, monocyclic 5- or 6- membered heteroaryl, and SO_2R^{13}, the phenyl or 5- or 6- membered heteroaryl being optionally substituted with one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of halogen, C_{1-2}alkyl, O (oxo), S (sulfinyl), NR^3R^4, OR^3 and SR^3;

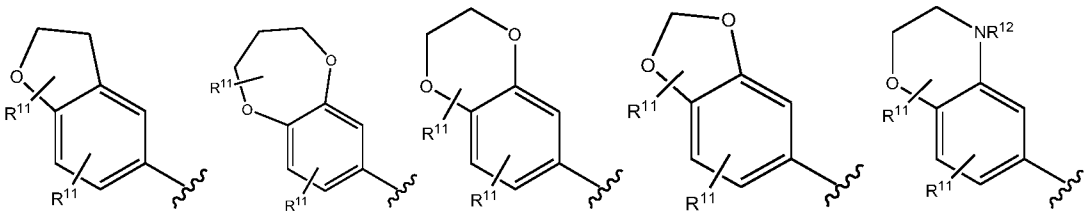
R^{16} groups are independently selected from C_{1-4}alkyl and phenyl, the phenyl being optionally substituted with one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of halogen, C_{1-2}alkyl, O (oxo), S (sulfinyl), NR^3R^4, OR^3 and SR^3;

R^8 is selected from the group consisting of 3- to 5- membered cycloalkyl and CH_2R^9;

R^9 is selected from the group consisting of phenyl, monocyclic 5- or 6-membered heteroaryl and monocyclic C_{3-7}cycloalkyl, the phenyl or 5- or 6-membered heteroaryl being optionally substituted with one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of halogen, C_{1-2}alkyl, O (oxo), S (sulfinyl), NR^3R^4, OR^3 and SR^3;

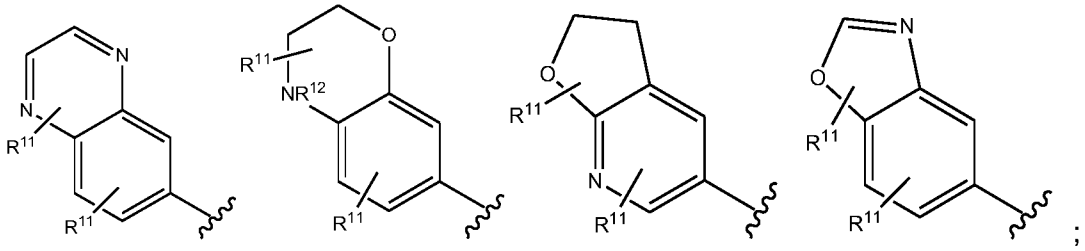
R^{10} is selected from the group consisting of phenyl and monocyclic 5- or 6-membered heteroaryl ring, wherein the phenyl is optionally substituted with one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of C_{1-4}alkyl, O (oxo), S(sulfinyl), $CONR^3R^4$, NR^3R^4, OR^8, hydroxyl, OCF_3, $-CF_3$, R^8, C_{3-7}cycoalkyl, C_{4-7}heterocyclyl, COR^{13}, SO_2R^{13}, C_{1-4}alkyl-CO_2R^{14}, C_{1-4}alkyl-OR^{14}, C_{1-4}alkyl-$NR^{14}R^{15}$, C_{1-4}alkyl-C_{3-7}cycloalkyl, COC_{1-4}alkyl-$NR^{14}R^{15}$, an amino acid, and a quaternary ammonium cation ($NR^{16}{}_4^+$), and the 5- or 6-membered heteroaryl rings are optionally substituted with one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of halogen, C_{1-4}alkyl, O (oxo), S(sulfinyl), C_{1-4}alkoxy, $CONR^3R^4$, NR^3R^4, OR^8, hydroxyl, OCF_3, $-CF_3$, R^8, C_{3-7}cycoalkyl, C_{4-7}heterocyclyl, COR^{13}, SO_2R^{13}, C_{1-4}alkyl-CO_2R^{14}, C_{1-4}alkyl-OR^{14}, C_{1-4}alkyl-$NR^{14}R^{15}$, C_{1-4}alkyl-C_{3-7}cycloalkyl, COC_{1-4}alkyl-$NR^{14}R^{15}$, an amino acid, and a quaternary ammonium cation ($NR^{16}{}_4^+$);

or R^{10} is a fused bicyclic system selected from the group consisting of any one of (Ia) to (Ii):



(Ia) (Ib) (Ic) (Id) (Ie)

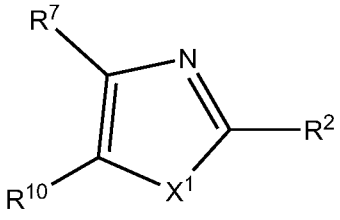
2018361828 19 Apr 2023



(If) (Ig) (Ih) (Ii) ;

wherein each R^{11} is independently selected from hydrogen, halogen or C_{1-4}alkyl and R^{12} is selected from hydrogen, or C_{1-4}alkyl.

13. Use of a compound according to claim 12, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, hydrate, solvate, prodrug, or ester thereof, in the manufacture of a medicament for the treatment of infraction with, or disease caused by, the bacterium *Enterobacteriaceae*, having the general formula (III):



(III)

wherein

X^1 is NH;

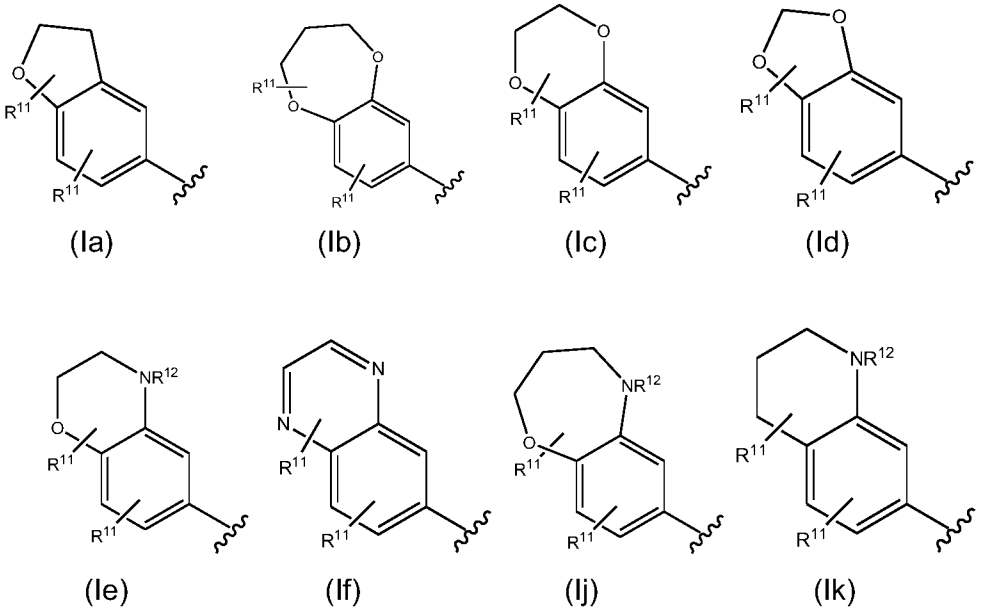
R^2 is NHR^3;

R^3 and R^4 are independently selected from the group consisting of hydrogen and C_{1-3}alkyl;

R^7 is selected from the group consisting of phenyl, monocyclic 6-membered nitrogen containing heterocyclyl and monocyclic 6-membered nitrogen containing heteroaryl, wherein the phenyl group is substituted with one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of NH_2, NHMe, $CONR^3R^4$, OCH_2R^9, OCF_3, OCH_2CN, and hydroxyl, and the 6-membered heterocyclyl and 6-membered heteroaryl groups are optionally substituted with one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of Cl, F, NH_2, NHMe, C_{1-2}alkyl, C_{1-2}alkoxy, $CONR^3R^4$, OCH_2R^9, OCF_3, OCH_2CN, and hydroxyl ;

or R^7 is a fused bicyclic system selected from the group consisting of:

2018361828 19 Apr 2023



wherein each R^{11} is independently selected from hydrogen, halogen, O (oxo), and C_{1-4}alkyl; and R^{12} is selected from hydrogen, C_{1-4}alkyl, C_{3-7}cycloalkyl, C_{4-7}heterocyclyl, COR^{13}, SO_2R^{13}, C_{1-4}alkyl-CO_2R^{14}, C_{1-4}alkyl-OR^{14}, C_{1-4}alky-$NR^{14}R^{15}$, C_{1-4}alkyl-C_{3-7}cycloalkyl, COC_{1-4}alkyl-$NR^{14}R^{15}$, an amino acid, and a quaternary ammonium cation ($NR^{16}{}_4^+$);

R^{13} is selected from C_{1-4}alkyl, C_{3-7}cycloalkyl, phenyl, and monocyclic 5- or 6-membered heteroaryl, the phenyl or 5- or 6- membered heteroaryl being optionally substituted with one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of halogen, C_{1-2}alkyl, O (oxo), S (sulfinyl), NR^3R^4, OR^3 and SR^3;

R^{14} and R^{15} are independently selected from hydrogen, C_{1-4}alkyl, C_{1-4}alkyl-hydroxyl, C_{3-7}cycloalkyl, phenyl, monocyclic 5- or 6- membered heteroaryl, and SO_2R^{13}, the phenyl or 5- or 6- membered heteroaryl being optionally substituted with one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of halogen, C_{1-2}alkyl, O (oxo), S (sulfinyl), NR^3R^4, OR^3 and SR^3;

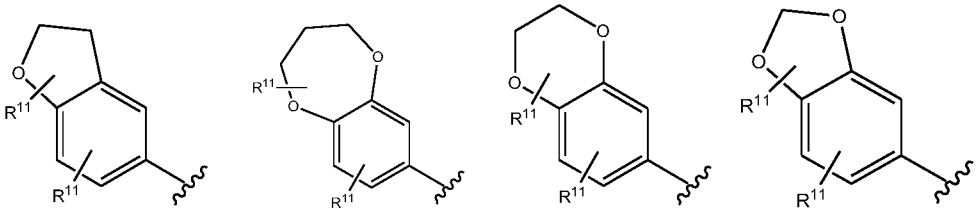
R^{16} groups are independently selected from C_{1-4}alkyl and phenyl, the phenyl being optionally substituted with one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of halogen, C_{1-2}alkyl, O (oxo), S (sulfinyl), NR^3R^4, OR^3 and SR^3;

R^9 is selected from the group consisting of phenyl optionally substituted with one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of Cl, F, methyl, NH_2, NHMe, and OH;

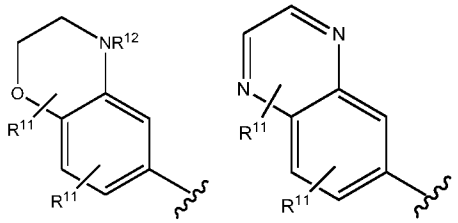
R^{10} is selected from the group consisting of phenyl and monocyclic 6-membered nitrogen containing heteroaryl, and monocyclic 6-membered nitrogen containing heterocyclyl, wherein the phenyl is optionally substituted with one or more substituents

selected from the group consisting of C_{1-4}alkyl, O (oxo), S(sulfinyl), $CONR^3R^4$, NR^3R^4, OR^8, hydroxyl, OCF_3, $-CF_3$, R^8, C_{3-7}cycoalkyl, C_{4-7}heterocyclyl, COR^{13}, SO_2R^{13}, C_{1-4}alkyl-CO_2R^{14}, C_{1-4}alkyl-OR^{14}, C_{1-4}alkyl-$NR^{14}R^{15}$, C_{1-4}alkyl-C_{3-7}cycloalkyl, COC_{1-4}alkyl-$NR^{14}R^{15}$, an amino acid, and a quaternary ammonium cation ($NR^{16}{}_4^+$), and the 6-membered heteroaryl and 6-membered heterocyclyl groups are optionally substituted with one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of halogen, C_{1-4}alkyl, O (oxo), S(sulfinyl), C_{1-4}alkoxy, $CONR^3R^4$, NR^3R^4, OR^8, hydroxyl, OCF_3, $-CF_3$, R^8, C_{3-7}cycoalkyl, C_{4-7}heterocyclyl, COR^{13}, SO_2R^{13}, C_{1-4}alkyl-CO_2R^{14}, C_{1-4}alkyl-OR^{14}, C_{1-4}alkyl-$NR^{14}R^{15}$, C_{1-4}alkyl-C_{3-7}cycloalkyl, COC_{1-4}alkyl-$NR^{14}R^{15}$, an amino acid, and a quaternary ammonium cation ($NR^{16}{}_4^+$);

or R^{10} is a fused bicyclic system selected from the group consisting of:



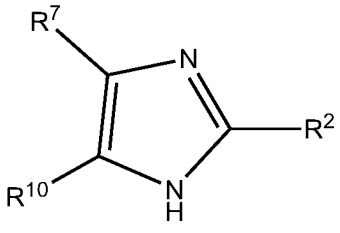
(Ia) (Ib) (Ic) (Id)



(Ie) (If)

wherein each R^{11} is independently selected from hydrogen, halogen and C_{1-4}alkyl and R^{12} is selected from hydrogen, and C_{1-4}alkyl.

14. Use of a compound according to claim 12 or 13, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, hydrate, solvate, prodrug, or ester thereof, in the manufacture of a medicament for the treatment of infection with, or disease caused by, the bacterium *Enterobacteriaceae*, having the general formula (IV):



(IV)

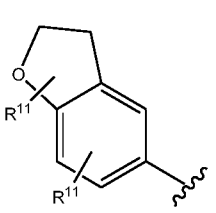
wherein

R^2 is selected from the group consisting of NHR^3;

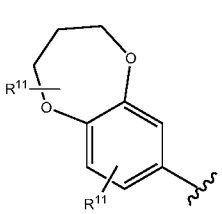
R^3 is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen and C_{1-3}alkyl;

R^7 is selected from the group consisting of phenyl, pyridyl, and pyrimidine, wherein the phenyl group is substituted with one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of NH_2, NHMe, $CONH_2$, CONHMe, OCH_2R^9, OCF_3, OCH_2CN, and hydroxyl, and the pyridyl group is optionally substituted with one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of Cl, F, NH_2, Me, NHMe, methoxy, ethoxy, $CONH_2$, CONHMe, OCH_2R^9, OCF_3, OCH_2CN, and hydroxyl;

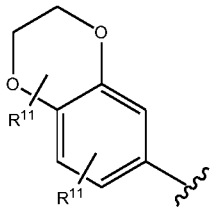
or R^7 is a fused bicyclic system selected from the group consisting of:



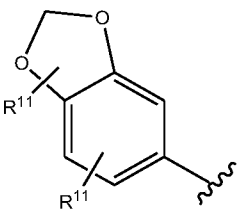
(Ia)



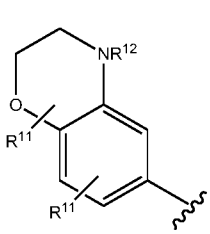
(Ib)



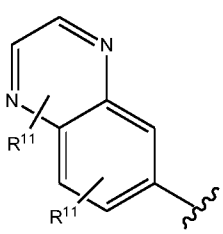
(Ic)



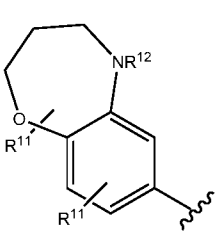
(Id)



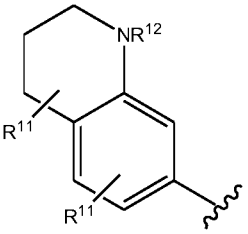
(Ie)



(If)



(Ij)



(Ik)

wherein each R^{11} is independently selected from hydrogen, F, O (oxo), methyl and ethyl; and R^{12} is selected from hydrogen, C_{1-4}alkyl, C_{3-7}cycloalkyl, C_{4-7}heterocyclyl, COR^{13}, SO_2R^{13}, C_{1-4}alkyl-CO_2R^{14}, C_{1-4}alkyl-OR^{14}, C_{1-4}alky-$NR^{14}R^{15}$, C_{1-4}alkyl-C_{3-7}cycloalkyl, COC_{1-4}alkyl-$NR^{14}R^{15}$, an amino acid, and a quaternary ammonium cation ($NR^{16}{}_4{}^+$);

R^{13} is selected from C_{1-4}alkyl, C_{3-7}cycloalkyl, phenyl, and monocyclic 5- or 6-membered heteroaryl, the phenyl or 5- or 6- membered heteroaryl being optionally

substituted with one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of halogen, C_{1-2}alkyl, O (oxo), S (sulfinyl), NR^3R^4, OR^3 and SR^3;

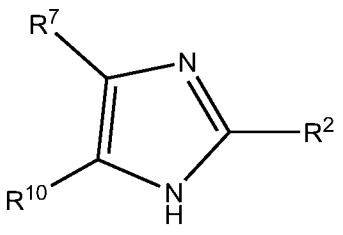
R^{14} and R^{15} are independently selected from hydrogen, C_{1-4}alkyl, C_{1-4}alkyl-hydroxyl, C_{3-7}cycloalkyl, phenyl, monocyclic 5- or 6- membered heteroaryl, and SO_2R^{13}, the phenyl or 5- or 6- membered heteroaryl being optionally substituted with one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of halogen, C_{1-2}alkyl, O (oxo), S (sulfinyl), NR^3R^4, OR^3 and SR^3;

R^{16} groups are independently selected from C_{1-4}alkyl and phenyl, the phenyl being optionally substituted with one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of halogen, C_{1-2}alkyl, O (oxo), S (sulfinyl), NR^3R^4, OR^3 and SR^3;

R^9 is selected from the group consisting of phenyl optionally substituted with F, methyl, NH_2 and OH;

R^{10} is selected from the group consisting of phenyl, pyridyl and pyridinone, wherein the phenyl is optionally substituted with one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of C_{1-4}alkyl, O (oxo), S(sulfinyl), $CONR^3R^4$, NR^3R^4, OR^8, hydroxyl, OCF_3, -CF_3, R^8, C_{3-7}cycoalkyl, C_{4-7}heterocyclyl, COR^{13}, SO_2R^{13}, C_{1-4}alkyl-CO_2R^{14}, C_{1-4}alkyl-OR^{14}, C_{1-4}alkyl-$NR^{14}R^{15}$, C_{1-4}alkyl-C_{3-7}cycloalkyl, COC_{1-4}alkyl-$NR^{14}R^{15}$, an amino acid, and a quaternary ammonium cation ($NR^{16}{}_4^+$), and the pyridyl is optionally substituted with one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of halogen, C_{1-4}alkyl, O (oxo), S(sulfinyl), C_{1-4}alkoxy, $CONR^3R^4$, NR^3R^4, OR^8, hydroxyl, OCF_3, -CF_3, R^8, C_{3-7}cycoalkyl, C_{4-7}heterocyclyl, COR^{13}, SO_2R^{13}, C_{1-4}alkyl-CO_2R^{14}, C_{1-4}alkyl-OR^{14}, C_{1-4}alkyl-$NR^{14}R^{15}$, C_{1-4}alkyl-C_{3-7}cycloalkyl, COC_{1-4}alkyl-$NR^{14}R^{15}$, an amino acid, and a quaternary ammonium cation ($NR^{16}{}_4^+$).

15. Use of a compound according to any of claims 12 to 14, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, hydrate, solvate, prodrug, or ester thereof, in the manufacture of a medicament for the treatment of infection with, or disease caused by, the bacterium *Enterobacteriaceae*, having the general formula (V):

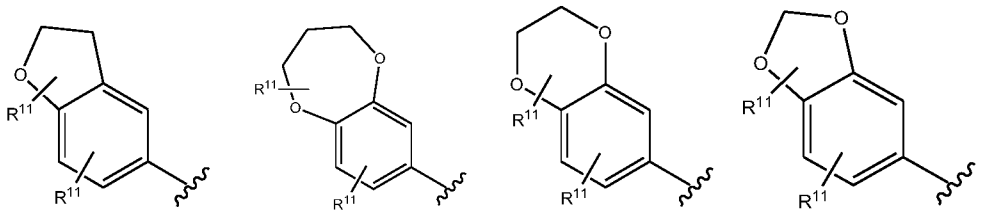


(V)

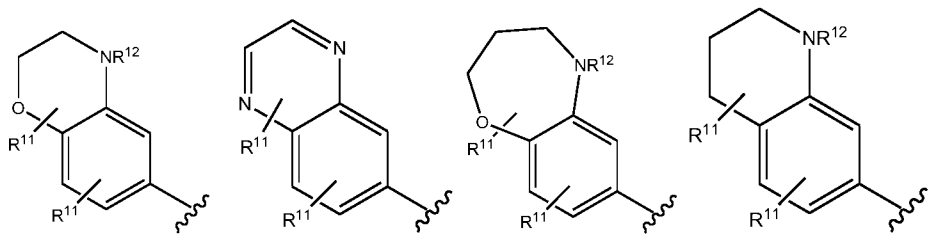
wherein

R^2 is NH_2;

R^7 is selected from the group consisting of phenyl and pyridyl, wherein the phenyl group is substituted with one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of NH_2, NHMe, $CONH_2$, OCH_2fluorophenyl and hydroxyl, and the pyridyl group is optionally substituted with one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of Cl, F, NH_2, Me, NHMe, methoxy, $CONH_2$, OCH_2fluorophenyl and hydroxyl;
or R^7 is a fused bicyclic system selected from the group consisting of:



(Ia) (Ib) (Ic) (Id)



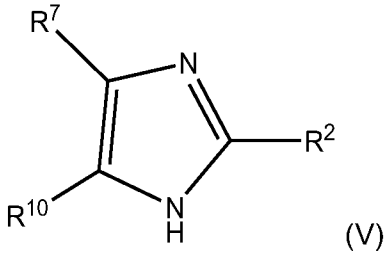
(Ie) (If) (Ij) (Ik)

wherein each R^{11} is independently selected from hydrogen and F; and R^{12} is selected from hydrogen, $C_{1\text{-}4}$alkyl, $C_{3\text{-}7}$cycloalkyl, $C_{4\text{-}7}$heterocyclyl, COR^{13}, SO_2R^{13}, $C_{1\text{-}4}$alkyl-CO_2R^{14}, $C_{1\text{-}4}$alkyl-OR^{14}, $C_{1\text{-}4}$alky-$NR^{14}R^{15}$, $C_{1\text{-}4}$alkyl-$C_{3\text{-}7}$cycloalkyl, $COC_{1\text{-}4}$alkyl-$NR^{14}R^{15}$, an amino acid, and a quaternary ammonium cation ($NR^{16}{}_4{}^+$);
R^{13} is selected from $C_{1\text{-}4}$alkyl, $C_{3\text{-}7}$cycloalkyl, phenyl, and monocyclic 5- or 6-membered heteroaryl, the phenyl or 5- or 6- membered heteroaryl being optionally substituted with one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of halogen, $C_{1\text{-}2}$alkyl, O (oxo), S (sulfinyl), NR^3R^4, OR^3 and SR^3;
R^{14} and R^{15} are independently selected from hydrogen, $C_{1\text{-}4}$alkyl, $C_{1\text{-}4}$alkyl-hydroxyl, $C_{3\text{-}7}$cycloalkyl, phenyl, monocyclic 5- or 6- membered heteroaryl, and SO_2R^{13}, the phenyl or 5- or 6- membered heteroaryl being optionally substituted with one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of halogen, $C_{1\text{-}2}$alkyl, O (oxo), S (sulfinyl), NR^3R^4, OR^3 and SR^3;
R^{16} groups are independently selected from $C_{1\text{-}4}$alkyl and phenyl, the phenyl being optionally substituted with one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of halogen, $C_{1\text{-}2}$alkyl, O (oxo), S (sulfinyl), NR^3R^4, OR^3 and SR^3; and

R^{10} is selected from the group consisting of phenyl and pyridyl, wherein the phenyl is optionally substituted with one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of C_{1-4}alkyl, O (oxo), S(sulfinyl), $CONR^3R^4$, NR^3R^4, OR^8, hydroxyl, OCF_3, $-CF_3$, R^8, C_{3-7}cycoalkyl, C_{4-7}heterocyclyl, COR^{13}, SO_2R^{13}, C_{1-4}alkyl-CO_2R^{14}, C_{1-4}alkyl-OR^{14}, C_{1-4}alkyl-$NR^{14}R^{15}$, C_{1-4}alkyl-C_{3-7}cycloalkyl, COC_{1-4}alkyl-$NR^{14}R^{15}$, an amino acid, and a quaternary ammonium cation ($NR^{16}{}_4^+$), and the pyridyl is optionally substituted with one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of halogen, C_{1-4}alkyl, O (oxo), S(sulfinyl), C_{1-4}alkoxy, $CONR^3R^4$, NR^3R^4, OR^8, hydroxyl, OCF_3, $-CF_3$, R^8, C_{3-7}cycoalkyl, C_{4-7}heterocyclyl, COR^{13}, SO_2R^{13}, C_{1-4}alkyl-CO_2R^{14}, C_{1-4}alkyl-OR^{14}, C_{1-4}alkyl-$NR^{14}R^{15}$, C_{1-4}alkyl-C_{3-7}cycloalkyl, COC_{1-4}alkyl-$NR^{14}R^{15}$, an amino acid, and a quaternary ammonium cation ($NR^{16}{}_4^+$).

16. Use of a compound according to claim 15, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, hydrate, solvate, prodrug, or ester thereof, in the manufacture of a medicament for the treatment of infection with, or disease caused by, the bacterium *Enterobacteriaceae*, wherein each R^{11} is hydrogen.

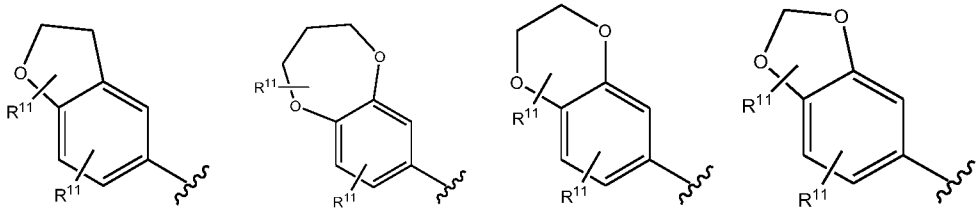
17. Use of a compound according to claim 15 or 16, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, hydrate, solvate, prodrug, or ester thereof, in the manufacture of a medicament for the treatment of infection with, or disease caused by, the bacterium *Enterobacteriaceae,* having the general formula (V):



(V)

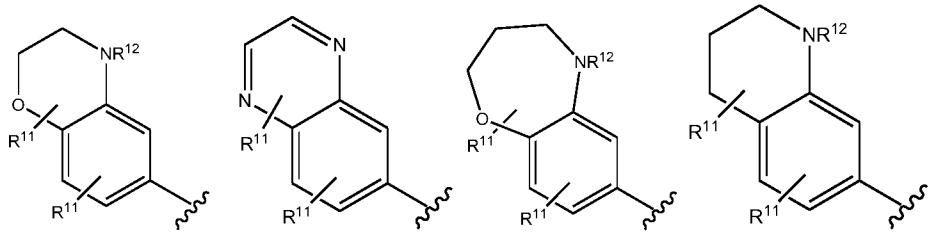
wherein R^2 is NH_2;

R^7 is a fused bicyclic system selected from the group consisting of:



(Ia) (Ib) (Ic) (Id)

19 Apr 2023
2018361828



(Ie) (If) (Ij) (Ik)

wherein each R^{11} is independently selected from hydrogen; and R^{12} is selected from hydrogen, C_{1-4}alkyl, C_{3-7}cycloalkyl, C_{4-7}heterocyclyl, COR^{13}, SO_2R^{13}, C_{1-4}alkyl-CO_2R^{14}, C_{1-4}alkyl-OR^{14}, C_{1-4}alky-$NR^{14}R^{15}$, C_{1-4}alkyl-C_{3-7}cycloalkyl, COC_{1-4}alkyl-$NR^{14}R^{15}$, an amino acid, and a quaternary ammonium cation ($NR^{16}{}_4^+$);

R^{13} is selected from C_{1-4}alkyl, C_{3-7}cycloalkyl, phenyl, and monocyclic 5- or 6-membered heteroaryl, the phenyl or 5- or 6- membered heteroaryl being optionally substituted with one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of halogen, C_{1-2}alkyl, O (oxo), S (sulfinyl), NR^3R^4, OR^3 and SR^3;

R^{14} and R^{15} are independently selected from hydrogen, C_{1-4}alkyl, C_{1-4}alkyl-hydroxyl, C_{3-7}cycloalkyl, phenyl, monocyclic 5- or 6- membered heteroaryl, and SO_2R^{13}, the phenyl or 5- or 6- membered heteroaryl being optionally substituted with one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of halogen, C_{1-2}alkyl, O (oxo), S (sulfinyl), NR^3R^4, OR^3 and SR^3;

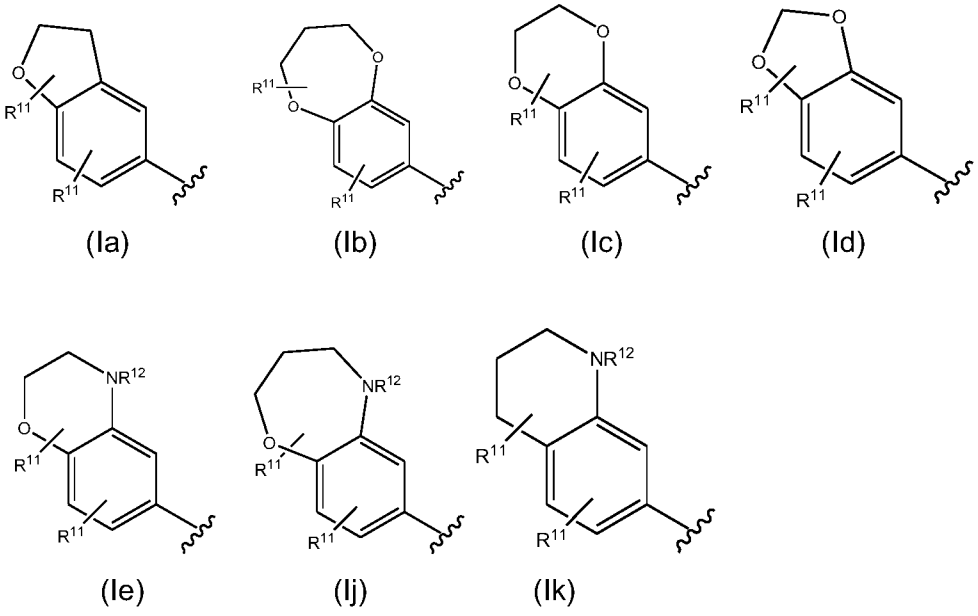
R^{16} groups are independently selected from C_{1-4}alkyl and phenyl, the phenyl being optionally substituted with one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of halogen, C_{1-2}alkyl, O (oxo), S (sulfinyl), NR^3R^4, OR^3 and SR^3; and

R^{10} is selected from the group consisting of phenyl and pyridyl, wherein the phenyl is optionally substituted with one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of C_{1-4}alkyl, O (oxo), S(sulfinyl), $CONR^3R^4$, NR^3R^4, OR^8, hydroxyl, OCF_3, $-CF_3$, R^8, C_{3-7}cycoalkyl, C_{4-7}heterocyclyl, COR^{13}, SO_2R^{13}, C_{1-4}alkyl-CO_2R^{14}, C_{1-4}alkyl-OR^{14}, C_{1-4}alkyl-$NR^{14}R^{15}$, C_{1-4}alkyl-C_{3-7}cycloalkyl, COC_{1-4}alkyl-$NR^{14}R^{15}$, an amino acid, and a quaternary ammonium cation ($NR^{16}{}_4^+$), and the pyridyl is optionally substituted with one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of halogen, C_{1-4}alkyl, O (oxo), S(sulfinyl), C_{1-4}alkoxy, $CONR^3R^4$, NR^3R^4, OR^8, hydroxyl, OCF_3, $-CF_3$, R^8, C_{3-7}cycoalkyl, C_{4-7}heterocyclyl, COR^{13}, SO_2R^{13}, C_{1-4}alkyl-CO_2R^{14}, C_{1-4}alkyl-OR^{14}, C_{1-4}alkyl-$NR^{14}R^{15}$, C_{1-4}alkyl-C_{3-7}cycloalkyl, COC_{1-4}alkyl-$NR^{14}R^{15}$, an amino acid, and a quaternary ammonium cation ($NR^{16}{}_4^+$).

18. Use of a compound according to any of claims 15 to 17, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, hydrate, solvate, prodrug, or ester thereof, in the manufacture of a

medicament for the treatment of infection with, or disease caused by, the bacterium *Enterobacteriaceae,* wherein R^{10} is selected from the group consisting of phenyl optionally substituted with one or more substitutents selected from the group consisting of NH_2, NHMe, C_{1-2}alkyl, $CONH_2$, CONHMe, $CONMe_2$, OCH_2C_3cycloalkyl, OC_3cycloalkyl, OCF_3 and hydroxyl, and pyridyl optionally substituted with one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of Cl, F, NH_2, NHMe, C_{1-2}alkyl, C_{1-2}alkoxy, $CONH_2$, CONHMe, $CONMe_2$, OCH_2C_3cycloalkyl, OC_3cycloalkyl, OCF_3 and hydroxyl; preferably the phenyl group is optionally substituted with one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of NH_2, NHMe, and C_{1-2}alkyl, and the pyridyl group is optionally substituted with one or more substitutents selected from the group consisting of Cl, F, NH_2, NHMe and C_{1-2}alkyl.

19. Use of a compound according to any of claims 15 to 18, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, hydrate, solvate, prodrug, or ester thereof, in the manufacture of a medicament for the treatment of infection with, or disease caused by, the bacterium *Enterobacteriaceae,* wherein R^7 is a fused bicyclic system selected from the group consisting of:



wherein each R^{11} is hydrogen and R^{12} is selected from hydrogen, C_{1-4}alkyl, C_{3-7}cycloalkyl, C_{4-7}heterocyclyl, COR^{13}, SO_2R^{13}, C_{1-4}alkyl-CO_2R^{14} , C_{1-4}alkyl-OR^{14}, C_{1-4}alky-$NR^{14}R^{15}$, C_{1-4}alkyl-C_{3-7}cycloalkyl, COC_{1-4}alkyl-$NR^{14}R^{15}$, an amino acid, and a quaternary ammonium cation ($NR^{16}{}_4{}^+$);

R^{13} is selected from C_{1-4}alkyl, C_{3-7}cycloalkyl, phenyl, and monocyclic 5- or 6-membered heteroaryl, the phenyl or 5- or 6- membered heteroaryl being optionally

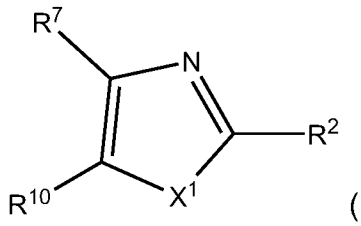
substituted with one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of halogen, C_{1-2}alkyl, O (oxo), S (sulfinyl), NR^3R^4, OR^3 and SR^3;

R^{14} and R^{15} are independently selected from hydrogen, C_{1-4}alkyl, C_{1-4}alkyl-hydroxyl, C_{3-7}cycloalkyl, phenyl, monocyclic 5- or 6- membered heteroaryl, and SO_2R^{13}, the phenyl or 5- or 6- membered heteroaryl being optionally substituted with one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of halogen, C_{1-2}alkyl, O (oxo), S (sulfinyl), NR^3R^4, OR^3 and SR^3;

R^{16} groups are independently selected from C_{1-4}alkyl and phenyl, the phenyl being optionally substituted with one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of halogen, C_{1-2}alkyl, O (oxo), S (sulfinyl), NR^3R^4, OR^3 and SR^3.

20. Use of a compound according to any of claims 15 to 19, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, hydrate, solvate, prodrug, or ester thereof, in the manufacture of a medicament for the treatment of infection with, or disease caused by, the bacterium *Enterobacteriaceae,* wherein R^{10} is a pyridyl group optionally substituted with one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of Cl, F, NH_2, NHMe, C_{1-2}alkyl, C_{1-2}alkoxy, $CONH_2$, CONHMe, $CONMe_2$, OCH_2C_3cycloalkyl, OC_3cycloalkyl, OCF_3 and hydroxyl; preferably the pyridyl group is optionally substituted with one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of Cl, F, NH_2, NHMe and C_{1-2}alkyl.

21. A method of treating an infection with, or disease caused by, the bacterium *Enterobacteriaceae* in a subject in need thereof, the method comprising administering to said subject a compound having the general formula (II), or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, hydrate, solvate, prodrug, or ester thereof:



(II)

wherein

X^1 is selected from NR^1;

R^1 is selected from hydrogen or C_{1-2}alkyl;

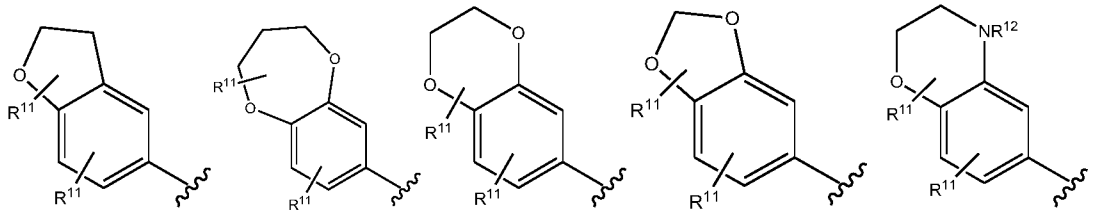
R^2 is NR^3R^4;

R^3 and R^4 are independently selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, C_{1-3}alkyl, COR^5, $CONR^5R^6$, CO_2R^5, C_{1-2}alkyl-NR^5R^6;

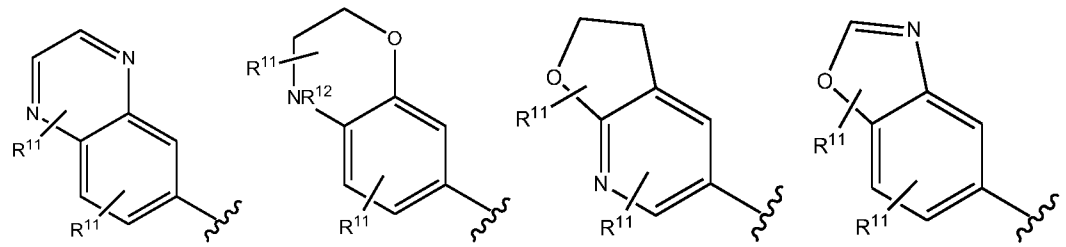
R^5 and R^6 are independently selected from the group consisting of hydrogen and C_{1-4}alkyl;

R^7 is selected from the group consisting of phenyl, monocyclic 5- to 7- membered heterocyclyl and monocyclic 5- or 6-membered heteroaryl, wherein the phenyl is substituted with one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of NR^3R^4, $CONR^3R^4$, OR^8, OCF_3, OCH_2CN and hydroxyl, and the monocyclic 5- or to 7- membered heterocyclyl and monocyclic 5- or 6-membered heteroaryl groups are optionally substituted with one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of halogen, C_{1-2}alkyl, C_{1-2}alkoxy, NR^3R^4, $CONR^3R^4$, OR^8, OCF_3, C_{1-2}alkoxy-CN and hydroxyl;

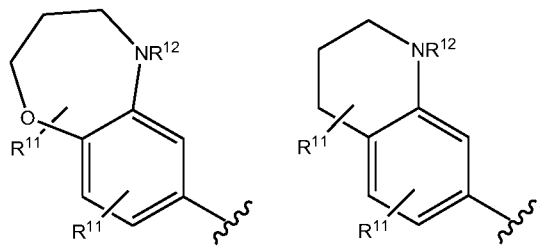
or R^7 is a fused bicyclic system selected from the group consisting of any one of (Ia) to (Ik):



(Ia) (Ib) (Ic) (Id) (Ie)



(If) (Ig) (Ih) (Ii)



(Ij) (Ik)

wherein each R^{11} is independently selected from hydrogen, halogen, O (oxo), and C_{1-4}alkyl; and R^{12} is selected from hydrogen, C_{1-4}alkyl, C_{3-7}cycloalkyl, C_{4-}

$_7$heterocyclyl, COR^{13}, SO_2R^{13}, C_{1-4}alkyl-CO_2R^{14}, C_{1-4}alkyl-OR^{14}, C_{1-4}alky-$NR^{14}R^{15}$, C_{1-4}alkyl-C_{3-7}cycloalkyl, COC_{1-4}alkyl-$NR^{14}R^{15}$, an amino acid, and a quaternary ammonium cation ($NR^{16}{}_4^+$);

R^{13} is selected from C_{1-4}alkyl, C_{3-7}cycloalkyl, phenyl, and monocyclic 5- or 6-membered heteroaryl, the phenyl or 5- or 6- membered heteroaryl being optionally substituted with one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of halogen, C_{1-2}alkyl, O (oxo), S (sulfinyl), NR^3R^4, OR^3 and SR^3;

R^{14} and R^{15} are independently selected from hydrogen, C_{1-4}alkyl, C_{1-4}alkyl-hydroxyl, C_{3-7}cycloalkyl, phenyl, monocyclic 5- or 6- membered heteroaryl, and SO_2R^{13}, the phenyl or 5- or 6- membered heteroaryl being optionally substituted with one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of halogen, C_{1-2}alkyl, O (oxo), S (sulfinyl), NR^3R^4, OR^3 and SR^3;

R^{16} groups are independently selected from C_{1-4}alkyl and phenyl, the phenyl being optionally substituted with one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of halogen, C_{1-2}alkyl, O (oxo), S (sulfinyl), NR^3R^4, OR^3 and SR^3;

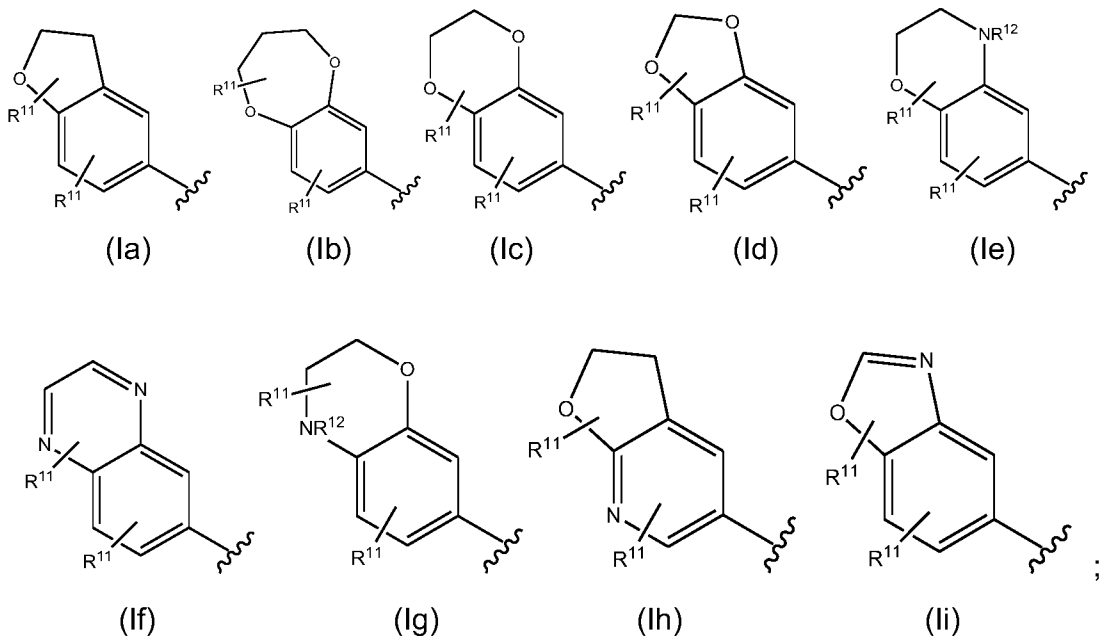
R^8 is selected from the group consisting of 3- to 5- membered cycloalkyl and CH_2R^9;

R^9 is selected from the group consisting of phenyl, monocyclic 5- or 6-membered heteroaryl and monocyclic C_{3-7}cycloalkyl, the phenyl or 5- or 6-membered heteroaryl being optionally substituted with one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of halogen, C_{1-2}alkyl, O (oxo), S (sulfinyl), NR^3R^4, OR^3 and SR^3;

R^{10} is selected from the group consisting of phenyl and monocyclic 5- or 6-membered heteroaryl ring, wherein the phenyl is optionally substituted with one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of C_{1-4}alkyl, O (oxo), S(sulfinyl), $CONR^3R^4$, NR^3R^4, OR^8, hydroxyl, OCF_3, $-CF_3$, R^8, C_{3-7}cycoalkyl, C_{4-7}heterocyclyl, COR^{13}, SO_2R^{13}, C_{1-4}alkyl-CO_2R^{14}, C_{1-4}alkyl-OR^{14}, C_{1-4}alkyl-$NR^{14}R^{15}$, C_{1-4}alkyl-C_{3-7}cycloalkyl, COC_{1-4}alkyl-$NR^{14}R^{15}$, an amino acid, and a quaternary ammonium cation ($NR^{16}{}_4^+$), and the 5- or 6-membered heteroaryl rings are optionally substituted with one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of halogen, C_{1-4}alkyl, O (oxo), S(sulfinyl), C_{1-4}alkoxy, $CONR^3R^4$, NR^3R^4, OR^8, hydroxyl, OCF_3, $-CF_3$, R^8, C_{3-7}cycoalkyl, C_{4-7}heterocyclyl, COR^{13}, SO_2R^{13}, C_{1-4}alkyl-CO_2R^{14}, C_{1-4}alkyl-OR^{14}, C_{1-4}alkyl-$NR^{14}R^{15}$, C_{1-4}alkyl-C_{3-7}cycloalkyl, COC_{1-4}alkyl-$NR^{14}R^{15}$, an amino acid, and a quaternary ammonium cation ($NR^{16}{}_4^+$);

or R^{10} is a fused bicyclic system selected from the group consisting of any one of (Ia) to (Ii):

2018361828 19 Apr 2023



wherein each R^{11} is independently selected from hydrogen, halogen or $C_{1\text{-}4}$alkyl and R^{12} is selected from hydrogen, or $C_{1\text{-}4}$alkyl.